DocuPrint 3105

User Guide

FUJI XEROX

Adobe, the Adobe logo, Acrobat, Adobe Reader, PostScript, Adobe PostScript 3, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Permission has been obtained from Microsoft Corporation for use of software screen shots.

NetWare is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.

Macintosh, Mac OS, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

RSA, BSAFE are either registered trademarks or trademarks of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. RSA Security Inc. All rights reserved.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

For license information, refer to "Licenses" (P. 20).

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol ⚠. Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

It may be a legal offence to print currency notes, certificates of stocks and securities, or any other documents of similar nature, regardless of whether they will be used.

The data saved in the HDD Extension Kit (optional) of the machine may be lost if there is any problem in the HDD Extension Kit (optional). Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any direct and indirect damages arising from or caused by such data loss.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

Important

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.
   An export of this product is strictly controlled in accordance with Laws concerning Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade of Japan and/or the export control regulations of the United States.

XEROX, the sphere of connectivity design, PDF Bridge, ContentsBridge, and CentreWare are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xerox Corporation in the U.S. or Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd. DocuWorks is a trademark of Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the DocuPrint 3105.

This guide explains how to operate this printer and the precautions that must be followed during operation.

To get the most out of this printer and to use it effectively, be sure to read this guide before use.

This guide assumes you are familiar with computers and the basics of network operation and configuration.

After reading this guide, keep it safe and handy. Refer to this manual if any problems occur while using the machine. The illustrations in this manual show the printer with the Duplex unit and 3 Tray Module installed. These illustrations are current as of June 2011, however the machine and its specifications may be changed without notice.

Fuji Xerox shares the global concern about environmental conservation and has integrated that concern in its business activities from research and development to disposal. We have implemented a number of programs to lessen the burden on the environment. For example, we have totally eliminated ozone-depleting chlorofluorocarbons from our manufacturing facilities.

We are committed to leadership in the conservation of resources by reusing and recycling post-consumer waste material such as paper, cartridges, and parts from our customer's copiers and printers.

DocuPrint 3105 Features

High Speed, High Image Quality

- A3 (monochrome):32 ppm
  (A4 landscape continuous one-sided printing)
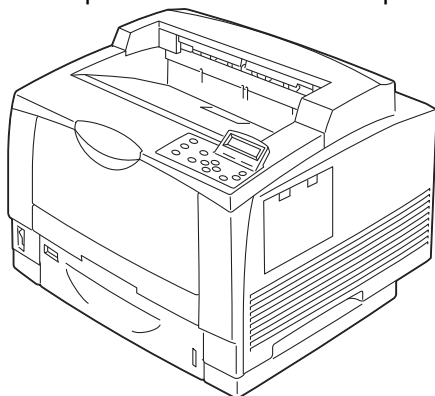
- Prints all types of documents in the optimal print quality.

Handles a Variety of Paper Sizes and Types

- Supports printing on non-standard-size paper, transparencies, and other special media in the paper trays as well as in the bypass tray.

- Accepts more variety of media in the bypass tray.

Eco-Friendly Energy Saving Specifications

- Three toner save levels can be selected, allowing economic toner use according to the document usage purpose.

- Reduces power consumption with the enhanced power-saving feature.

Easy Installation and Set Up

- Installation tool (included in the supplied CD-ROM) for easy installation
- Web browser-based monitoring and remote configuration of the printer (CentreWare Internet Services)

Wide Range of Print Features

- Multiple-Up

  Prints multiple pages onto one sheet of paper.

- 2 Sided Print[*1]

  Prints documents on both sides of the paper.

- Watermarks

  Adds a watermark, such as "Confidential", underneath an original image.

- Saved Settings

  Often-used print settings can be registered in the print driver's [Saved Settings] list. When printing, a list item can be selected for instant configuration of the printer.

- Sample Set[*2]

  Enables printing of a proof copy and printing of all remaining copies after verification of the proof copy.

- PDF Bridge

  ContentsBridge Utility enables fast and direct printing of PDF files and DocuWorks files simply by dragging and dropping files onto an icon.

  drag & drop

  event.pdf

  Contents Bridge.exe
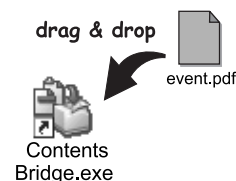
Strengthened Security Features

- Communication Encryption^{*2}

  Prevents information leaks due to unauthorized access.

- Control Panel Lock

  Provides password-based access control to control panel operations.

- Print User Control

  Authentication feature controls printer access.

- Data Reception Control

  Controls access to the printer by IP address (when LPD or Port 9100 is used).

- Secure Print^{*2}/Private Charge Print^{*2*3}

  Stores a password-protected document in the printer, which is output following authentication by password entry on the control panel or by Smart card. This feature is ideal for printing confidential documents.

- Prevent data leakage by removing the accumulated data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional)^{*4}

  This printer includes the overwriting function that prevents the remaining data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional) from being analyzed from outside as well as all data deleting function that removes all the remaining data on the device at once.

- Image log function^{*5}

  The documents of the jobs executed with the printer are saved as image data, and they are accumulated/managed as a log based on the job user, the usage time, and the number of copies and other data.

- Watermark function^{*5}

  Copying of confidential documents, etc., is prevented by printing the date, number, or watermark control code (digital code) on the entire page.

*1: Requires a Duplex unit [C1](optional)
*2: Enable the HDD Extension Kit (optional) and enable the HDD, or else install extension system memory (1GB) (optional) and enable the RAM disk.
*3: Requires an IC card system, which is related equipment.
*4: Requires a HDD Extension Kit (optional) and extension system memory (optional).
*5: Requires a HDD Extension Kit (optional) , extension system memory (optional), and Feature Enhance Kit (optional).

Contents

Loading Custom Size or Long Size Paper 66
Registering Custom Size Paper 67
Printing on Custom Size Paper 70
3.4   Printing various types of papers 71
3.5   Printing confidential documents - Secure Print - 73
Secure Print 73
Printing with Secure Print 73
3.6   Printing after checking output - Sample Set - 77
Sample Set 77
Printing Using Sample Set 77
3.7   Printing at a Specified Time - Delayed Print - 81
Delayed Print 81
Registering a Delayed Print Job 81
Canceling a Delayed Print Job 82
3.8   Private Charge Print 84
Private Charge Print 84
Configuring Private Charge Print Settings 84
Printing with Private Charge Print 85
Deleting Print Job 85
3.9   Charge Print 87
Charge Print 87
Configuring Charge Print Settings 87
Printing with Charge Print 88
3.10   Direct Printing of PDF Files 90
Supported PDF Files 90
Printing PDF Files Directly 90
3.11   Direct Printing of DocuWorks Files 92
Supported DocuWorks Files 92
Printing DocuWorks Files Directly 92
3.12   Printing Using E-mail - E-mail Print - 94
Configuring the Mail Print Environment 94
Receiving E-mails 99
Receiving and Printing E-mail Manually 100
Precautions When Using Mail Print 101

4   Paper 102
4.1   About Paper 102
Supported Paper 102
Unsupported Paper 105
Storing and Handling Paper 106
4.2   Loading Paper 107
Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray 107
Loading paper into Trays 1 through 3 110
Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays 115
Changing the Paper Type Settings of Trays 117
Auto Tray Selection Feature 118
Setting the Bypass Tray for Auto Tray Selection 119

5   Control Panel Settings 121
5.1   Overview of the Common Menus 121
Menu Structure 121
Changing the Settings 123
5.2   Common Menus Setting 125
[LanguageEmulation] 125
[Print Reports] 131

Types of Manuals

Setup Guide	Provides step-by-step instructions on how to set up your printer.
Quick Reference Guide	Provides information such as how to get ready to print, basic operating instructions, and troubleshooting tips. This guide also includes instructions on how to install options, including Extension System Memory, the HDD Extension, the Feature Enhance Kit, the Palarell Port Kit, the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card and the TC/SC Additional Fonts Kit. For more detailed information and information about topics not covered by this guide, refer to the 'User Guide.'
User Guide (PDF) (This guide)	Describes how to get ready to print and set various print features. It also covers control panel menus, troubleshooting tips, and maintenance information. • This guide is on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM, under [Model-specific Manual (PDF Document)].
CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)	Describes how to set up the printer's operating environment, and how to install a print driver and various Fuji Xerox software. • This guide is on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.
Emulation Setting Guide (PDF)	Explains ESC/P, PCL, HP-GL®, and HG-PL/2® emulations. • This guide is on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM, under [Model-specific Manual (PDF Document)].
Installation guides for the optional accessories	Most optional accessories (sold separately) come with installation guides.

Note
• To view PDF files, you must have Adobe® Reader® installed on your computer. If you do not have it installed, install it from the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.

Using This Guide

Organization

This guide is organized into the following chapters. The summary of each chapter is as follows:

1 Printer Environment Settings	Describes how to set up the printer's operating environment.
2 Basic Operations	Provides the names and functions of the printer's components and basic operating procedures (such as switching the power on/off and canceling print jobs).
3 Printing	Describes various printing methods using the PCL print driver.
4 Paper	Describes the supported paper types and how to load paper in the printer.
5 Control Panel Settings	Describes control panel menus and how to configure them.
6 Troubleshooting	Contains procedures that help to resolve problems (such as paper jams and errors) quickly.
7 Maintenance	Provides information on topics such as replacing consumables and printing various reports/lists. It also contains information intended for administrators, such as CentreWare Internet Services (a tool that enables monitoring and remote configuration of the printer), various security features, and Authentication and Auditron Administration features.
A Appendix	Describes printer specifications, optional accessories, life of consumables, and how to obtain product information.

Conventions

1. In this guide, personal computers and workstations are referred to collectively as "computers".

2. The following terms are used throughout this guide:

   Important : Indicates important information. Be sure to read this information.

   Note : Indicates supplementary information.

3. The following symbols are used throughout this guide:

   Refer to " " : Indicates a reference within this guide.

   Refer to ' ' : Indicates a reference in another publication.

   [ ] : Indicates a menu name, menu item, or message that appears on your computer screen or the printer's control panel display. These brackets also are used for the names of reports and lists output from the printer.

   < > : Indicates key cap text for keys on your computer keyboard, or hardware buttons or lamps on the printer's control panel.

   > : Indicates the flow of menu items or commands when performing a control panel display or CentreWare Internet Services operation.

4. The symbols described below are used to indicate paper orientation within the text of this guide.

   ,Portrait : When facing the front of the printer, paper is oriented vertically when loaded.

   ,Landscape: When facing the front of the printer, paper is oriented horizontally when loaded.

Portrait	Landscape
Feed direction A ◁	Feed direction A ◁
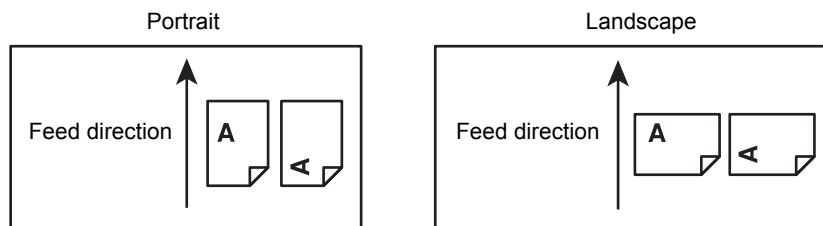
Safety Notes

Before using this product, read "Safety Notes" carefully for safety use.

This product and recommended supplies have been tested and found to comply with strict safety requirements including safety agency approvals and compliance with environmental standards. Follow the following instructions for safety use.

⚠**WARNING** Any unauthorized alteration including an addition of new functions or connection to external devices may not be covered by the product warranty. Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for more information.

Follow all warning instructions marked on this product. The warning marks stand for the followings:

⚠**DANGER**	Used for item that if not followed strictly, can lead death or severe or fatal injuries and the possibility to do it is comparatively high.
⚠**WARNING**	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can lead to severe or fatal injuries.
⚠**CAUTION**	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can cause injuries to user or damages to machine.
△ : A symbol for items to pay attention to when handling machine. Follow instructions carefully to use machine safely. Static Sensitive Caution Flammable Explodable Electric shock Heated surface Moving object Pinched fingers	
⊘ : A symbol for prohibited items. Follow instructions carefully to avoid any dangerous acts. Prohibited No fire Do not touch Do not use in bathroom Do not tear down Keep away from wet Never touch with wet hand	
● : A symbol for items that must be performed. Follow instructions carefully to carry out these essential tasks. Instructions Unplug Ground/ Earth	

Electrical Safety

⚠️WARNING

🚫 Connect this product to a branch circuit or an outlet that has larger capacity than the rated ampere and voltage of this product. See the data plate on the rear panel of this product for its rated ampere and voltage.

🚫 Never touch the power cord with wet hands. It may cause electric shock.

🚫 Do not place an object on the power cord.

❗ Always keep the plug connection free of dust. The dusty and damp environment may bring about minute electric current in a connector. It may generate heat and eventually cause a fire accident.

❗ To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, only use the power cord supplied with this product or the ones designated by Fuji Xerox.
The power cord is exclusive use for this product. Do not use it for any other product.

Do not damage or alter the power cord. Damage and alteration may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

If the power cord is damaged or insulated wires are exposed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its replacement. Do not use a damaged or uninsulated cord to avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident.

⚠️CAUTION

🔌 When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

🚫 Do not unplug or re-plug this product with the switch on. Plugging and unplugging a live connector may deform the plug and generate heat, and eventually cause a fire accident.

❗ Hold the plug not the cord when unplugging this product, or it may damage the cord and cause electric shock or a fire accident.

🔌 Always switch off and unplug the machine when it is not used over weekends or long holidays. It may cause deterioration of insulations and eventually electric shock or a fire accident.

❗ Once a month, switch off this product and check if

- the power cord is plugged firmly into an electrical outlet;

- the plug is not excessively heated, rusted or bent;

- the plug and electrical outlet are free of dust; and

- the power cord is not cracked or worn down.

Once you notice any unusual condition, switch off and unplug this product first and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Machine Installation

⚠WARNING

❗ Do not locate this product where people might step on or trip over the power cord. Friction or excessive pressure may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

⚠CAUTION

🚫 Never locate this product in the following places:

- Near radiators or any other heat sources
- Near volatile flammable materials such as curtains
- In the hot, humid, dusty or poorly ventilated environment
- In the place receiving direct sunlight
- Near cookers or humidifiers

❗ This product weighs 23.0 kg. When moving it, always carry it by a team of two or more persons to avoid mishandling or injury.

❗ When lifting this product, face the front panel and firmly grip the handholds provided on both sides of the product. Never lift it by gripping any other areas. It will prevent you from dropping the product and getting back ache or injuries.
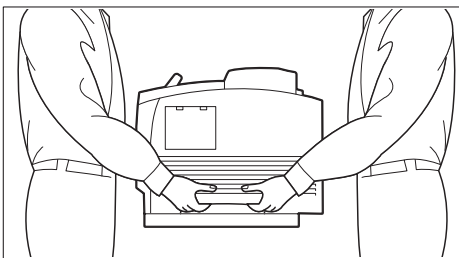
❗ Locate this product on a level and sturdy surface that can withstand its weight. Otherwise, if tilted, the product may fall over and cause injuries.

❗ Locate this product in a well-ventilated area. Do not obstruct ventilation openings of the product.

Keep the minimum clearance as follows for ventilation and an access to the power plug. Unplug the product if an abnormal condition is noted.

200mm 300mm

760mm 100mm

Unit: mm
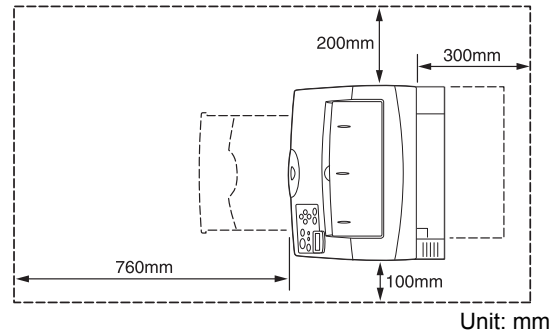
❗ Do not incline the product at more than 10 degree angle. Otherwise, it may fall over and cause injuries.

10° 10°

10° 10°
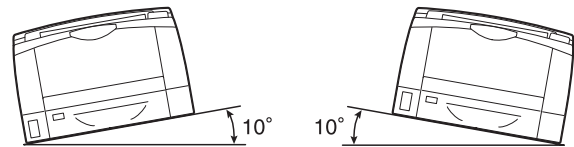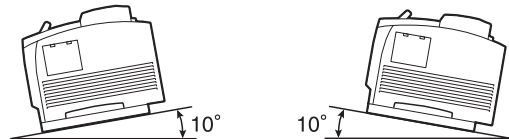
Others

❗ To keep this product in a good performance and condition, always use it in the following environment:

- Temperature: 10 - 32°C
- Humidity: 15 - 85%
  (no dew condensation)

When the product is left in a chilly room and the room is rapidly warmed up by heater, dew condensation may form inside the product and cause a partial deletion on printing.

❗ To bundle wires and cables, always use the cable ties and spiral tubes that Fuji Xerox supplies. Otherwise, it may cause some defects.

Operational Safety

⚠WARNING

The operator's product maintenance procedures are described in the customer documentation supplied with this product. Do not carry out any other maintenance procedures not described in the documentation.

This product features safety design not to allow operators access to hazard areas. The hazard areas are isolated from operators by covers or protectors which require a tool to remove. To prevent electric shock and injuries, never remove those covers and protectors.

To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, switch off and unplug the product promptly in the following conditions, then contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

- The product emits smoke or its surface is unusually hot.
- The product emits unusual noise or odor.
- The power cord is cracked or worn down.
- A circuit breaker, fuse or any other safety device is activated.
- Any liquid is spilled into the product.
- The product is soaked in water.
- Any part of the product is damaged.

Do not insert any object into slots or openings of this product.
Do not place any of the followings on the product:

- Liquid container such as flower vases or coffee cups
- Metal parts such as staples or clips
- Heavy objects

If liquid is spilled over or metal parts are slipped into the product, it may cause electric shock or a fire accident.

Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.

When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.

Never play the CD-ROM supplied with the product on an audio player. Always use a CD-ROM player. Otherwise, large sound may damage audio players or your ears.

Laser Safety
CAUTION: Any operations or adjustments not stated in the operation manual may cause hazardous light exposure and eventually burn injuries or loss of eyesight.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the Class 1 Laser Equipment requirements defined by the international standard IEC60825 and has no light exposure hazard. The product has no hazardous light emission as it features light protection components and covers to shut in all light beam during operation and maintenance.

⚠CAUTION

Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.

To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.

Keep electrical and mechanical safety interlocks active. Keep the safety interlocks away from magnetic materials. Magnetic materials may accidentally activate the product and cause injuries or electric shock.

Do not attempt to remove a paper jammed deeply inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around a Fuser Unit or a heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product promptly and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Ventilate well during extended operation or mass printing. It may affect the office air environment due to odor such as ozone in a poorly ventilated room.

Provide proper ventilation to ensure the comfortable and safe environment.

Consumable

⚠WARNING

Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on its package or container.

Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.

If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.

CAUTION: RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

⚠CAUTION

Keep print cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.

When replacing print cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.

If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.

If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.

If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.

If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

Fuser Unit Safety
When removing the Fuser Unit, always switch off first and wait for 40 minutes until it cools off.

Warning and Caution Labels

Be sure to follow the warning and caution labels placed on the machine. Do not touch areas with labels indicating high voltage or temperature. This can cause an electric shock or burn.
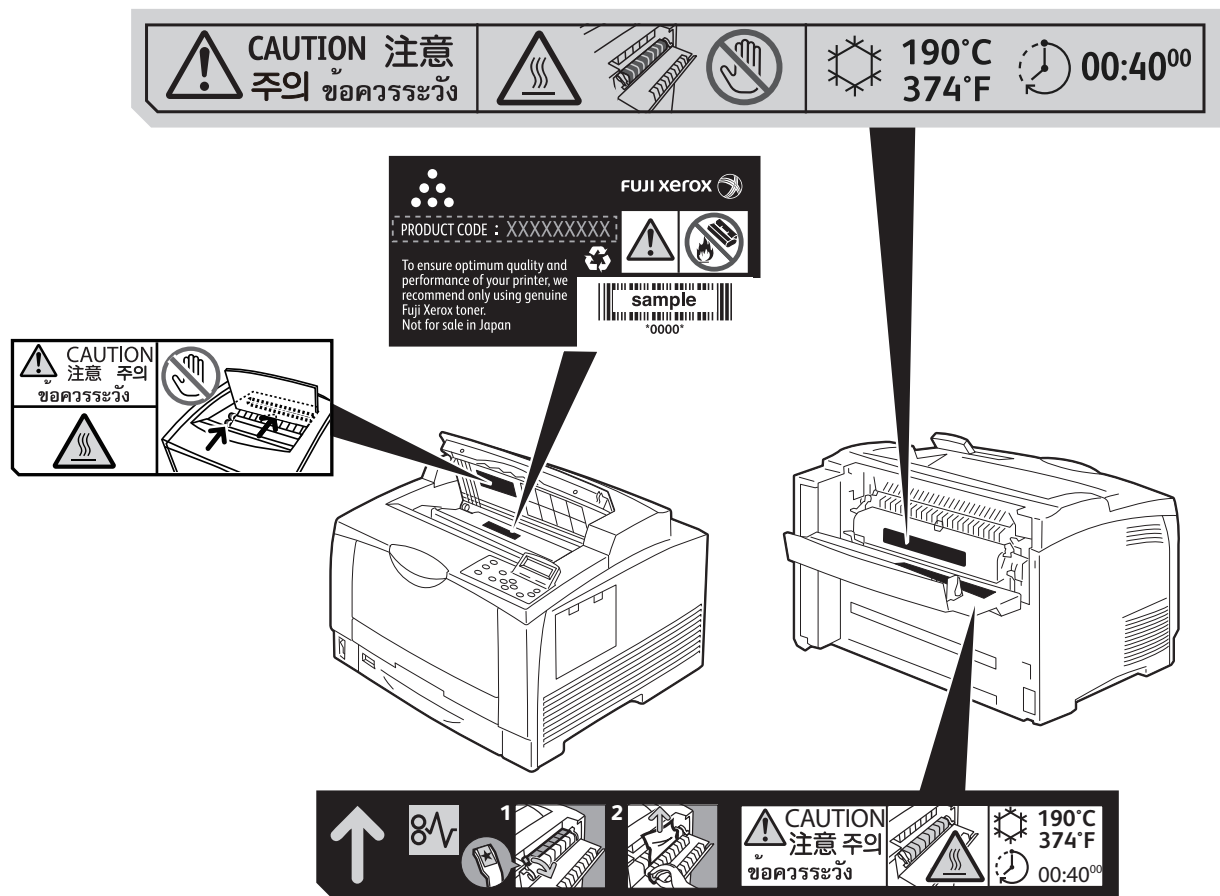
Environment

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned print cartridges to make recycled parts, recycled materials or for energy recovery.

- Proper disposal is required for print cartridges no longer needed. Do not open print cartridges. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Regulation

Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to the International Standard for Electromagnetic Interference (CISPR Publ. 22) and Radiocommunications Act 1992 in Australia/ New Zealand. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning this product off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between this product and the receiver.
- Connect this product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes and modifications to this product not specifically approved by Fuji Xerox may void the user's authority to operate this product.

- Product Safety Certification (UL, CB)

This product is certified by the following agency using the safety standards listed.

Agency	Standard
Intertek	IEC60950-1

Licenses

RSA BSAFE (For the Models Other than those Available in China)

This product includes RSA BSAFE encryption software from RSA Security Inc.

Heimdal

Copyright (c)2000 Kungliga Tekniska högskolan (Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, Sweden). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the Institute nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE INSTITUTE AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE INSTITUTE OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

LZMA

LZMA SDK 4.21 Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Igor Pavlov (2005-06-08)

http://www.7-zip.org/

LZMA SDK 4.22 Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Igor Pavlov (2005-06-10)

http://www.7-zip.org/

JPEG Code

Our printer software uses some of the codes defined by the Independent JPEG Group.

Libcurl

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2006, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

FreeBSD

This product uses some FreeBSD codes.

The FreeBSD Copyright

Copyright 1994-2006 The FreeBSD Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE FREEBSD PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FREEBSD PROJECT OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES

(INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The views and conclusions contained in the software and documentation are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing official policies, either expressed or implied, of the FreeBSD Project.

OpenLDAP

Copyright 1998-2006 The OpenLDAP Foundation All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted only as authorized by the OpenLDAP Public License.

A copy of this license is available in the file LICENSE in the top-level directory of the distribution or, alternatively, at <http://www.OpenLDAP.org/license.html>.

OpenLDAP is a registered trademark of the OpenLDAP Foundation.

Individual files and/or contributed packages may be copyright by other parties and/or subject to additional restrictions.

This work is derived from the University of Michigan LDAP v3.3 distribution. Information concerning this software is available at <http://www.umich.edu/~dirsvcs/ldap/ldap.html>.

This work also contains materials derived from public sources.

Additional information about OpenLDAP can be obtained at <http://www.openldap.org/>.

Portions Copyright 1998-2006 Kurt D. Zeilenga.

Portions Copyright 1998-2006 Net Boolean Incorporated.

Portions Copyright 2001-2006 IBM Corporation.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted only as authorized by the OpenLDAP Public License.

Portions Copyright 1999-2005 Howard Y.H. Chu.

Portions Copyright 1999-2005 Symas Corporation.

Portions Copyright 1998-2003 Hallvard B. Furuseth.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that this notice is preserved.

The names of the copyright holders may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without their specific prior written permission. This software is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

Portions Copyright (c) 1992-1996 Regents of the University of Michigan.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms are permitted provided that this notice is preserved and that due credit is given to the University of Michigan at Ann Arbor. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. This software is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

The OpenLDAP Public License

Version 2.8, 17 August 2003

Redistribution and use of this software and associated documentation ("Software"), with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions in source form must retain copyright statements and notices,

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce applicable copyright statements and notices, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/ or other materials provided with the distribution, and

3. Redistributions must contain a verbatim copy of this document.

The OpenLDAP Foundation may revise this license from time to time.

Each revision is distinguished by a version number. You may use this Software under terms of this license revision or under the terms of any subsequent revision of the license.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION, ITS CONTRIBUTORS, OR THE AUTHOR(S) OR OWNER(S) OF THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The names of the authors and copyright holders must not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealing in this Software without specific, written prior permission. Title to copyright in this Software shall at all times remain with copyright holders.

OpenLDAP is a registered trademark of the OpenLDAP Foundation.

Copyright 1999-2003 The OpenLDAP Foundation, Redwood City, California, USA. All Rights Reserved. Permission to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this document is granted.

DES

This product includes software developed by Eric Young.

(eay@mincom.oz.au)

AES

Copyright (c) 2003, Dr Brian Gladman Worcester, UK. All rights reserved. This product uses published AES software provided by Dr Brian Gladmanunder BSD licensing terms.

TIFF (libtiff)

LibTIFF Copyright (c) 1988-1997 Sam Leffler

Copyright (c) 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

ICC Profile (Little cms)

Little cms Copyright (C) 1998-2004 Marti Maria

XPS (XML Paper Specification)

This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369.

Illegal Copies and Printouts

Copying or printing certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fines or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty. The following are examples of items that may be illegal to copy or print in your country.

- Currency
- Banknotes and checks
- Bank and government bonds and securities
- Passports and identification cards
- Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner
- Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

1 Printer Environment Settings

When you are finished installing your printer using the 'Setup Guide', go on to set up its operating environment.

1.1 Supported Operating Environments

The printer can be used both as a local and a network printer. When used as a local printer, the printer is connected directly to a computer. Connect the printer to a network for use as a network printer.

Set all ports you want to use to [Enabled] on the control panel.
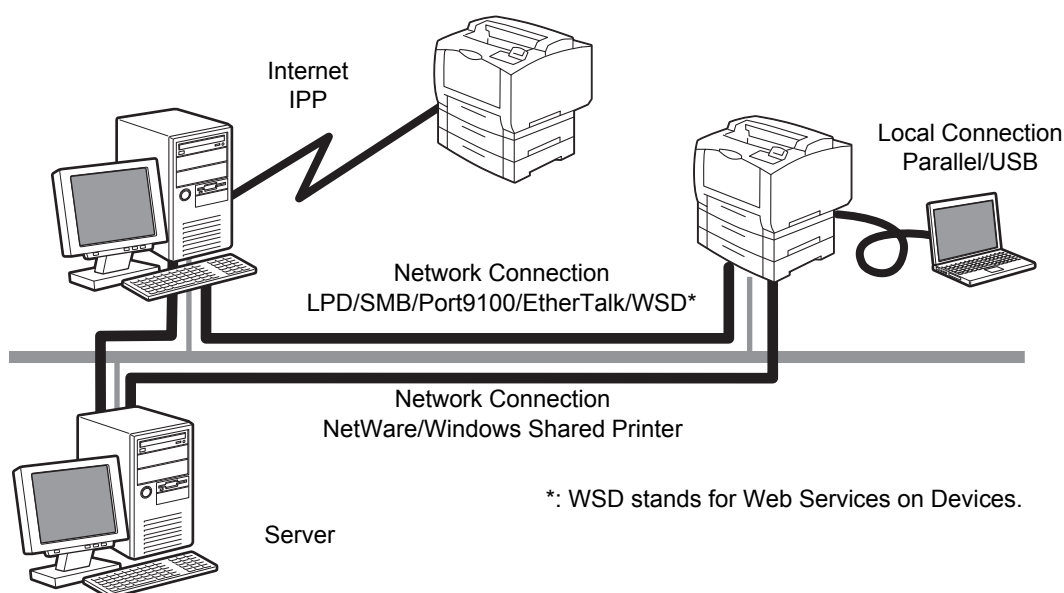
■ Using the Printer as a Local Printer

When using the printer as a local printer, the printer and a computer can be connected using the following methods:

- USB connection: Connecting the printer and a computer using a USB cable. (default: [Enabled])

- Parallel connection: Connecting the printer and a computer using a parallel cable. To use this feature, the Parallel Port Kit (optional) must be installed. (default: [Disabled])

■ Using the Printer as a Network Printer

When using the printer as a network printer, the printer can be set up in the following environments:

- LPD : Used when using TCP/IP protocol to enable direct communication between the printer and a computer. (default: [Enabled])

- Port9100 : Used when using a Port9100 port. (default: [Enabled])

- NetWare® : Used when sharing and managing the printer using a NetWare server. (default: [Disabled])

- SMB   : Used when printing using a Windows® network.
  (default: [Enabled])
- IPP   : Used when printing via the Internet.
  (default: [Disabled])
- EtherTalk® : Used when printing from Macintosh. (default: [Disabled])
- WSD*   : Can be used when printing from Windows Vista®, Windows® 7, Windows Server® 2008, or Windows Server® 2008 R2. (default: [Enabled])

*: WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

■ Supported Operating Systems and Operating Environments

Note
- The supported operating systems are subject to change without prior notice. Visit our web site for the latest information.

Connectivity	Local		Network									
Port Name	Parallel[1]	USB[2]	LPD	NetWare		SMB		IPP	Port 9100	Ether Talk	Bon-jour	WSD[3]
Protocol	-	-	TCP/ IP	TCP/ IP	IPX/ SPX	Net BEUI	TCP/ IP	TCP/ IP	TCP/ IP	Apple Talk	TCP/ IP	TCP/ IP
Windows® 2000	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	-	-	-
Windows® XP	○	○	○	○	○	-	○	○	○	-	-	-
Windows Vista®	○	○	○	○	○	-	○	○	○	-	-	○
Windows® 7	○	○	○	-	-	-	○	○	○	-	-	○
Windows Server® 2003	○	○	○	○	○	-	○	○	○	-	-	-
Windows Server® 2008	○	○	○	○	○	-	○	○	○	-	-	○
Windows Server® 2008 R2	○	○	○	-	-	-	○	○	○	-	-	○
Mac OS 9.2.2	-	○	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	○	-	-
Mac OS X 10.3.9 - 10.4.6, 10.4.8 - 10.4.11, 10.5, 10.6	-	○	○	-	-	-	-	○	-	○	○	-

[1]: To use this feature, the Parallel Port Kit (optional) must be installed.
[2]: The computer must be connected to the printer via a USB 2.0 port.
[3]: WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

Refer to
- For information on how to print PostScript data, refer to the manual on the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM.

■ OS and Available Print Drivers

OS	Print Driver	Note
Windows® 2000 Windows® XP Windows Vista ® Windows® 7 Windows Server® 2003 Windows Server® 2008 Windows Server® 2008 R2	PCL Print Driver	Installing the print driver is available from the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM. Refer to the 'CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)' on the CD-ROM.
	PostScript Print Driver	Installing the print driver is available from the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM. Refer to the manual on the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM for details.
Mac OS 9.2.2 10.3.9-10.4.6, 10.4.8-10.4.11, 10.5-10.6	PostScript Print Driver	Installing the print driver is available from the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM. Refer to the manual on the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM for details.

1.2   Connecting a cable

Connect the printer to your computer using an interface cable appropriate for your connection method.

An interface cable is not included with the printer. You must purchase it separately.

USB Connection

When using a USB connection, install the printer driver on the computer after connecting the cable. For the installation method, refer to "1.7 Installing a Print Driver" (P. 43) and "Manual (HTML Document)" on the CD-ROM disk of the driver CD kit.

1. Connect the USB cable to the interface connector.

2. Connect the other end of the USB cable to the computer.
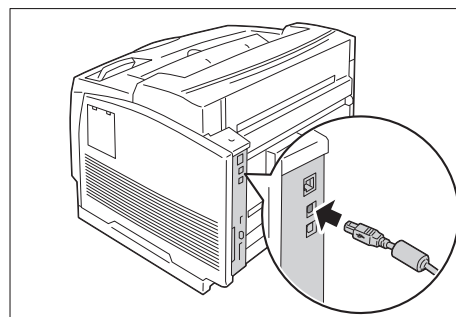
Network Connection

Use 1000BASE-T (When the optional Gigabit Ethernet Board Card is installed) or a straight-type network cable that supports 100BASE-TX or 10BASE-T.

1. Switch off the printer's power.
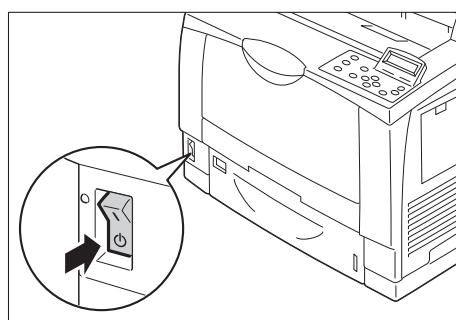
2. Wind the network cable around the supplied ferrite core and close the ferrite core.

Note
• Do not wind the cable to tightly or it may break.

A connector to be connected to the printer

Ferrite core

Approx. 7cm
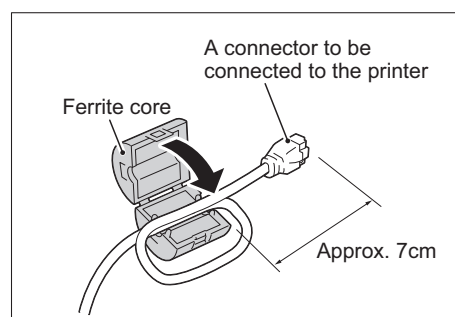
3. Connect the network cable to the interface connector on the printer.

Note
- The location of the connector differs depending on whether Gigabit Ethernet Board Card is installed or whether the standard configuration is used. Connect the appropriate connector for your environment.
- When the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card is installed, the connector for the standard configuration cannot be used.
- The MAC address is the same as in the standard configuration when installing the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card.
- LED1 on the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card lights up as follows according to the network environment connected.
  10BASE-T environment: Off
  100BASE-TX environment: Lights in yellow
  1000BASE-T environment: Lights in blue

Standard configuration

Gigabit Ethernet Board Card

LED1
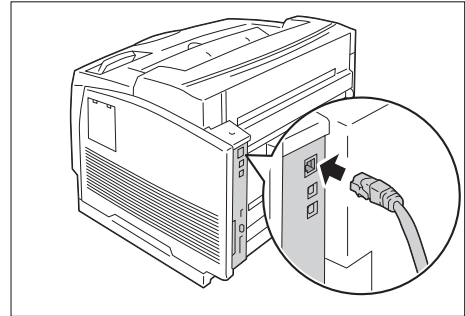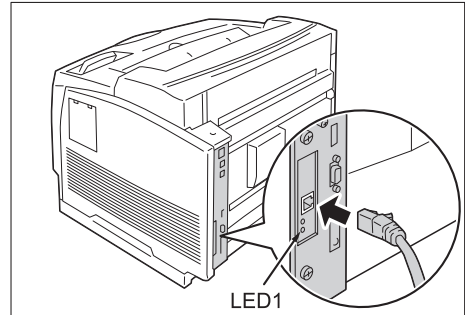
4. Connect the other end of the network cable into a network device such as a hub.

5. Switch on the printer's power.
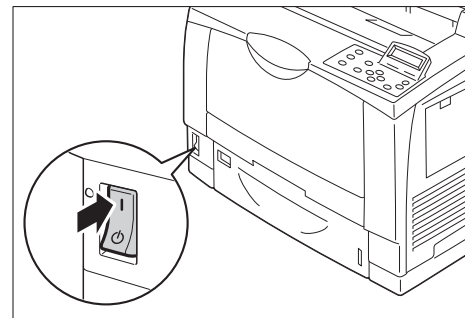
Note
- The interface connecter for standard network cannot be used when the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card is installed to the printer.
- When installing both Gigabit Ethernet Board Card and Feature Enhance Kit, install the Feature Enhance Kit first.
- Message [Ready to print IP Address failed] may be displayed on the control panel. To erase this message, set to [STATIC] in [Network / Port] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 Settings] > [Get IP Address] to specify IP address (Example: 192.168.1.100) or [Disabled] for each port other than the USB port in [Network / Port].

Refer to
- For setting method of IP address, refer to "1.4 Setting the Network Environment" (P. 33).
- For setting each port, refer to "1.5 Enabling Ports" (P. 37) ".

Parallel Connection

When using a parallel connection, you must first install the optional Parallel Port and connector conversion cable.

Important
• Parellel Port Kit (optional) and Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) cannot be installed at the same time.

1. Switch the printer off.
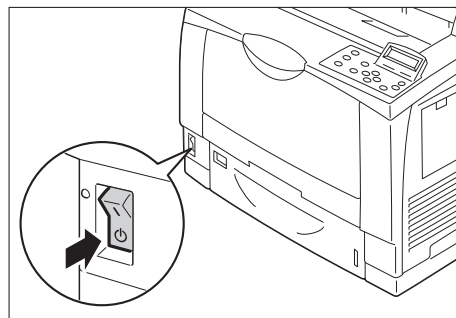
2. Insert the connector conversion cable included with the optional Parallel Port into the interface connector on the printer.
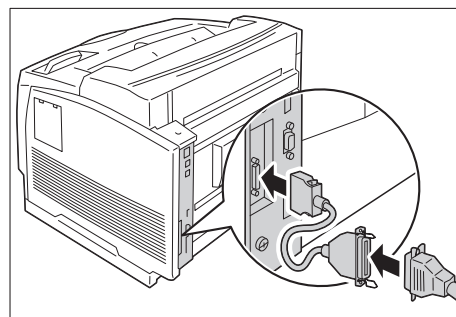
3. Connect the other end of the connector conversion cable to the connector on the parallel cable. Then secure it using the metal pieces on both sides of the connector.

4. Plug the other end of the parallel cable into your computer.

5. Switch the printer on.
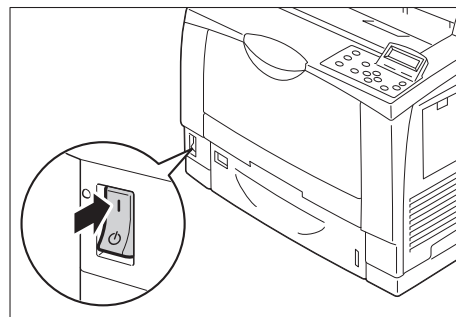
Important
• Parallel Port Kit (Optional) and Gigabit Ethernet Board Card cannot be installed concurrently. If the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) is installed, remove the card by reference to " Removing the Parallel Port Kit (Optional)" (P. 344).

1.3 Switching the Control Panel Display Language

Select one display language from among [English], [Korean], [Simp.Chinese], and [Trad.Chinese] for the control panel of the printer.

The following explains how to switch the control panel display language.

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen.

2. Press the <▼> button until [Language] is displayed.

   Note
   • If you went past the desired item, return to the item by pressing the <▲> button.

3. Press either the <►> or <OK> button to select.
   The language is displayed.

4. Press the <▼> button until the desired language is displayed.

5. Press the <OK> button to confirm.

6. Press the <Printer Settings> button to close the menu.
   The printer automatically restarts.

1.4   Setting the Network Environment

This section explains how to install your printer in a TCP/IP environment. When installing the printer in a different environment, refer to the 'CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.

Note
• The printer can use an IPv6 address in an IPv6 network environment. For information on using IPv6 addresses, refer to "Setting an IP Address (IPv6)" (P. 36).

Setting an IP Address (IPv4)

To use TCP/IP protocol, you must configure an IP address for the printer.

By default, the printer is set to obtain its IP address (via the [Get IP Address] setting on the control panel) using [DHCP/Autonet]. Thus, when the printer is connected to a network that has a DHCP server, the printer automatically obtains its IP address from the server.

Print the [Configuration Report] to see if the printer already has an IP address.

If the printer does not have an IP address, set [Get IP Address] to [STATIC] and configure the address.
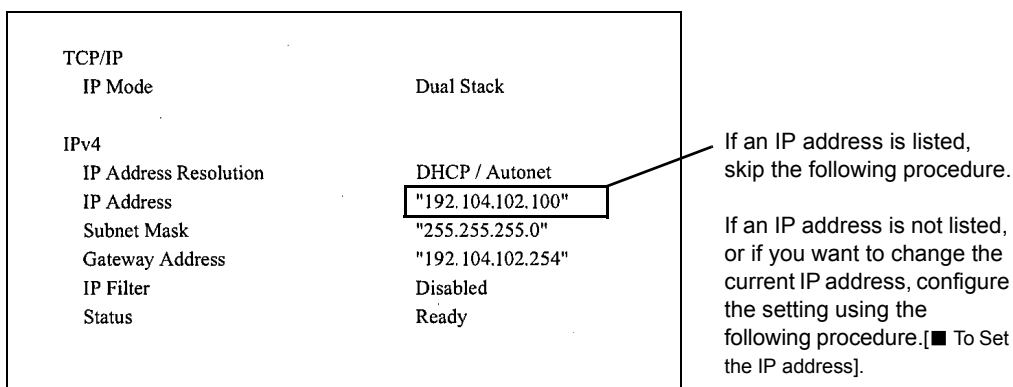
```
TCP/IP
    IP Mode                     Dual Stack

IPv4
    IP Address Resolution       DHCP / Autonet
    IP Address                  "192.104.102.100"
    Subnet Mask                 "255.255.255.0"
    Gateway Address             "192.104.102.254"
    IP Filter                   Disabled
    Status                      Ready
```

If an IP address is listed, skip the following procedure.

If an IP address is not listed, or if you want to change the current IP address, configure the setting using the following procedure.[■ To Set the IP address].

Note
• For information on how to print the [Configuration Report], refer to "7.2 Printing Reports/Lists" (P. 260).
• The printer can also obtain its IP address by using a BOOTP or RARP server. If using a BOOTP or RARP server, set [Get IP Address] to [BOOTP] or [RARP].
• If using a DHCP server, the printer's IP address may change without notice. Make sure to check the address periodically.

The following explains how to set up an IP address on the Control Panel. Depending on your network environment, your printer also needs a subnet mask and gateway address. Consult your network administrator for the settings required for your printer.

■ To Set the IP Address

Important
• Addresses including IP address, subnet mask and gateway address depend on your network environment. Consult your network administrator for setting addresses.

1. On the control panel, press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
   LanguageEmulation
```
↓
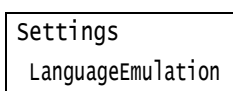
2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

Note
• If you went past the desired item, return to the item by pressing the <▲> button.

```
Settings
 Admin Menu
```
↓

3. Press the <▶>or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

Note
• If you pressed the <▶> or <OK> button on the wrong item, return to the previous screen by pressing the <◀> or the <Back> button.
• To start over from the beginning, press the <Printer Settings> button.

```
Admin Menu
 Network / Port
```
↓

4. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [LPD] is displayed.

Note
• [Parallel] appears only when the Parallel Port Kit (optional) is installed.

```
Network / Port
 LPD
```
↓

5. Press the <▼> button until [TCP/IP Settings] is displayed.

```
Network / Port
 TCP/IP Settings
```
↓

6. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [IP Mode] is displayed.

```
TCP/IP Settings
 IP Mode
```
↓

7. Press the <▼> button until [IPv4 Settings] is displayed.

```
TCP/IP Settings
 IPv4 Settings
```
↓

8. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Get IP Address] is displayed.

```
IPv4 Settings
 Get IP Address
```
↓

9. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current set value is displayed.

```
Get IP Address
•DHCP / Autonet
```
↓

10. Press the <▼> button until [STATIC] is displayed.

```
Get IP Address
 STATIC
```
↓

11. Press the <OK> button to confirm your selection.
If [000.000.000.000] appears, skip to step 15.

```
Get IP Address
•STATIC
```
↓

12. Press the <◀> or <Back> button to return to [Get IP Address].

```
IPv4 Settings
 Get IP Address
```
↓
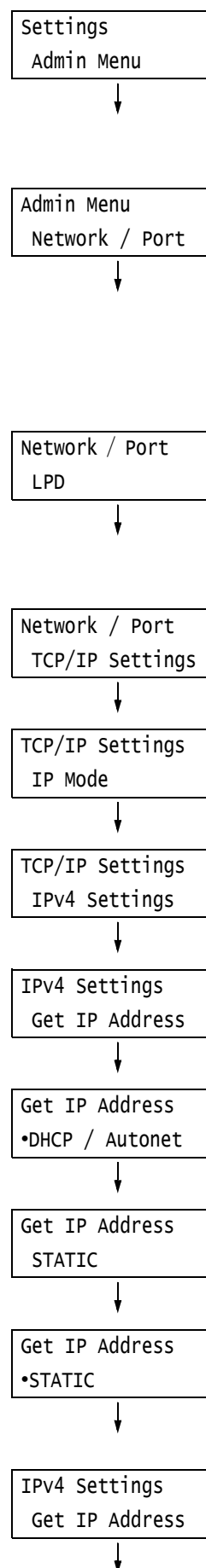
13. Press the <▼> button to display [IP Address].

```
IPv4 Settings
 IP Address
```

14. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. The current IP address is displayed.

```
IP Address
•000.000.000.000
```

15. Enter the value in the first field using the <▲> or <▼> button (Example: 192), and press the <►> button.

```
IP Address
 192.000.000.000
```

Note
- If you do not need to change the setting, press the <►> button to advance to the next field.
- Holding down the <▲> or <▼> buttons changes the value in steps of 10.
- To return to the previous field, press the <◄> button.

16. Enter the rest of the fields in the same manner. After entering the last (4th) field(Example: 192.168.1.100), press the <OK> button to confirm your entry.

```
IP Address
•192.168.001.100
```

17. If you want to set a subnet mask and gateway address, press the <Back> button and proceed to Step 18.
If you want to finish configuring the settings, proceed to Step 25.

■ To Set the Subnet Mask/Gateway Address

18. Press the <▼> button until [Subnet Mask] is displayed.

```
IPv4 Settings
 Subnet Mask
```

19. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. The current subnet mask is displayed.

```
Subnet Mask
•000.000.000.000
```

20. Enter the subnet mask in the same way you entered the IP address(Example: 255.255.255.000), and press the <OK> button to confirm your entry.

```
Subnet Mask
•255.255.255.000
```

21. Press the <Back> button to return to [Subnet Mask].

```
IPv4 Settings
 Subnet Mask
```

22. Press the <▼> button to display [Gateway Address].

```
IPv4 Settings
 Gateway Address
```

23. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. The current gateway address is displayed.

```
Gateway Address
•000.000.000.000
```

24. Enter the gateway address in the same way you entered the IP address(Example: 192.168.1.254), and press the <OK> button to confirm your entry.

```
Gateway Address
•192.168.001.254
```

25. The setup is now complete.
Press the <Printer Settings> button to close the menu screen.
The printer automatically restarts.

26. Print the [Configuration Report] to verify your settings.

Setting an IP Address (IPv6)

The printer can use an IPv6 address in an IPv6 network environment.

By default, the printer [IP Mode] is set to [Dual Stack] to automatically detect either IPv4 or IPv6. If you connect the printer to an IPv6 network, an IPv6 address is automatically set.

Print the [Configuration Report] to verify the IPv6 address.

Note
• When setting the fixed IPv6 address on the printer, use CentreWare Internet Services to manually configure the settings. Then print the [Configuration Report] to verify the automatically set address. Use this address to access CentreWare Internet Services. Set the IPv6 address [Properties] tab > [Connectivity] > [Protocols] > [TCP/IP]. For information about each setting, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services. For information about your network environment, consult with your network administrator.
• For more information on CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38). For information about your network environment, consult with your network administrator.

```
IPv6
    Enable Manual Address        Disabled
    Auto Configure
        Link-Local Address       "fe80::a00:37ff:fe60:fa0"
        Auto Stateless Address 1 ""
        Auto Stateless Address 2 ""
        Auto Stateless Address 3 ""
        Auto Gateway Address     ""
    IP Filter                    Disabled
    Status                       Ready
```

Note
• For information on how to print the [Configuration Report], refer to "7.2 Printing Reports/Lists" (P. 260).

1.5   Enabling Ports

Set all ports you want to use to [Enabled] on the control panel.

When using the standard setup, this operation is unnecessary as the default for the port is set to [Enabled].

Use the following procedure to enable each port.

The following procedure uses IPP as an example.

1. On the control panel, press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
```

4. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [LPD] is displayed.

Note
• [Parallel] appears only when the Parallel Port Kit (optional) is installed.

```
Network / Port
  LPD
```

5. Press the <▼> button until the desired protocol is displayed. (Example: IPP)

```
Network / Port
  IPP
```

6. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Port Status] is displayed.

```
IPP
  Port Status
```

7. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current set value is displayed.

```
Port Status
•Disabled
```

8. Press the <▼> button to display [Enabled].

```
Port Status
  Enabled
```

9. Press the <OK> button to confirm your selection.

```
Port Status
•Enabled
```

10. The setting is now complete.
    Press the <Printer Settings> button to close the menu screen.
    The printer automatically restarts.
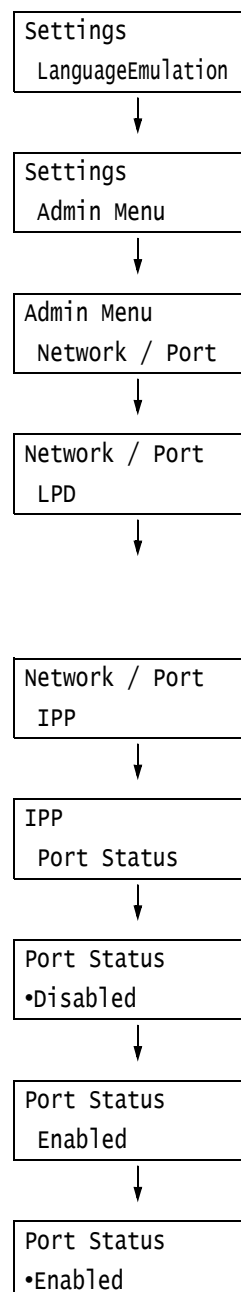
1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services

Overview of CentreWare Internet Services

CentreWare Internet Services is a service that allows you to monitor or remotely configure the printer using a web browser when the printer is on a TCP/IP network.

Some of the control panel settings can also be set on the service's [Properties] tab.

Note
• CentreWare Internet Services cannot be used when the printer is directly connected to the computer via parallel cable or USB cable.
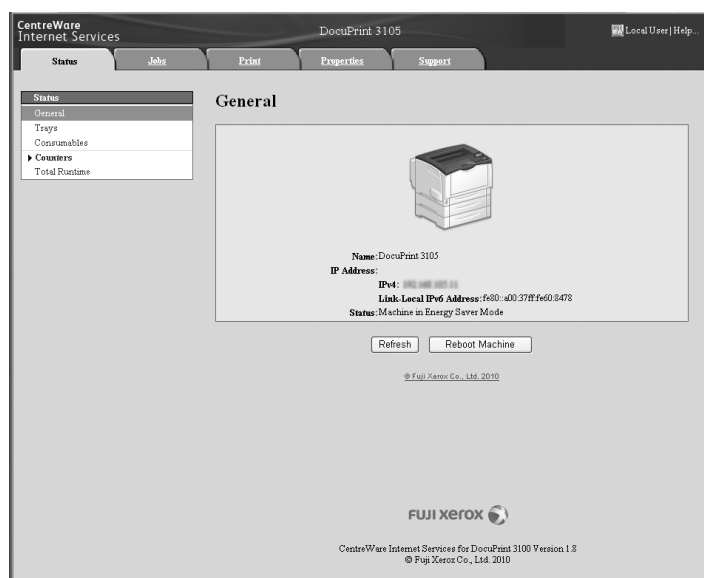
Supported Operating Environments

■ Supported Web Browsers

CentreWare Internet Services has been tested to work on the following web browsers.

Windows 7	Windows Internet Explorer 8
Windows Vista	Windows Internet Explorer 7.0
Windows XP	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 SP2, Mozilla Firefox 3.0
Windows 2000	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 SP2
Mac OS X 10.6	Safari 5, Mozilla Firefox 3.0
Mac OS X 10.5	Safari 4, Mozilla Firefox 3.0
Mac OS X 10.4	Safari 4, Mozilla Firefox 3.0
Mac OS X 10.3.9	Mozilla Firefox 3.0

■ Setting Up a Web Browser

When using CentreWare Internet Services, we recommend you specify the address of the printer without using a proxy server.

Note
- If you access CentreWare Internet Services using a proxy server, the response from the service may be slow or the service may not be displayed.
- For information on how to set up your web browser, refer to the online help for the web browser.

If you want to change the display language of CentreWare Internet Services, change the display language of your web browser.

Note
- For information on how to change the display language of your web browser, refer the online help for the web browser.

Also, if CentreWare Internet Services does not operate properly, use the following steps to configure your web browser.

The procedure uses Internet Explorer 6.0 as an example.

1. From the [Tools] menu, select [Internet Options].

2. On the [General] tab, click [Settings] under [Temporary Internet Files].

3. Under [Check for newer versions of stored pages:] on the [Settings] dialog box, select either [Every visit to the page] or [Every time you start Internet Explorer].

4. Click [OK].

5. Click [OK] on the [Internet Options] dialog box.

■ Setting Up the Printer

To use CentreWare Internet Services, you must configure the printer's IP address and enable [InternetServices] (default: [Enabled]). If [InternetServices] is set to [Disabled], change it to [Enabled] on the control panel.

Refer to
- "[InternetServices]" (P. 148)
- "1.5 Enabling Ports" (P. 37)

CentreWare Internet Services Settings

The following are the main features on each tab of CentreWare Internet Services.

Tab Name	Menu Name	Feature
Status	General	Displays the name, IP address, and status.
	Trays	Displays the status of paper in the paper tray and the status of the output tray.
	Consumables	Displays the amount and status of the consumables (estimate). Actual replacement of consumables must be done by checking the messages displayed on the control panel. **Refer to** • "6.6 Error Messages and Error Codes" (P. 209)
	Counters	The number of pages printed up to the present can be displayed.
	Total Runtime	The operation time, standby time, and accumulated time (Low Power mode, Sleep mode, etc.) can be displayed.
Jobs	Active Jobs	Displays a list of jobs being processed.
	Job History List	Displays a list of completed jobs.
	Error History	Displays error information stored in the error log. Refer to "Error Codes" (P. 215) for more information on the meaning of error codes displayed.
Print	Job Submission	Select files stored on the computer and print them directly to the printer. The [Print] tab appears only when the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
Properties	Configuration Overview	Displays a button to move between pages showing an overview of functions on the [Properties] tab.
	Description	Displays the printer's product name and serial number. You can also set the name [1], Location[1], Contact Person[1], Adominitrator's E-mail Address[1], and Machine's E-mail Address[1].
	General Setup	The current setting is displayed. You can also set other items. • Setting Configuration / Job Management / Paper Tray Attributes / Paper Settings /Power Saver Settings/Energy Saver Settings / Stored Job Settings / Memory Settings / Internet Services Settings[1] / Cloning[1] / Calibration / Alert Notification[1]
	Connectivity	You can check and change Network-related settings like ports and protocols.
	Services	Allows configuration of print mode, Language Emulations, E-mail[1], EP service[3],, and settings.
	Accounting[1]	You can configure settings related to accouting.
	Security[1]	You can configure settings related to security[1]. • Setting Authentication Configuration / User Details Setup / Create Authorization Groups / Remote Authentication Servers / IP Filtering / Unbounded Port / Cerificate Settings / IPSec / Certificate Management / IEEE 802.1x / SSL / TLS Settings / Audit Log / Watermark / Force Annotation / Job Status Default / System Administrator Settings[2]
Support		Displays a link to support information and a site for ordering consumables.

*1 These settings can only be set using CentreWare Internet Services. They cannot be configured on the control panel. Some security features are not supported on the model available in China.

*2 You can set the administrative ID and password. The default system administrator ID and password are "11111" and "x-admin", respectively.

*3 EP Service is not supported on the model available in China.

Using CentreWare Internet Services

Follow these steps when accessing CentreWare Internet Services.

1. Start your computer and launch a web browser.

2. In the URL field, enter the IP address or URL of the printer, and press the <Enter> key. The top page of CentreWare Internet Services is displayed.

   • Example - IP address for IPv4   • Example - URL
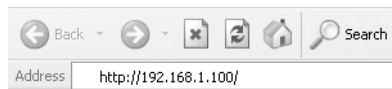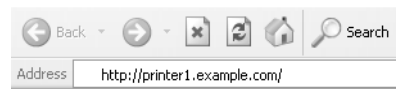
   • Example - IP address for IPv6

Note
• When specifying a port number, enter a ":" (colon) and then "80" (the factory default port number) after the address. Verify the printer's port number by printing [Configuration Report].
• The port number can be changed under the [Properties] tab > [Connectivity] > [Protocols] > [HTTP]. If you change the port number, you must enter a ":" (colon) and then the port number after the address.

• Displays a screen for entering the user name and password when the Authentication function is set. Enter the ID and password of the administrator or user registered on the printer. Contact your administrator for information on your ID and password. User informatin is displayed on the upper right when CentreWare Internet Services is started up.

• After you logged in with the administrator's passcode or the user ID and password registered in the printer to configure and confirm settings, make sure to click [Logout] to log out the system in order to prevent the leakage of information.

• When data encryption is enabled, enter "https" instead of "http" before the address when accessing CentreWare Internet Services.
• For information about data encryption features, refer to "7.9 Security Features" (P. 277). and "7.11 Control Access to Printer Features by Pre-registering Users" (P. 301).

Using the Online Help

For information about the settings on each screen, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services. Click [Help] to display the [Help] window.
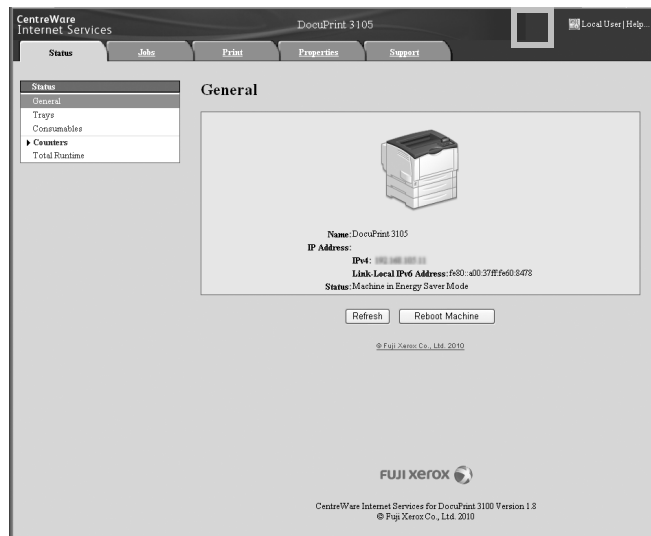
Important
• To display the online help for CentreWare Internet Services, users need to have the environment to connect to the internet. The communication fee shall be borne by you.

1.7 Installing a Print Driver

To print from your computer, install the PCL print driver from the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.

The installation procedure varies depending on how your computer is connected to the printer.

For installation instructions, refer to the 'CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)' on the CD-ROM.

Note
• There are precautions/restrictions on drivers for Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition, Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions, Microsoft Windows Vista x64, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions, Microsoft Windows 7 x64 and Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2. Read "Important Information" on the download page of our web site before using these drivers.

Uninstalling a Print Driver and Other Software

■ To Uninstall a Print Driver

PCL print driver can be uninstalled using the uninstallation tool contained on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM. For more information, refer to the 'CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)' on the CD-ROM.

■ To Uninstall Other Software

When uninstalling other software installed from the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM, refer to the 'Readme' file provided for each software. The 'Readme' files can be viewed under the 'Product Information (HTML)' included on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.

2 Basic Operation

2.1 Main Components and Functions

Main Unit

Front and right side of views
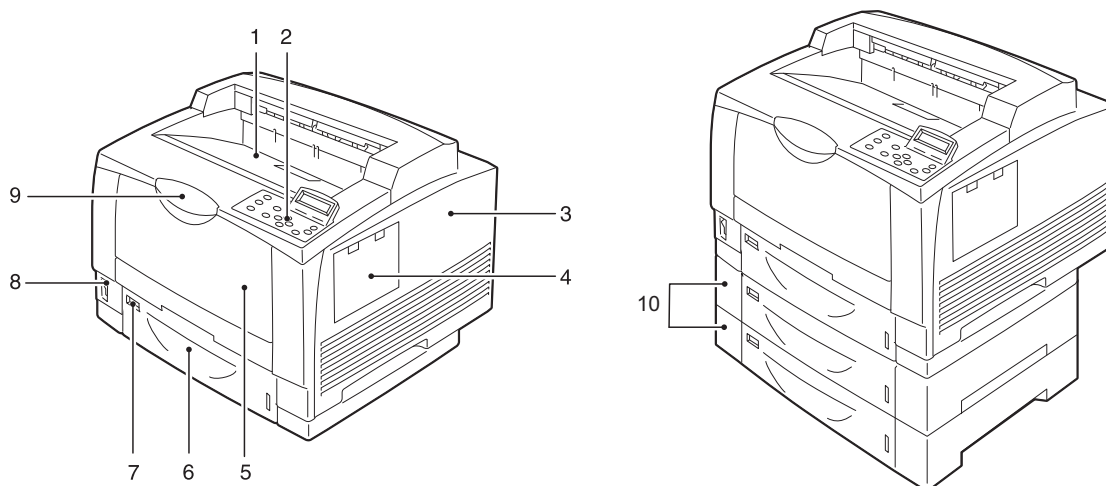
Note
• The illustrations in this guide show the printer with the Duplex unit and 3 Tray Module installed.

No.	Name	Description
1	Center tray (standard)	Delivers printed output face down here.
2	Control panel	Switches the printer on/off. **Refer to** • " Control Panel" (P. 47)
3	Right cover	Remove this cover when installing the optional extension system memory or parallel port kit (optional).
4	Accessory installation stand mount	Remove this cover when installing the optional accessory installation stand mount. The IC card reader can be placed on the accessory installation stand.
5	Bypass tray (standard)	Open this cover to load paper.
6	Paper tray 1 (standard)	Pull out this tray to load paper.
7	Size indicator	Set here the label indicating the size of the paper set in the paper tray.
8	Power switch	Switches the printer on/off. Press the <	> side of the power switch on the printer to turn it on, and press the <((I))> side to turn it off. **Refer to** • "2.2 Switching On/Off the Power" (P. 50)
9	Extension tray	Pull out this tray when the printing paper is A4 portrait or larger than A4 size.
10	Paper trays 2 and 3 (optional)	Up two trays identical to tray 1 can be added.

Back

Parallel interface
connector (optional)

Gigabit Ehternet Interface
connector (optional)

This sticker lists the product code or SER#. Check the information on this sticker prior to contacting Fuji Xerox regarding an inquiry.
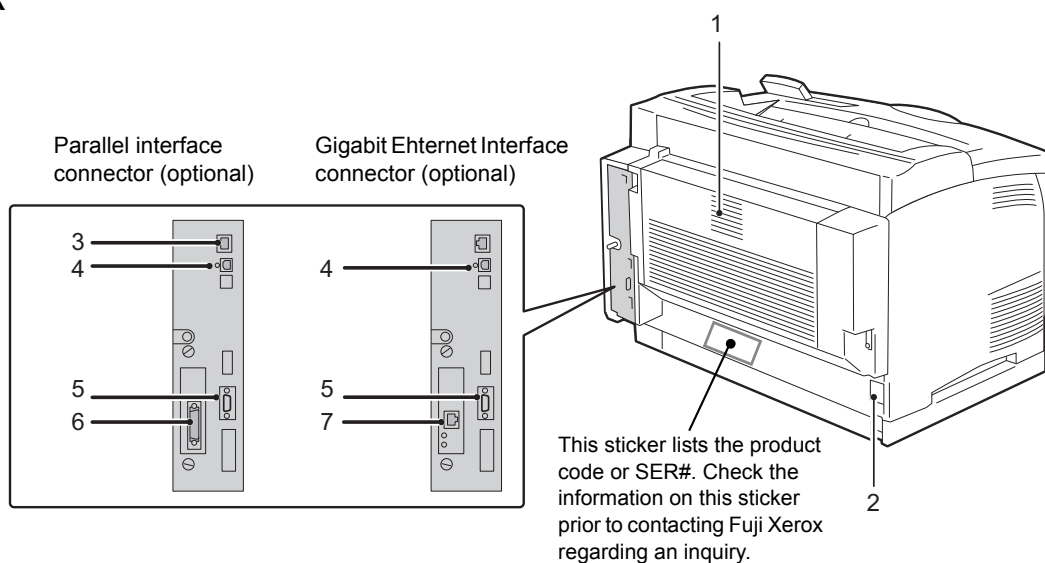
No.	Name	Description
1	Duplex unit (cover C) (optional)	Open here if a paper jam occurs in the area of the Duplex unit.
2	Power cord connector	Connects the power cord.
3	Network connector	Connects the network cable. **Note** • When the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) is inserted, connect the cable to connector No. 7.
4	USB connectors	Connect USB2.0 cables.
5	Expansion device connector	Connects an expansion device that can be used with the printer.
6	Parallel interface connector (optional)	When the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) is inserted, connect the parallel cable here.
7	Gigabit Ethernet connector (optional)	When the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) is inserted, connect the 1000BASE-T Ethernet interface cable here.

Interior
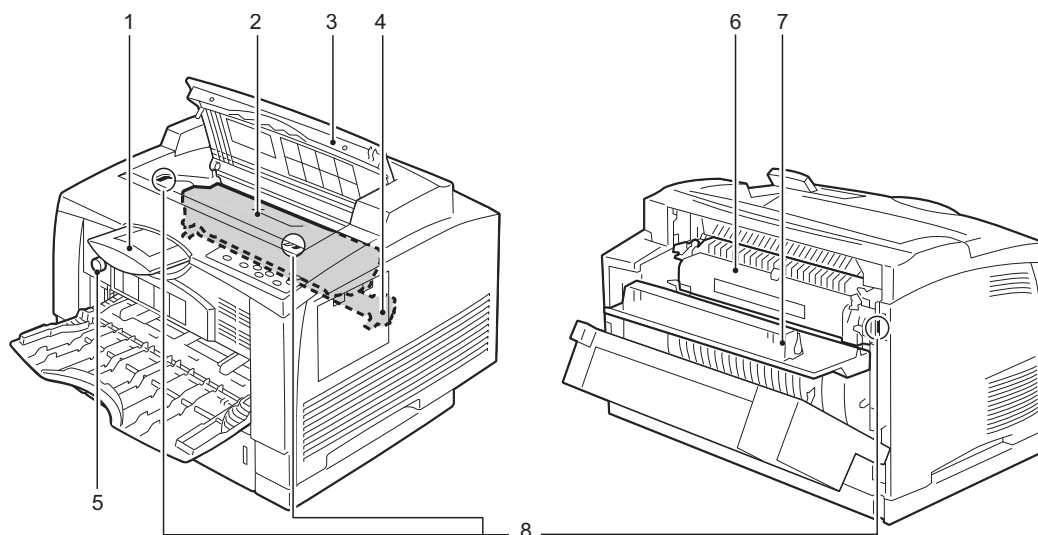
No.	Name	Description
1	Extension tray	Pull out this tray when the printing paper is A4 portrait or larger than A4 size.
2	Print Cartridge	The toner and drum are in one unit.
3	Cover A	Open when replacing the print cartridge or removing jammed paper.
4	Transfer roll	Transfers the toner image on the drum surface onto paper.
5	Paper size setting dial (bypass tray)	When loading paper on the bypass tray, use this dial to set the paper size.
6	Fuser Unit	Fuses toner onto paper. This is extremely hot, so do not touch it.
7	Cover B	When paper is jammed near the fuser unit, open this cover after opening cover C, and then remove the jammed paper.
8	Safety switch	These switches prevent the printer from runnning when one of the printer's cover is open. Do not press these switches, or place magnetic objects close to the switches.

Control Panel

No.	Name	Description
1	<Printer Settings> button	Pressed to display the menu screen.
2	Display	Displays the status of the printer, menu options, and messages. [Please Wait...] is displayed when the printer power is switched on. Print job is available when the display message changes to [Ready to print]. It displays authenticated user ID for about 2 seconds when card authentication is used. Nothing will be displayed during Energy Saver Mode even if the printer power is switched on. **Refer to** • "Control Panel Display" (P. 49)
3	<Ready> lamp	Lights when the printer is ready to print.
4	<Error> lamp	Blinks or lights when an error occurs.
5	<Energy Saver> button	The lamp lights while the printer is in Energy Saver mode. The printer exits Energy Saver mode by pressing this button. The printer enters Energy Saver mode (Low Power mode) by pressing this button during Standby state. **Note** • <Energy Saver> lamp may be kept lit for several tens of seconds if the printer is switched off during Energy Saver mode.
6	<Cancel Job> button	Pressed to cancel printing the job.
7	<OK> button	Pressed to confirm the menu option selected on the menu screen. This button is also used when printing reports/lists.
8	<▲> <▼> <◀> <▶> buttons	Pressed to advance to the next menu, item, or option. **Note** • When using the <▲> and <▼> buttons to change the current setting, holding down either button cycles through available settings at high speed. To display a setting's default value, press <▲> and <▼> at the same time.
9	<Back> button	Press this button while the menu screen is displayed to return to the previous item.

No.	Name	Description
10	<Print Menu> button	Pressed to print documents stored in the printer or the server, such as Secure Print or Sample Set. **Note** • To use this function, either install HDD Extension Kit (optional) and extension system memory (optional), or if not installing HDD Extension Kit (optional), install the 1GB of extension system memory (optional) and [C3] enable the RAM disk. Available print function depends on your environment. Refer to "Control Panel Menu Tree" (P. 376) for available function for the printer.
11	<Information> button	Displays detailed information on what is happening at the time by pressing this button when ⓘ mark appears on the display.
12	<Online> button	Pressing the <Online> button takes the printer offline. The <Ready> lamp is off and printing is not done while the printer is offline. Pressing the <Online> button again takes the printer back online (printing enabled).

Control Panel Display

The display shows two types of screens: the print screen and menu screen. The print screen displays messages that show the status of the printer, and the menu screen displays menus that allow you to set various settings for the printer.

Note
- The messages on the display vary depending on the printer status and the options installed.
- Pressing the <Information> button while the 🛈 mark is on the display shows detailed information.

Print Screen

Shows the status of the printer. The following screens are used to indicate when the printer is in stand-by or printing.

Printer Status (Stand-by)   Printer Status (Printing)

```
Ready to print              |    Printing...
  Toner Left          ⌴     |    LPD        Tray1
```
                    Toner level   Data input port   Paper tray
                    (Estimate)
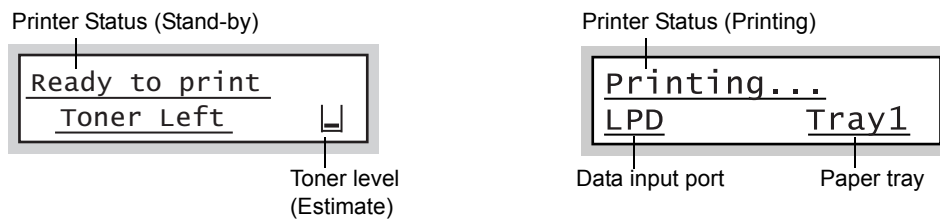
Menu Screen

Use this screen to configure printer settings.

Press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen. The following menu item appears when you open the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```
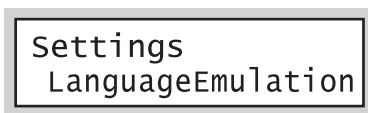
Refer to
- For information about the menu items in the menu screen, refer to "5 Control Panel Settings" (P. 121).

2.2   Switching On/Off the Power

Switching On the Power

1. Press the <|> side of the printer's power switch to turn on the power.

2. "Please wait" is displayed on the display of the control panel. Check that this display changes to "Ready to Print".

Note
• When using the printer, the printer approximately about 20 seconds to be ready to print after the power is switched on. It may take longer depending on your machine's configuration.
• If an error message is displayed, refer to "Error Messages (in Alphabetical Order)" (P. 209) to remedy the error.
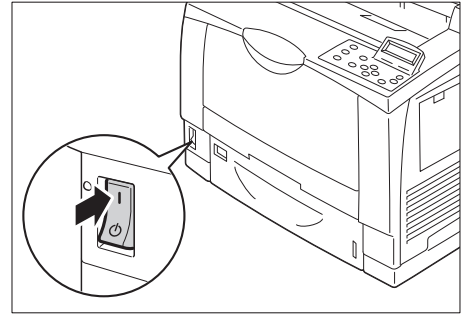
Switching Off the Power

Important
• Do not switch the power off when the <Energy Saver> lamp is blinking. The <Energy Saver> buttom flashes if the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is being accessed while the printer is in the power saver mode.
• Do not switch the power off when the display reads [Please wait...].
• Do not switch the power off during printing. Doing so can cause paper jams.
• Turning off power causes any print data or other data in the printer to be deleted.
• After you turn off the power, the printer remains on for a short while as it performs an internal power off procedure. Do not unplug the power cord immediately after turning off the power switch. To switch on the power again, wait until the <Energy Saver> button has completely gone out.
• If, after switching off the power of the printer, you want to switch it on again, do so after waiting for 10 seconds after the message on the display of the control panel and the various lamps on the control panel have switched off.

1. Make sure that the printer is not in operation by checking the display or indicator lamps.

2. Press the <⏻> side of the printer's power switch to turn off power.
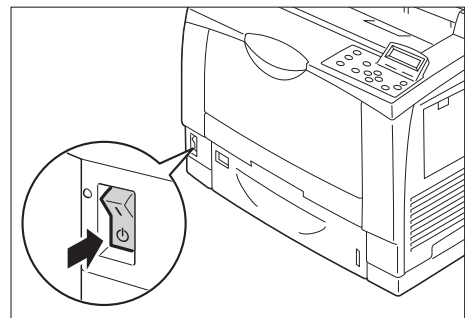
2.3　Setting/Exiting the Energy Saver Modes

The printer has Energy Saver modes that reduce electric power consumption while the printer is in standby. There are two Energy Saver modes: a Low Power mode (12 W or less) and a Sleep mode (1.7 W or less).

The Low Power mode does not turn off power completely, but it strikes a balance between power consumption and warm up time by keeping temperature of the fuser unit between full and Sleep mode.

Important
- The life of the fuser unit depends to a large extent on the number of hours the printer is powered and other factors. Both Low Power mode and Sleep mode triggering cannot be disabled at the same time. Contact our Customer Support Center for details.

Entering the Energy Saver Modes

The initial factory default settings for both the Low Power mode/Sleep mode trigger times are [1 Minutes Later], so the printer will go directly into Sleep mode without going into the low power mode whenever no print data is received by the printer for 1 minute.

Whether the printer enters the sleep mode can be set. Also, the time until the printer enters the Low Power mode or the Sleep mode can be set between 1 and 240 minutes.

Important
- When the internal temperature of the printer is high, the printer enters the Low Power mode only after the fan stops, so the printer may not enter the Low Power mode even if the time has been set to 1 minute.
- Even if the time until the printer enters the Sleep mode has been set to 25 minutes or less, the inside of the machine must be cooled after printing, so the printer may not enter the Sleep mode for up to 25 minutes.
- The life of the fuser unit varies greatly depending on how long the printer is powered, etc. When the time until the energy saver modes are entered is set to a long time, the powered time of the printer is correspondingly long, which may result in an earlier fuser unit replacement time.

Note
- For information about configuring Low Power mode and Sleep mode settings, refer to "Setting Example: Changing the Sleep Mode Timer" (P. 124).

Exiting the Energy Saver Modes

The printer automatically exits the Energy Saver modes when it receives data from a computer. You can also manually exit the Energy Saver modes by pressing the <Energy Saver> button on the control panel.

If the Printer Does Not Enter Energy Saver Mode

The printer does not enter Low Power mode or Sleep mode in the following cases to inform users on what is happening to the printer and provide its performance.

- When the user is operating the control panel
- When a message indicating to replace any one of the consumables including toner cartridge, drum cartridge or waste toner bottle is displayed
- When a message to replace another regular replacement part is displayed
- When the printer requires user operation for paper jams or open covers
- When an error occurs due to print failure

2.4 Canceling/Checking a Print Job

Canceling a Print Job

Print jobs can be canceled either from your computer or the control panel.

Canceling a Print Job Being Processed on a Computer

1. Double-click the printer icon on the task bar at the lower right corner of your monitor.

2. Select the name of the document whose print job you want to cancel, and then delete it by pressing the <Delete> key.
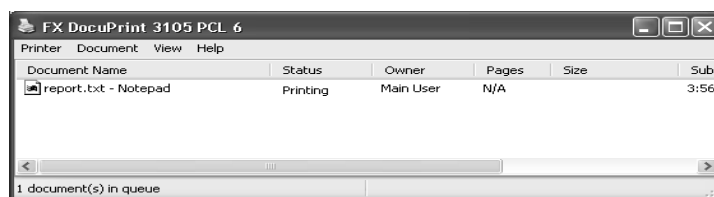
Note
• If you cannot find the document in the window, cancel the document on the control panel.
• You also can cancel a print job on the [Jobs] tab of CentreWare Internet Services. For information about the procedure you should use, see CentreWare Internet Services help.

Canceling a Print Job being Printed/Received on the Printer

Press the <Cancel Job> button on the control panel. Note that the page currently being printed continues to print.

Canceling all Data Received by the Printer

You can use the following procedure to cancel printing all data, for instance after adding a very large document to the print queue.

1. Press the <Online> button on the control panel.
   This causes [Off-line] to appear on the display.

```
Off-line
 🛈 Data in memory
```

2. Press the <Cancel Job> button.
   This starts the cancellation process. [Off-line] appears on the display after the process is complete.

```
All data:
Deleting Job...
```

```
Off-line

```

3. Press the <Online> button.
   The [Ready to print] screen reappears.

```
Ready to print
  Tonner Left ⊔
```
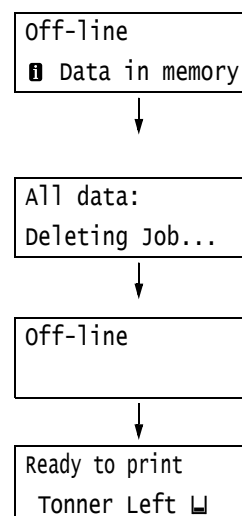
Checking the Status of a Print Job

There are two ways to check the status of data queued for printing: checking the data with Windows and checking the data with CentreWare Internet Services.

Checking the Job Status on Windows

1. Double-click the printer icon [icon] on the task bar at the lower right corner of your monitor.

2. On the displayed window, check [Status].
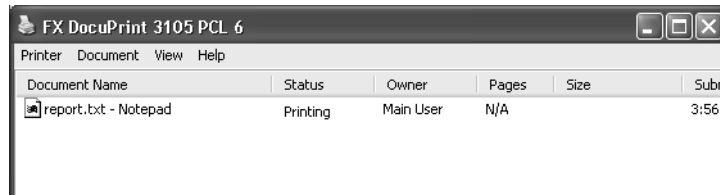
Checking the Job Status on CentreWare Internet Services

You can check the status of print jobs also under the [Jobs] tab on CentreWare Internet Services.

Refer to
• CentreWare Internet Services online help

2.5 Importing Printer Information to a Print Driver

If your printer is networked, you can import printer information (such as accessory configuration, and sizes and types of paper in the paper trays) into your print driver using SNMP protocol. This can be done on the [Configuration] tab on your print driver. The following procedure is described based on Windows XP. After installing the print driver, use this procedure to obtain printer information manually for adding options and configuring paper settings. You can also set to obtain the printer information automatically for each print job.

Note
- This function is not available when the printer is directly connected to the computer via parallel cable or USB cable. In this case, configure settings of the applicable print driver items manually. Refer to "Set Printer Information Manually" (P. 58) for the procedure. In this case, the paper types and paper sizes loaded in the trays are not displayed.
- To use this function, the control panel must be used to enable the printer's SNMP port (Initial default: [Enabled]).

Obtain Printer Information by Specifying Printer Name and IP Address

1. On the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] (Select [Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS) and display the properties of the printer being used.

2. Click the [Configuration] tab.

3. Click [Bi-Directional Setup].
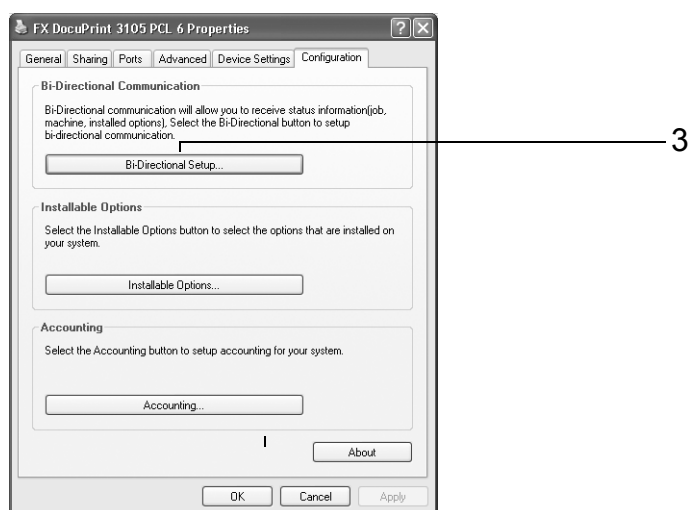
4. Click [Get Information from Printer].
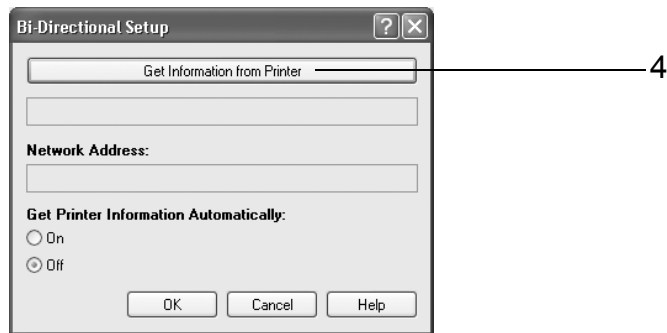
Message [Done] appears if the printer information is imported to the print driver. Proceed to step 9.

If no printer information is imported to the print driver, [Search Printer] appears. Proceed to step 5.

5. Select [Specify Address].

6. Click [Next].
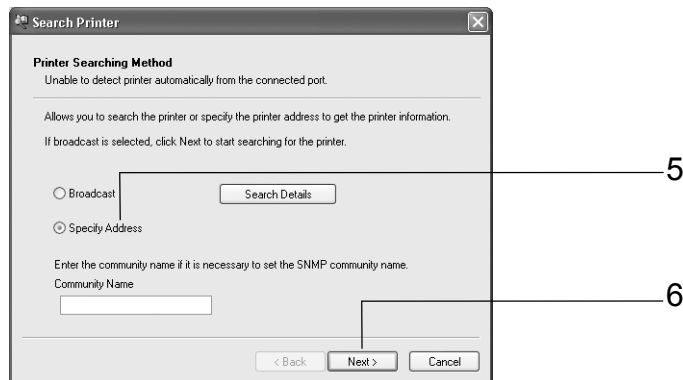
7. Enter printer name or IP address in [Printer Name or IP Address].

8. Click [Finish].
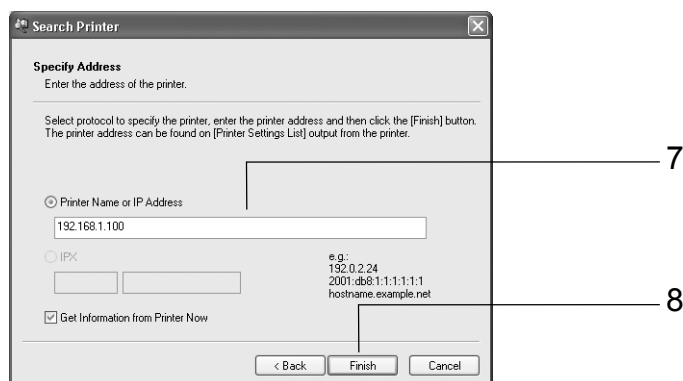
9.   Click [OK] to close the dialog box.

9
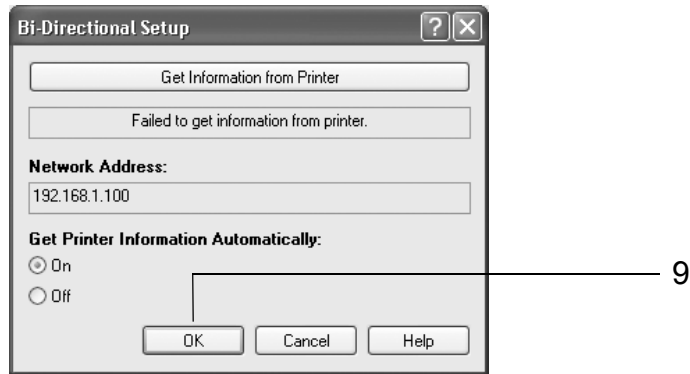
10.   Click [OK].

Obtain Printer Information Automatically

You can set to obtain the printer information automatically whenever the print driver screen is displayed during print job.

1.   On the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] (Select [Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS) and display the properties of the printer being used.

2.   Click the [Configuration] tab.

3.   Click [Bi-Directional Setup].

3
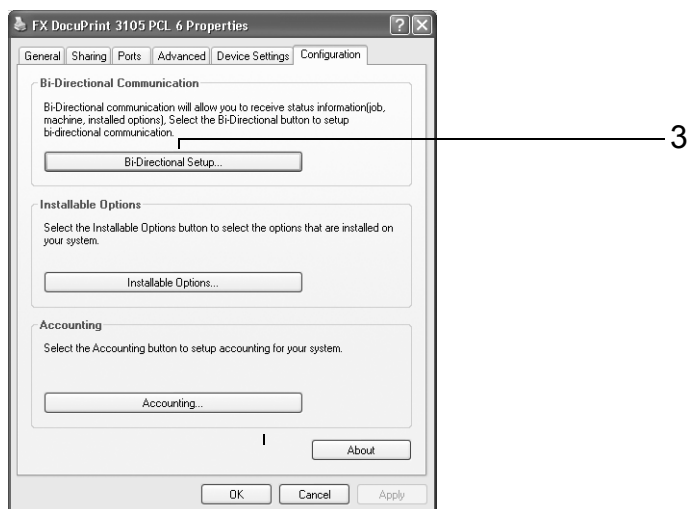
4.   Select [On] in [Get Printer Information Automatically].

5. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.
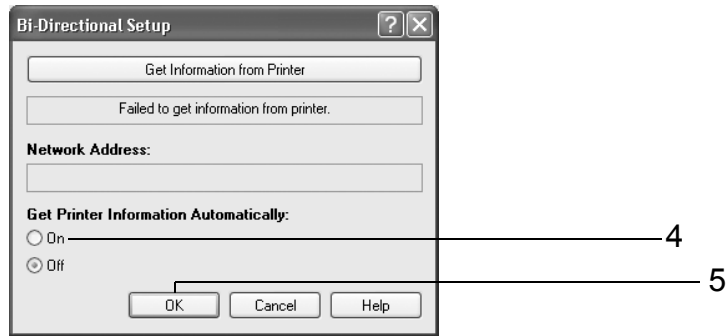
6. Click [OK].

Set Printer Information Manually

1. On the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] (Select [Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS) and display the properties of the printer being used.

2. Click the [Configuration] tab.

3. Click [Bi-Directional Setup].
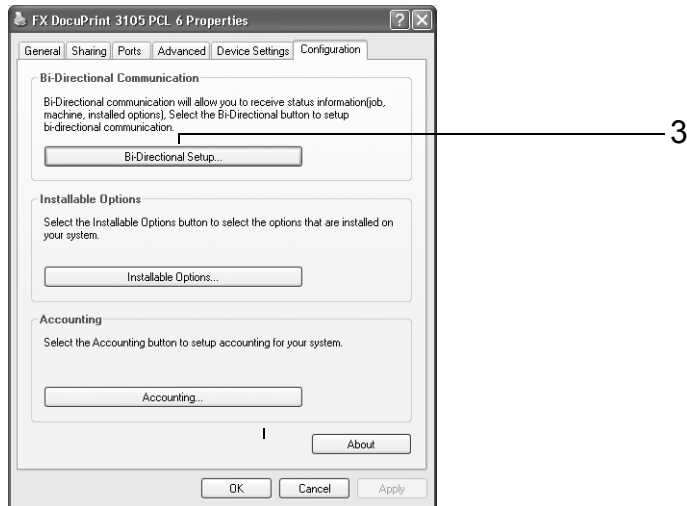
4. Select [Off] in [Get Printer Information Automatically].

5. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.
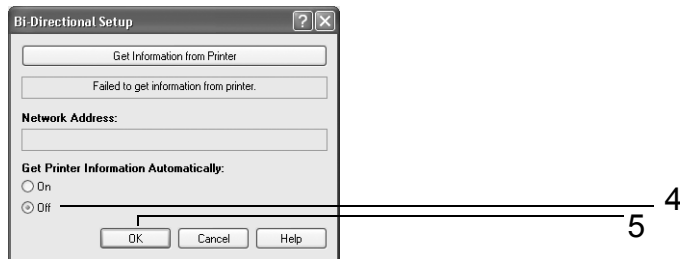
6. Click [Installable Options].
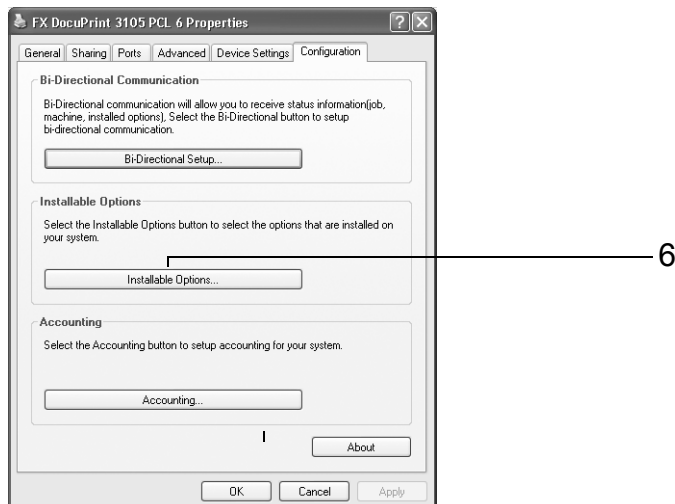
7. Set items necessary in [Items].

8. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.
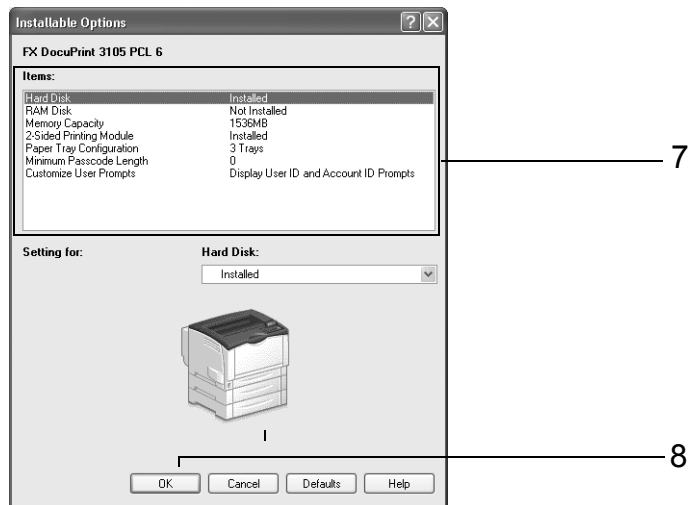
9. Click [OK].

3 Printing

This chapter describes various printing methods using a PCL print driver.

3.1 Printing from a Computer

This section outlines the basic procedure for sending print jobs from Windows applications. The procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

(The actual procedure may vary depending on the application being used.)

1. On the [File] menu of your application, select [Print].

2. Use the [Select Printer] box to select the printer and then display the Properties dialog box. In Windows XP WordPad, click [Preferences] to display the dialog box.
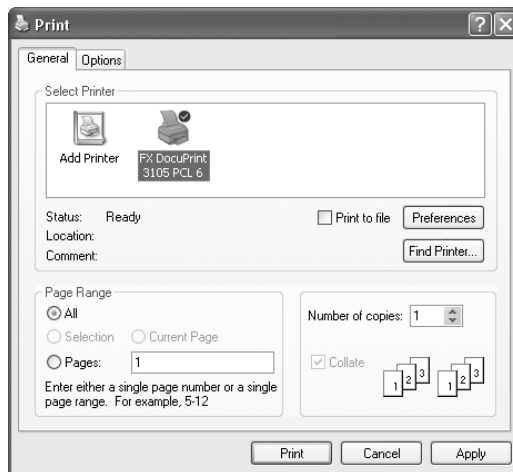
3. Click the desired tab and configure print features as required. When you are finished with the settings, click [OK] to close the dialog box. For details on the print features, refer to the online help for the print driver.
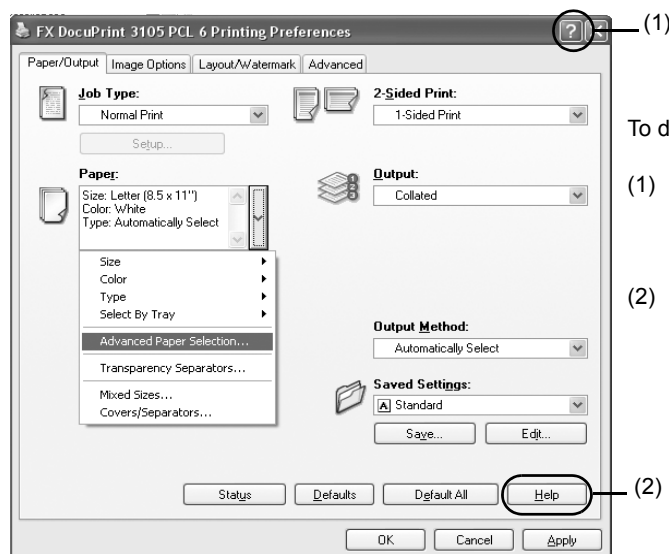
To display online help:
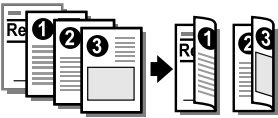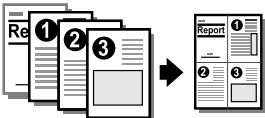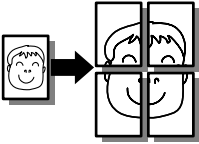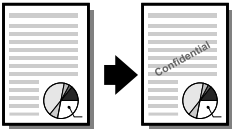
(1) Click [?] and then the item for which you need help.
The help for the item appears.

(2) Click [Help].
The [Help] window appears.

4. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.

Print Features in the Properties Dialog Box

The following introduces some of the print features available on each tab of the print driver. For details on each feature, refer to the online help for the print driver.

Tab	Feature		
Paper/Output	• 2-Sided Print Prints documents on both sides of the paper.	• Saved Settings Allows registration of frequently-used print settings. The printer can be configured with multiple settings simply by selecting an item from the list. Settings can be edited and pre-registered as required.	• Secure Print Allows temporary storage of a document in the printer for manual printing from the control panel. (The optional HDD Extension Kit (optional) and extension system memory is needed.)
	• Sample Set Allows printing of a proof copy of a multi-set job. After the proof copy is checked, the remainder of the job can be printed from the control panel. (The optional HDD Extension Kit (optional) and extension system memory is needed.)	• Delayed Print Allows printing at a specified time.	• Covers/Separators Allows inserting Front Cover, Back Cover or Separator. Also allows printing on paper of a specific color and thickness for Front Cover only.
Image Options	• Allows you to configure settings related to print quality, such as saving toners or adjusting positions of images. • Image quality The image quality can be adjusted according to the type of document to be printed, such as photos or charts, and the intended use. • Toner saver This function reduces toner consumption.		
Layout/ Watermark	• Pages Per Sheet (N-up) Prints multiple pages onto one sheet of paper.	• Poster Allows you to divide and enlarge an original document to copy the image onto multiple sheets of paper. You can then paste them together to make one large poster.	
	• Watermark Adds a watermark such as "Confidential" underneath an original image.		

Note
• The Properties dialog box also can be displayed by clicking the printer icon on the [Printers and Faxes] window ([Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window depending on the operating system you are using). The settings configured here will be the defaults of the features when the dialog box is accessed from an application.

3.2 Printing on Envelopes

This section describes how to print on envelopes.

Postcards/envelopes can be printed when using Tray 1-3.

Loading Envelopes

Only printing on the address side of the envelope is supported. Printing on the reverse side is not supported.

The following envelope sizes can be used with this printer.

- Envelope (120 x 235mm)
- Envelope (105 x 235mm)
- C5 envelope (162x229mm)

- Monarch envelope (98x191mm)
- DL envelope (110x220mm)
- No.10 Envelope (105x241mm)

Note
- When using custom size envelopes, register the custom size with the printer driver as a user-defined size. For details, refer to "Registering Custom Size Paper" (P. 67)
- For user-defined sizes, register the size including the flap in the case of envelopes with their flap open. (In the case of Ncolor envelopes, 20 mm can be included as the flap part.)

Important
- For best print quality, do not use envelopes that:
  - are curled or twisted.
  - are stuck together or damaged.
  - have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossments.
  - use tie strings, metal clamps, or metal folding bars.
  - have postage stamps attached.
  - have any exposed adhesive when the flaps are closed.
  - have deckle edges or creased corners.
  - are wrinkled, rough or are glued.
  - have adhesive flaps.

1. Load horizontal envelopes with the address size facing up, the flap closed, and so they feed from the side with the flap.

horizontal envelopes

Note
- When using envelopes with adhesive flaps, close the flaps and set the envelopes so that they feed from the flap side. Setting envelopes with adhesive flaps with their flaps open will cause printer malfunction.

   Load vertical envelopes with the address side facing up with the flaps to the right.

Note
- Envelopes can be printed even when their flaps point left. Correctly select the right setting according to the flap direction with [Portrait/Landscape (For Envelopes)] > [Image Rotation 180 Degrees] in [Mixed Sizes] of the printer driver.
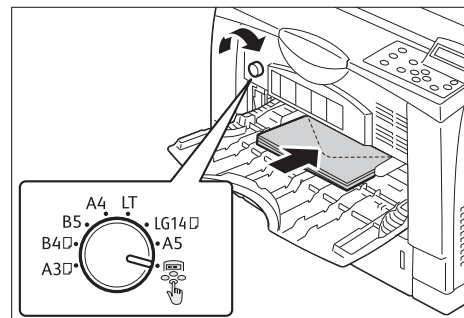
2.   Adjust the paper guides to the size of the envelopes.   envelopes

3.   Set the paper size setting dial on the bypass tray to "Other."

4.   Set the paper size for the bypass tray on the control panel.

Refer to
• "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray" (P. 107).
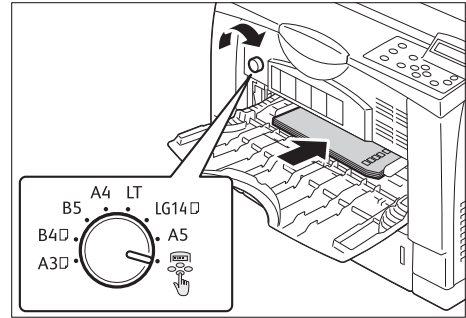
Printing on Envelopes

The following procedures use Windows XP WordPad as an example.

Note
• The method for displaying the Properties dialog box varies depending on the application being used. Refer to the documentation for the application.

1.   On the [File] menu, select [Print].

2.   Select the printer from the [Select Printer] list box, and then click [Preferences].

3.   The [Paper/Output] tab appears. Click <v> beside the [Paper] to display the options, and then select [Advanced Paper Selection].
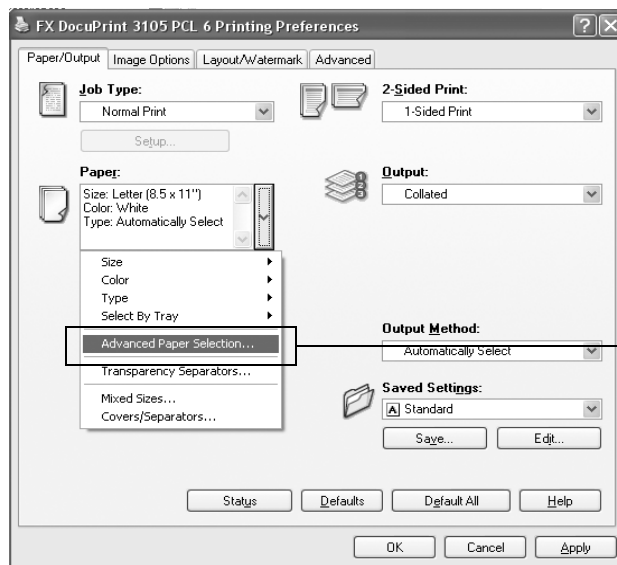
4.   For [Paper Tray], select [Tray 5 (Bypass)].
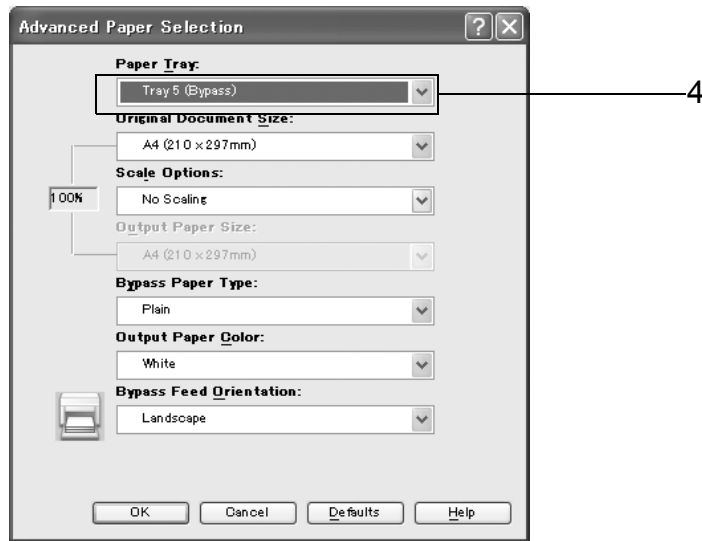
5.   5.Click <v> beside the [Paper] to display the options, and then select [Advanced Paper Selection].
[Advanced Paper Selection] is appear.
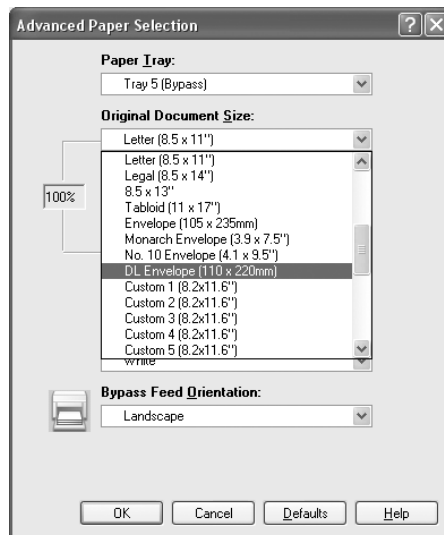
6. If the output paper size is different from the file size, choose [Automatically Scale] for [Scale Options], and then select output paper size for [Output Paper Size]
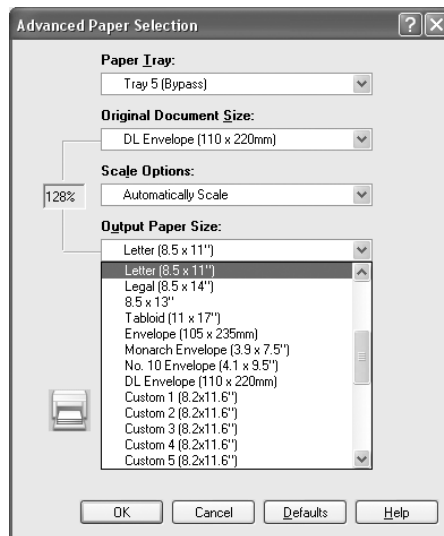
7. Click [OK] to close the [Advanced Paper Selection] dialog box.

8. On the [Paper/Output] tab, click [OK].

9. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.

3.3 Printing on Custom Size or Long-size Paper

This section explains how to print on long-size and custom size paper.

The following are the sizes of paper that can be loaded into the paper trays.

Bypass Tray	Trays 1 - 3
↑ Paper feed direction Length: 98 - 432 mm Width: 75 - 297 mm * The long size of 900x297mm can be used.	↑ Paper feed direction Length: 148 - 432 mm Width: 76 - 297 mm

Loading Custom Size or Long Size Paper

Using the Bypass Tray

The following example explains how to load long-size paper into the bypass tray.

Note
- Finger prints can leave marks on the printing surface of long-size paper. Take care to avoid getting marks on the long size paper when loading it.
- For information about loading other custom size paper, refer to "4.2 Loading Paper" (P. 107).
- The only paper type setting that can be specified for long size paper is [Custom (297 - 900 mm)].

1. Load the paper into the bypass tray with the print side of the long-size paper facing up and the trailing edge curled as shown in the illustration.

Note
- Curl the trailing edge of the long-size paper as far as possible from the paper inlet slot. Curling it too close to the paper inlet slot can result in the trailing edge feeding into the printer, causing the paper to be creased or wrinkled.
- Carefully insert the leading edge of the paper into the inlet slot of the bypass tray. Incorrect insertion can cause paper jams.
- Load paper one sheet at a time.

2. Adjust the paper guide to the size of the long-size paper.
    Since long-size paper is long, be sure to pick up each printed sheet as it comes out to avoid it from falling to the floor.
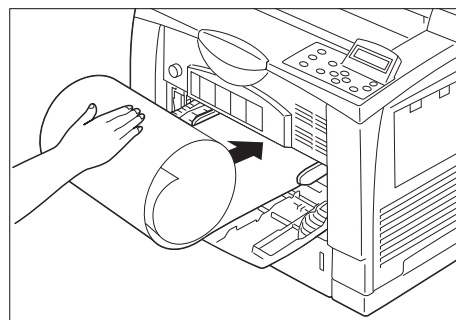
Using Trays 1 - 3

The procedure for loading custom size paper into Trays 1 - 3 is the same as for standard-size paper. Refer to "4.2 Loading Paper" (P. 107).

Registering Custom Size Paper

Custom size paper needs to be registered with the print driver before it can be used. The following example shows how to do this with Windows XP.

When loading custom size paper in tray 1, 2, or 3, use the control panel to configure the paper size settings. For information on how to configure settings on the control panel, refer to "Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays" (P. 115).

Important
• Make sure the paper size settings are configured correctly with the print driver or on the control panel. Setting the wrong paper size can cause malfunction of the printer.

Note
• Only users with administrator level access authority can change settings. Users without administrator privileges can only view settings.
• Changing the settings on the [Custom Paper Size] dialog box when running Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista while the printer is being used as a local printer can affect settings for other printers on your computer. Changing settings when the printer is a network printer can affect other network-shared printers on other computers over the network. This is because the printer uses its own form database when it is local, while it uses the form database of a server that has a print queue when it is networked.

1. On the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] (Select [Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS) and display the properties of the printer being used.

2. Click the [Device Settings] tab.
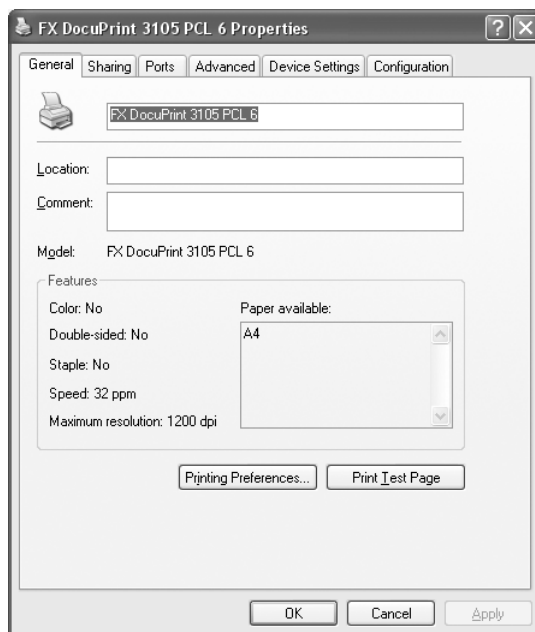
3. Click [Custom Paper Size].
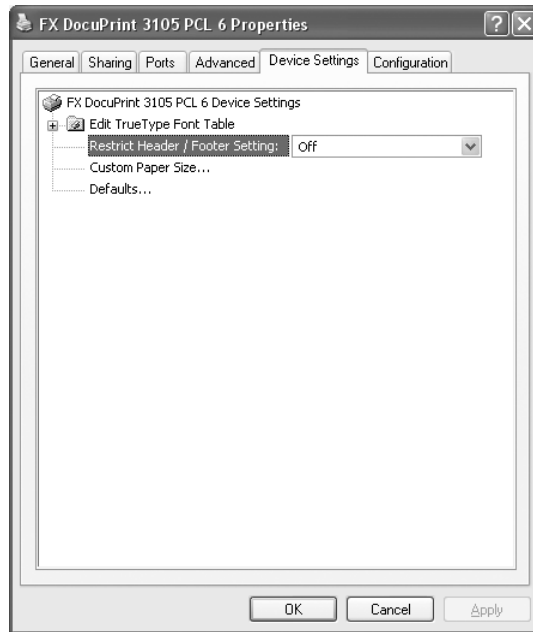
4. Click [Setup].
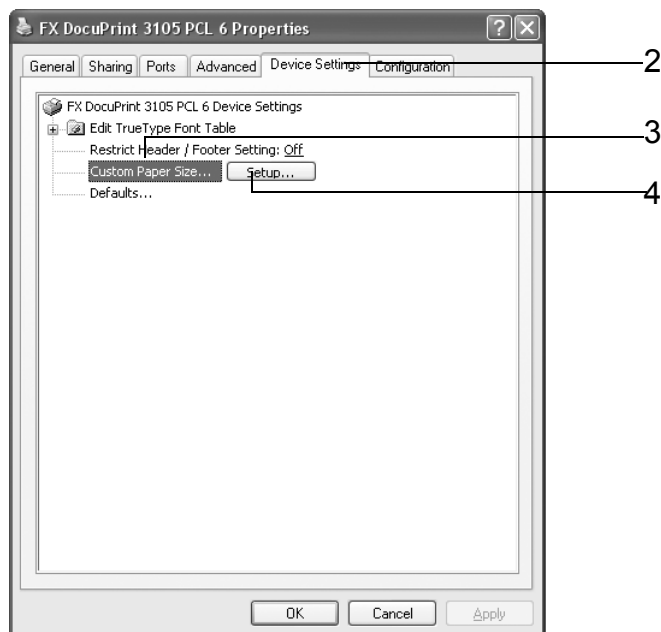
5. Select custom items to be set from the list box for paper name and size.
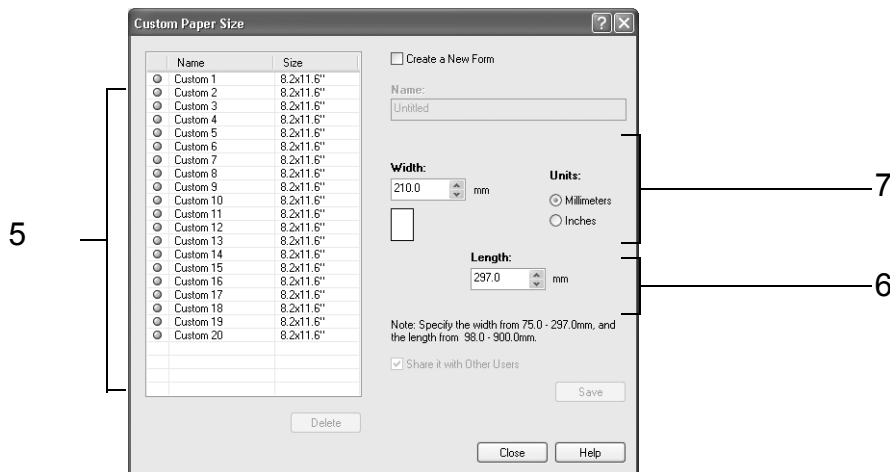
Note
- In the case of Windows 7, select the name of the paper for which a custom size is to be registered from [Custom 1] to [Custom 20].
- If changing paper name, select the [Create a New Form] check box and then enter a name in [Paper Name]. A paper name can be up to 31 single-byte characters long.

6. Specify the length for [Width] and [Length].
   Use key input or the [▲] and [▼] keys to specify the lengths.
   Even if the [Width] setting is within the allowable range, you cannot specify a value that is greater than the [Length] setting. Conversely, even if the [Length] setting is within the allowable range, you cannot specify a value that is less than the [Width] setting.

7. To define other custom paper sizes, repeat Steps 5 to 6 of this procedure.

8. Click [Save].

Note
- Proceed to step 10 when registering with a new paper name.

9. Click [Yes].

10. Click [Close].

11. Click [OK].

Printing on Custom Size Paper

The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

Important
• Make sure to set paper sizes correctly. Setting wrong paper sizes can cause printer malfunctions.

Note
• The method for displaying the Properties dialog box varies depending on the application being used. Refer to the documentation of the application.

1. On the [File] menu, select [Print].

2. Select the printer from the [Select Printer] list box, and then click [Preferences].

3. The [Paper/Output] tab appears.
    Click <v> beside the [Paper] to display the options, and then select the registered custom paper size from [Size].
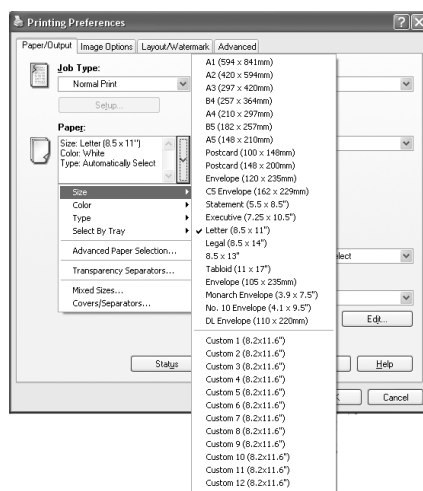
4. When the paper is loaded in the Bypass Tray, click <v> beside the [Paper] to display the options, and then select [Advanced Paper Selection].
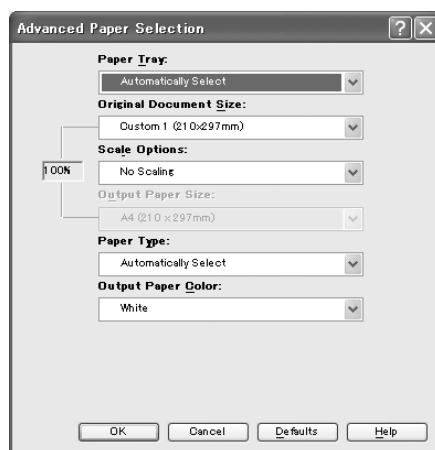
5. Click [OK] to close the [Advanced Paper Selection] dialog box.

6. Click [OK].

7. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.

3.4   Printing various types of papers

The trays 1 - 3 accept plain paper and special media such as heavyweight paper, labels, and transparencies.

This section describes how to print after changing the paper type settings of tray 1, 2, or 3.

The following procedures use Windows XP WordPad as an example.

Important
- The method for displaying the Properties dialog box varies depending on the application being used. Refer to the documentation for the application.

Note
- Paper type setting method: " Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays" (P. 115) and " Changing the Paper Type Settings of Trays" (P. 117).
- Loading settings to the printer driver: "2.5 Importing Printer Information to a Print Driver" (P. 54)

Automatically Printing after Changing the Paper Type

When the [Paper Type] settings match the loaded paper type in the tray, the printer will select the appropriate tray based on the paper type setting you specified, even if you do not specify a paper tray with the print driver.

This method makes it possible to request a print job without worrying about the type of paper loaded in each paper tray.

In order to use this feature, use the control panel to configure paper type settings for the printer trays.

1.   On the [File] menu, select [Print].

2.   Select the printer from the [Select Printer] list, and then click [Preferences].

3.   Click <v> beside the [Paper] to display the options, and then select [Advanced Paper Selection].

4.   For [Paper Tray], select [Automatically Select].

5.   For the [Paper Type], select the paper type to print.
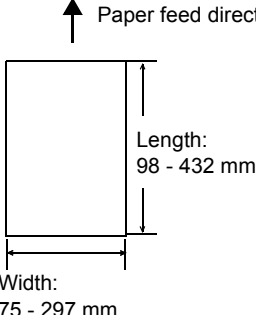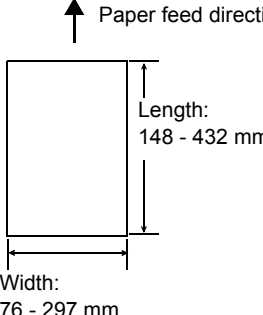
6.   Set the [Original Document Size].

7. If the output paper size is different from the file size, choose [Automatically Scale] for [Scale Options], and then select output paper size for [Output Paper Size].
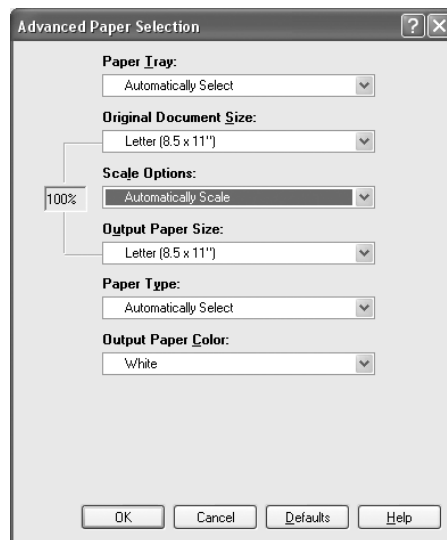
8. Click [OK] to close the [Advanced Paper Selection] dialog box.

9. Click [OK].

10. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.

3.5 Printing confidential documents
- Secure Print -

The Secure Print function can be used when HDD Extension Kit (optional) and extension system memory (optional) are installed on the printer, or the extension system memory (1GB) (optional) is installed and RAM disk is enabled.

Important
- In case the HDD Extension Kit (optional) fails, we recommend you to back up the HDD Extension Kit (optional) data on your computer.
- All documents stored may be deleted if the printer power is turned off and on, while using RAM disk.

Refer to
- How to enable RAM disk:"7.8 Enabling a RAM Disk" (P. 275)

Secure Print

Secure Print is a feature that allows you to send a password-protected document to the printer. Instead of printing the document immediately, the printer stores it temporarily until you use the control panel to start printing manually. This feature also can store documents that are not password protected. By storing frequently-used documents in the printer, you can print them whenever you want, without having to send them each time from your computer.
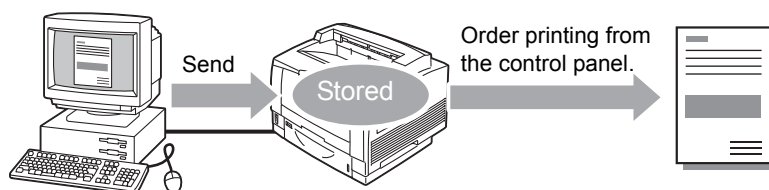
Note
- Whether or not to delete a Secure Print job after printing it can be specified when you print it from the control panel. For more information, refer to "Control Panel Operations" (P. 75).
- Secure Print output is not supported when [Disabled] is selected for [Secure Print] on the control panel.
- Password input is always required when the [Minimum Passcode Length] setting on the [Configuration] tab > [Installable Options] > [Installable Options] dialog box of the printer's properties dialog box is [1] or greater.

Printing with Secure Print

The following explains how to print a job with Secure Print.

Configure Secure Print settings on your computer and then send the job to the printer. Next, perform the required control panel operation to start printing manually.

Computer Operations

The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

Note
- The method for displaying the Properties dialog box varies depending on the application being used. Refer to the documentation for the application.

1. On the [File] menu, select [Print].

2. Select the printer from the [Select Printer] list box, and then click [Preferences].

3. The [Paper/Output] tab appears.
    For [Job Type], select [Secure Print].
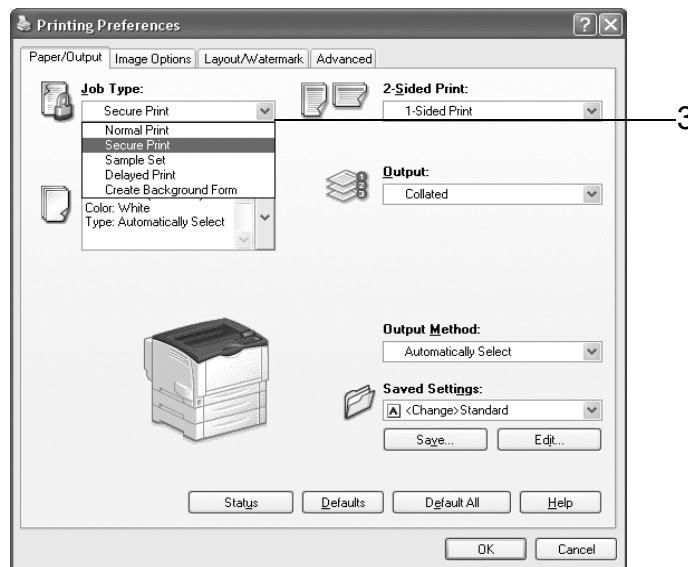
4. Click [Setup].
    The [Secure Print] dialog box appears.

5. Enter your user ID into [User ID].
    The user ID can be up to 8 single-byte alphanumeric characters.
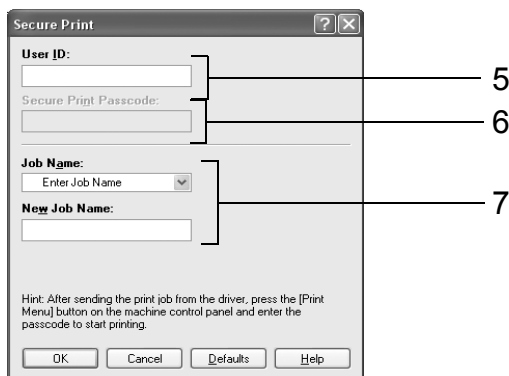
6. If a password is assigned to the job, enter the password into [Secure Print Passcode].
    The password can be up to 12 single-byte numeric characters.

7. For [Job Name], select [Enter Job Name] or [Use Existing Name].
    If you selected [Enter Job Name], name the document by entering up to 12 single-byte characters into [New Job Name].
    If you selected [Use Existing Name], the document name will be the name of the document to be printed. If the printer cannot identify the name of the document, the date and time that the document will be printed is used for the name.

8. Click [OK].

9. On the [Paper/ Output] tab, click [OK].

10. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.
    This will store the document in the printer.

Control Panel Operations

The following explains how to print a Secure Print job stored in the printer.

Note
• To delete a Secure Print job without printing it, select [Delete] after Step 8.

1. On the control panel, press the <Print
   Menu> button.

```
Print Menu
 Secure Print
```
↓

2. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select.
   A user ID appears.

```
Select User ID
 1001.12345678
```
↓

3. Press the <▼> button until the desired user
   ID appears.

Note
• The user ID is the ID set for [User ID] on the [Secure
  Print] dialog box of the print driver.

4. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select.
   A screen that allows you to enter a
   password appears.

```
Passcode+OK key
 [0           ]
```
↓

5. Enter your password using the <▲> and
   <▼> buttons. Use the <►> button to move
   the cursor.

```
Passcode+OK key
 [**7         ]
```
↓

Note
• Enter the password you specified for [Secure Print
  Passcode] on the [Secure Print] dialog box of the print
  driver. When a password is not specified, the control
  panel will not prompt you for entry of a password.

6. Press the <OK> button to apply the setting.
   A document name appears.

```
Select Job
1.Report
```
↓

7. Press the <▼> button until the desired
   document name appears.

Note
• The document name is the name (of up to 12 bytes)
  specified for [Job Name] on the [Secure Print] dialog
  box of the print driver.
• When more than one document is stored in the printer,
  an [All Jobs] option is also available.

8. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A screen appears that allows you to specify whether to delete or save the document after printing.

```
1.Report
 Print & Delete
```
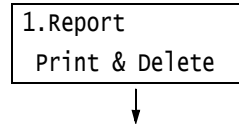
Note
• To delete the job without printing, press the <▼> button to display [Delete], press the <►> button, and then press the <OK> button.
• If you want to save the document in the printer after printing, press the <▼> button, display [Print & Save], and proceed to Step 9 of this procedure.

9. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A screen to enter the number of copies appears.

```
Quantity
 1 Set(s)
```
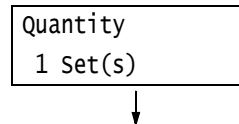
10. Enter the number of copies using the <▼> button, and then press the <►> or <OK> button to print the document. A print start confirmation screen appears.

```
1.Report
Use OK to print
```

11. Press the <OK> button to print. Printing starts.

12. Press the <Print Menu> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.
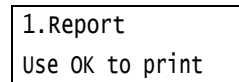
3.6 Printing after checking output - Sample Set -

Sample Set is available if the printer has HDD Extension Kit (optional), or else install extension system memory (1GB) (optional) and RAM disk enabled.

Important
- In case the HDD Extension Kit (optional) fails, we recommend you to back up the HDD Extension Kit (optional) data on your computer.

Sample Set

Sample Set lets you print a proof copy of a multi-set job and print the rest of the sets after checking the proof copy. The job is stored on the printer's HDD Extension Kit (optional) until all of the sets are printed using the control panel.
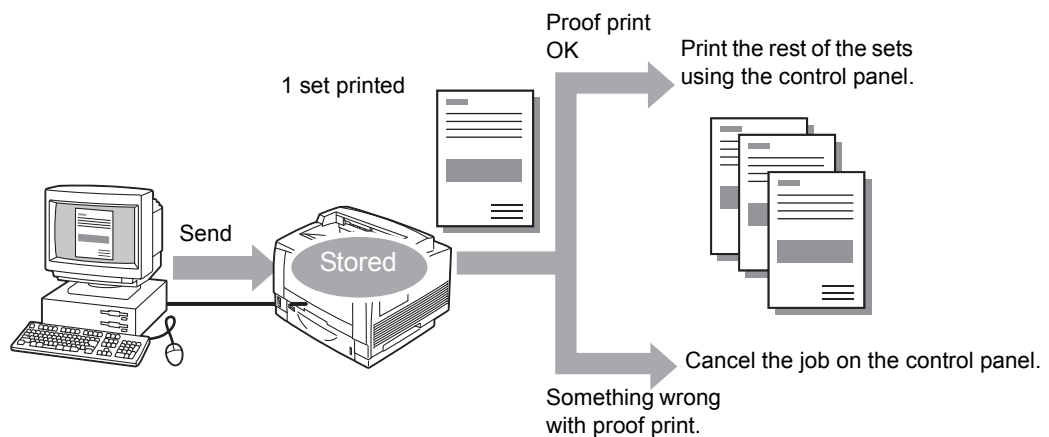
Note
- To delete Sample Set jobs that have accumulated on the printer, without printing them, refer to "Control Panel Operations" (P. 79).

Printing Using Sample Set

The following explains how to use Sample Set to print a job.

Configure Sample Set settings on your computer and then send the job to the printer. Next, perform the required control panel operation to start printing manually.

Computer Operations

The following procedure uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

Note
- The method for displaying the Properties dialog box varies depending on the application being used. Refer to the documentation for the application.

1. On the [File] menu, select [Print].

2. Select the printer from the [Select Printer] list box, and then click [Preferences]. The [Paper/Output] tab appears.

3. For [Job Type], select [Sample Set].
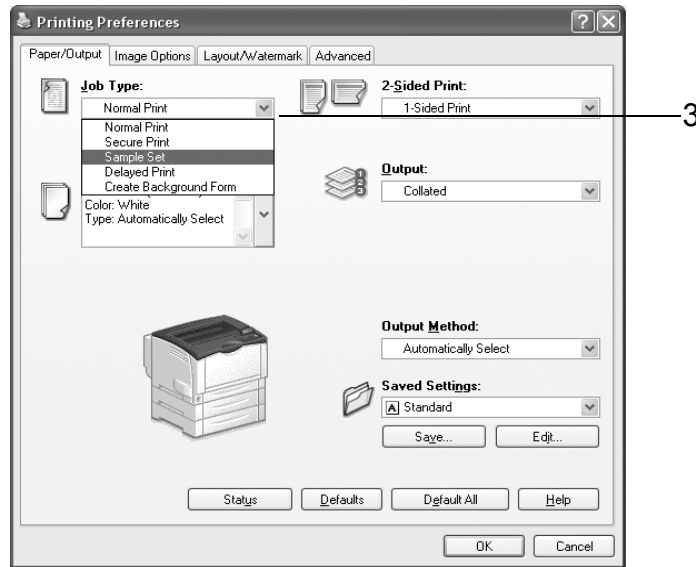
4. Click [Setup].
   The [Sample Set] dialog box appears.

5. Enter your user ID into [User ID].
   The user ID can be up to 8 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

6. For [Job Name], select [Enter Job Name] or [Use Existing Name].
   If you selected [Enter Job Name], name the document by entering up to 12 single-byte characters into [New Job Name].
   If you selected [Use Existing Name], the document name will be the name of the document to be printed. If the printer cannot identify the name of the document, the date and time that the document will be printed is used for the name.

7. Click [OK].

8. On the [Paper/ Output] tab, click [OK].

9. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.

Control Panel Operations

The following explains how to print or delete a Sample Set job depending on the proof print result.

1. On the control panel, press the <Print Menu> button.

```
Print Menu
 Secure Print
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Sample Set] appears.

```
Print Menu
 Sample Set
```

3. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A user ID appears.

```
Select User ID
 2001.12345678
```

4. Press the <▼> button until the desired user ID appears.

Note
• The user ID is the ID specified for [User ID] on the [Sample Set] dialog box of the print driver.

5. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A document name appears.

```
Select Job
1.Report
```

6. Press the <▼> button until the desired document name appears.

Note
• The document name is the name (of up to 12 bytes) specified for [Job Name] on the [Sample Set] dialog box of the print driver.
• When more than one document is stored in the printer, an [All Jobs] option is also available.

7. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A screen appears that allows you to specify whether to delete or save the document after printing.

```
1.Report
 Print
```

Note
• To delete the job without printing, press the <▼> button to display [Delete], press the <►> button, and then press the <OK> button.

8. When printing the document, use the <►> or <OK> button to select. A screen to enter the number of copies appears.

```
Quantity
 1 Set(s)
```

9. Enter the number of copies using the <▼> button, and then press the <▶> or <OK> button to print the document.
A print start confirmation screen appears.

```
1.Report
Use OK to print
```

Note
• The initial number of copies is one less than the number preset in the print driver because one copy has already been printed.

10. Press the <OK> button to print.
Printing starts.

11. Press the <Print Menu> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.

3.7 Printing at a Specified Time - Delayed Print -

Delayed Print is available if the printer has HDD Extension Kit (optional), or else install extension system memory (1GB) (optional) and RAM disk enabled.

Important
- In case the HDD Extension Kit (optional) fails, we recommend you to back up the HDD Extension Kit (optional) data on your computer.

Delayed Print

Delayed Print stores print data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional) and prints it automatically at a preset time.
The number of jobs which can be executed (held) at the same time is 100 jobs or less.

Important
- Do not turn off the printer power while a Delayed Print job is pending.
  If the printer power is turned off (before the specified time) while print job is in stand-by and HDD Extension Kit (optional) is used, print job which passed specified time starts automatically as soon as the power is turned back on for the next time.

Note
- The time setting for Delayed Print must be within 24 hours after the print job is requested.

Registering a Delayed Print Job

This procedure explains how to print a job with Delayed Print.
It uses Windows XP WordPad as an example.

1. On the [File] menu, select [Print].

2. Select the printer from the [Select Printer] list, and then click [Preferences].

3. For [Job Type] on the [Paper/ Output] tab, select [Delayed Print].
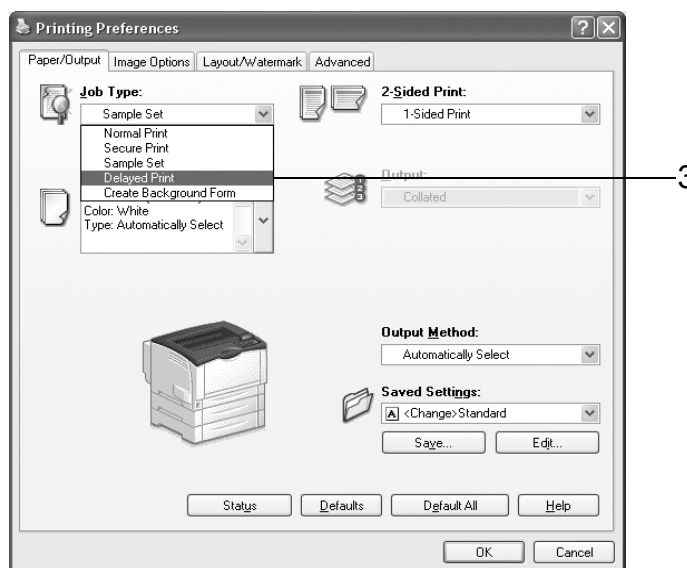
4. Click [Setup].
   The [Delayed Print] dialog box appears.

5. Specify the printing start time.
   Use 24-hour format to specify the time.

6. For [Job Name], select [Enter Job Name] or [Use Existing Name]. If you selected [Enter Job Name], name the document by entering up to 12 single-byte characters into [New Job Name].
   If you selected [Use Existing Name], the document name will be the name of the document to be printed. If the printer cannot identify the name of the document, the date and time that the document will be printed is used for the name.

7. Click [OK].

8. On the [Paper/ Output] tab, click [OK].

9. Click [Print] on the [Print] dialog box to start printing.
   Printing will start when the specified time is reached.

Canceling a Delayed Print Job

You can use the control panel to cancel a Delayed Print job or to print a Delayed Print job immediately, regardless of the specified time.

1. On the control panel, press the <Print Menu> button.

```
Print Menu
  Secure Print
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Delayed Print] is displayed.

```
Print Menu
  Delayed Print
```

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. A document name appears.

```
Select Job
1.Report
```

4. Press the <▼> button until the desired document name appears.
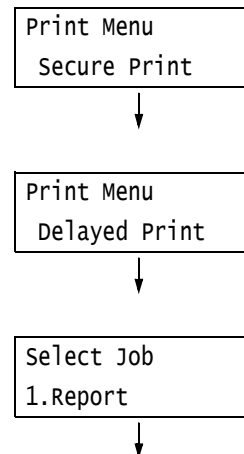
Note
• The document name is the name (of up to 12 bytes) specified for [Job Name] on the [Delayed Print] dialog box of the print driver.

5. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select.
   A screen for selecting whether to print
   immediately or to delete the job without
   printing appears.

```
1.Report
 Print Now
```
↓
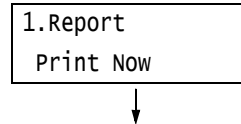
Note
• If you want to delete the job without printing, press the
  <▼> button to display [Delete], press the <►> button,
  and then press the <OK> button.

6. To print the document immediately, use the
   <►> or <OK> button to select.
   A print start confirmation screen appears.

```
1.Report
Use OK to print
```
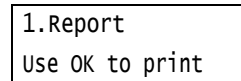
7. Press the <OK> button to print.
   Printing starts.

8. Press the <Print Menu> button to return to
   the [Ready to print] screen.

3.8 Private Charge Print

Private Charge Print is available if the printer has HDD Extension Kit (optional), or else install extension system memory (1GB) (optional) and RAM disk is enabled.

Important
- In case the HDD Extension Kit (optional) fails, we recommend you to back up the HDD Extension Kit (optional) data on your computer.
- All documents stored may be deleted if the printer power is turned off and on, while using RAM disk.

Refer to
- How to enable RAM disk: "7.8 Enabling a RAM Disk" (P. 275)

Private Charge Print

Private Charge Print is a function to store print job data from a computer temporarily in the printer and then print it when necessary with Smart card verification, if IC Card Reader (optional or purchase separately) is connected to the printer.

Print job data from a computer is saved by each user ID for authentication, so that only documents of the user corresponded to the information on Smart card authentication can be printed.

Note
- The IC Card Reader may not be supplied with the printer in some regions. Contact your dealer for details.
- The Authentication feature includes login to local accounts, which uses user IDs and other login information registered on the printer, and login to remote accounts with an affiliated external authentication server. Contact your dealers for information about using the Authentication feature.
- If IC Card Reader is connected, print job data for Secure Print and Sample Set already stored in the printer may not be available to use. In this case, print or delete print job data before connecting IC Card Reader.
- Print jobs using Watermark and Secure Watermark are available for printing by releasing these functions, when selecting [Print Menu] > [DisableForcePrint] on the control panel. This option is available only for users having authority to temporarily exit forced print.
  Refer to " Create Authorization Group and Association with Users" (P. 304) for information on setting authority to temporarily exit forced print. Refer to "7.9 Security Features" > " Using the Watermark Feature" (P. 279) for Watermark and Secure Watermark features.
- If Private Charge Print feature is set, ordinary print, Secure Print, Sample Set and Delayed Print are not available.

Configuring Private Charge Print Settings

Configuring Printer Settings

Private Charge Print is displayed if either of the following is set in [Admin Menu] > [System Settings] > [Authentication] > [Charge Print] of the control panel.

- When [Receive Control] is set to [PrivateChargePrint].

- When [Receive Control] is set to [ReferPrintAuditron] while [PrivateChargePrint] is set in [Process Job Login] > [Job Login Success].

Refer to
- " Secure Print" (P. 85)

Configuring Print Driver Settings

To use Private Charge Print, a user ID must be specified on the print driver properties dialog box. Printing is not possible if the user ID does not match the verification information.

For details about the content of settings and setting procedures, consult your system administrator.

Printing with Private Charge Print

With Private Charge Print, user can print job stored in the printer by touching Smart card.

1. While [Ready to print] is displayed on the control panel, make sure to touch Smart card for authentication.

    Documents are printed automatically if authentication of the user is successful.

```
Ready to print
 Toner Left ▣
```
↓
```
Printing...
```

Deleting Print Job

The following explains how to delete print job stored in the printer in Private Charge Print.

1. On the control panel, press the <Print Menu> button.

    ```
    Print Menu
     Secure Print
    ```
    ↓

2. Press <▼> button until [Del PteChgePrint] appears.

    ```
    Print Menu
     Del PteChgePrint
    ```
    ↓

3. Select with <►> or <OK> button. The screen shown to the right appears.

    ```
    Use Smart Card
    to login
    ```
    ↓

4. Make sure to touch Smart card for authentication. Document name is displayed if authentication is successful.

    ```
    Select JobToDelete
    1.Report
    ```
    ↓

5. Press <▼> button until the desired document name appears.

    Note
    • When more than one document is stored in the printer, an [All Jobs] option is also available.

6. Select with <►> or <OK> button. The screen to start deleting print job appears.

    ```
    1.Report
     Use OK to delete
    ```

7. Press <OK> button.
    Print job is deleted.

8. Press the <Print Menu> button to return to
    the [Ready to print] screen.

3.9 Charge Print

Charge Print is available if the printer has HDD Extension Kit (30GB) (optional).

Important
• In case the HDD Extension Kit (optional) fails, we recommend you to back up the HDD Extension Kit (optional) data on your computer.

Charge Print

Charge Print is a function to allow the printer to prevent invalid print job based on Smat card authentication of the user, if IC Card Reader is connected to the printer.

If [Admin Menu] > [System Settings] > [Authentication] > [Charge Print] > [Receive Control] of the control panel is set to [Save inChargePrint], print job data from a computer will be temporarily saved in the printer by each Billing ID. Print job data without a Billing ID will be saved as [No User ID]. Print job data saved is available for printing by the user operation from a printer.

Note
• Print job without a user ID is also available for printing by authentication, since print job without a user ID which cannot be saved in Private Charge Print (Print job using ContentsBridge and CentreWare Internet Services, Mail Print, etc.) can be saved.
• The IC Card Reader may not be supplied with the printer in some regions. Contact your dealers for details.
• The Authentication feature includes login to local accounts, which uses user IDs and other login information registered on the printer, and login to remote accounts with an affiliated external authentication server. Contact your dealers for information about using the Authentication feature.
• If IC Card Reader is connected, print job data for Secure Print and Sample Set already stored in the printer may not be available to use. In this case, print or delete print job data before connecting IC Card Reader.

Configuring Charge Print Settings

Configuring Printer Settings

Charge Print is displayed if any of the following is set in [Admin Menu] > [System Settings] > [Authentication] > [Charge Print] of the control panel.

• When [Receive Control] is set to [Save inChargePrint].

• When [Receive Control] is set to [ReferPrintAuditron] while [Save as ChargePrint] is set in [Process Job Login] > [Job Login Failure].

• When [Receive Control] is set to [ReferPrintAuditron] while [Save as ChargePrint] is set in [Process Job Login] > [Job Without User ID].

• When [Receive Control] is set to [Save as Private Charge Print Job] while [Save as Charge Print] is set in [Process Job Login] > [Job Without User ID].

Refer to

Configuring Print Driver Settings

Set Billing ID on the print driver properties dialog box. In addition to Billing ID, passcode must be set to prevent other users from operating your documents.

Printing with Charge Print

The following explains how to use Charge Print to print a job stored in the printer.

1. On the control panel, press the <Print Menu> button.

```
Print Menu
 Secure Print
```

2. Press <▼> button until [Charge Print] appears.

```
Print Menu
 Charge Print
```

3. Select with <►> or <OK> button.
   The screen shown to the right appears if IC Card Reader is connected to the printer. Make sure to touch Smart card for authentication.
   The screen shown in Step 4 appears if authentication is successful. Proceed to Step 4.
   The screen shown to the right does not appear if no IC Card Reader is connected to the printer. Proceed to Step 4.

```
Use Smart card
to login
```

4. User ID is displayed.
   Press <▼> button until the desired user ID appears.

```
Select User ID
 7001.(No User ID)
```

Note
- Select [(No User ID)] for user ID if printing documents with no Billing ID set.

```
Select User ID
 7002.12345678
```

5. Select with <►> or <OK> button.
   The screen shown to the right appears if passcode is set. Proceed to Step 6.
   The screen to select document appears if no passcode is set. Proceed to Step 8.

```
Passcode+OK key
 [0            ]
```

6. Enter your passcode using the <▲> and <▼> buttons. Use the <►> button to move the cursor.

```
Passcode+OK key
 [**7          ]
```

7. Press the <OK> button to apply the setting. A document name appears.

```
Select Job
 1.Report
```

8. Press <▼> button until the desired document name appears.

Note
- When more than one document is stored for the specific user ID, an [All Jobs] option is also available.

9. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A screen appears that allows you to specify whether to delete or save the document after printing.

```
1.Report
 Print & Delete
        |
        v
```
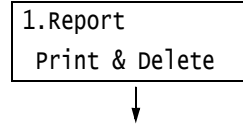
Note
- To delete the job without printing, press the <▼> button to display [Delete], press the <►> button, and then press the <OK> button.
- If you want to save the document in the printer after printing, press the <▼> button, display [Print & Save], and proceed to Step 10.

10. Select with <►> or <OK> button. A screen to enter the number of copies appears.

```
Quantity
 1 Set(s)
        |
        v
1.Report
 Use OK to print
```
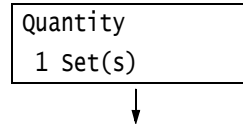
11. Enter the number of copies using the <▼> button, and then press the <►> or <OK> button to print the document. A print start confirmation screen appears.
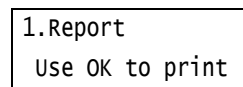
12. Press the <OK> button to print. Printing starts.

13. Press the <Print Menu> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.

3.10   Direct Printing of PDF Files

Some PDF files can be sent directly to the printer without using a print driver. Direct printing of PDF files is much easier and faster compared to printing them using a print driver.

You can select from the following modes to print PDF files directly, the one is a mode using PDF Bridge feature that comes standard with the printer, or the other one is a mode using PostScript feature.

Set print process mode for PDF files on [Process Mode] of [PDF] on the control panel.

Refer to
• " [PDF]" (P. 126)

Supported PDF Files

PDF files created on Adobe Acrobat 4 to Adobe Acrobat 9 can be printed on the printer. Note, however, that the following features are not supported.

• When using PDF Bridge feature: Some features added from PDF 1.5 and later

• When using PostScript: Some features added from PDF 1.7 and later

Although Adobe PDF 1.6 supports PDF Direct Print feature, please note the following points.

When using PostScript

• PDF1.6 features such as transparent objects are supported, but rendering being complex, PDF output may take time.

• It does not support the settings for embedding OpenType font in Adobe Acrobat 7 (PDF1.6).

• Although it supports features of PDF1.6 created in Adobe Acrobat 7 and later, it does not support features of PDF1.7 (Adobe Acrobat 8 and 9).

• Depending on how they are created, some PDF files cannot be printed directly. In that case, open the files and print them using a print driver.

Printing PDF Files Directly

There are several methods for printing PDF files directly.

Important
• For direct printing of PDF files using the USB or parallel port, use the ContentsBridge Utility.

Printing PDF Files Using ContentsBridge Utility

The ContentsBridge Utility is a software by Fuji Xerox to send files from a computer directly to the printer for printing.
The ContentsBridge Utility is on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM. To use ContentsBridge Utility, refer to the manual on the CD-ROM.

Note
• In addition to PDF files, ContentsBridge Utility also can be used to print DocuWorks, TIFF, JPEG and XML Paper Specification (XPS) files.

Printing PDF Files Using CentreWare Internet Services

Printing of PDF files can be instructed directly to the printer by specifying PDF files from [Print] tab of CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- To use this feature, you are required to install HDD Extension Kit (optional) and Extension System Memory (optional).
- In addition to PDF files, CentreWare Internet Services also can be used to print DocuWorks, TIFF, JPEG and XML Paper Specification (XPS) files.

Printing PDF Files Using E-mail

E-mail can be sent from a computer to the printer by attaching PDF files for printing. For more information, refer to "3.12 Printing Using E-mail - E-mail Print -" (P. 94).

Note
- To use this feature, you are required to install HDD Extension Kit (optional).

Sending PDF Files Using Lpr Command

PDF files can be sent directly to the printer using commands such as lpr. When printing with commands, the following items are printed according to [PDF] settings on the control panel.

- Process Mode
- Quantity
- 2 Sided Printing
- Print Mode
- Password

- Collated
- Layout
- Output Size

Refer to
- "[PDF]" (P. 126)

Note
- [Layout] does not appear when [PS] is selected for [Process Mode].
- "2 Sided Printing" is displayed when the Duplex unit (optional) is installed.
- When printing using the lpr command, use the lpr command to specify the number of copies. In such cases, the [Quantity] setting on the control panel becomes invalid. If you do not specify the number of copies using the lpr command, the printer assumes 1 set.

The following is an example of printing a PDF file from a computer using the lpr command.

Note
- In the following examples, the bold characters are input characters.
- Spaces are indicated with **r**.

Example

At the command prompt, enter the command as follows.

Example: A command for printing "event.pdf" when the printer's IP address is 192.168.1.100.

C:\>**lprr-Sr192.168.1.100r-Prlprevent.pdf**   <Enter> key

3.11 Direct Printing of DocuWorks Files

DocuWorks files can be sent directly to the printer for printing without using a print driver. Direct printing of PDF files is much easier and faster compared to printing them using a print driver.

Supported DocuWorks Files

The following DocuWorks files can be printed.

- DocuWorks Ver. 3 - 7 documents (Extension: .xdw)
- DocuWorks Ver. 4 - 7 binder documents (Extension: .xbd)

Note
- Self-extracting documents (Extension: .exe) cannot be printed.
- Depending on how they are created, some PDF files cannot be printed directly. In that case, open DocuWorks files and print them using a print driver.

Printing DocuWorks Files Directly

There are several methods for printing DocuWorks files directly.

Important
- For direct printing of DocuWorks files using the USB or parallel port, use the ContentsBridge Utility.

Printing DocuWorks Files Using ContentsBridge Utility

The ContentsBridge Utility is a software by Fuji Xerox to send files from a computer directly to the printer for printing.
The ContentsBridge Utility is on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM. To use ContentsBridge Utility, refer to the manual on the CD-ROM.

Note
- In addition to DocuWorks files, ContentsBridge Utility also can be used to print PDF, TIFF, JPEG and XML Paper Specification (XPS) files.

Printing DocuWorks Files Using CentreWare Internet Services

Printing of DocuWorks files can be instructed directly to the printer by specifying DocuWorks files from [Print] tab of CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- To use this feature, you are required to install HDD Extension Kit (optional).
- In addition to DocuWorks files, CentreWare Internet Services also can be used to print PDF, TIFF, JPEG and XML Paper Specification (XPS) files.

Printing DocuWorks Files Using E-mail

E-mail can be sent from a computer to the printer by attaching DocuWorks files for printing. For more information, refer to "3.12 Printing Using E-mail - E-mail Print -" (P. 94).

Note
- To use this feature, you are required to install HDD Extension Kit (optional).

Sending DocuWorks Files Using Lpr Command

DocuWorks files can be sent directly to the printer using commands such as lpr. When printing with commands, the following items are printed according to [XDW (DocuWorks)] settings on the control panel.

- Quantity
- 2 Sided Printing
- Print Mode
- Password
- Collated
- Layout
- Output Size

Refer to
- " [XDW (DocuWorks)]" (P. 129)"

Note
- "2 Sided Printing" is displayed when the Duplex unit (optional) is installed.
- When printing using the lpr command, use the lpr command to specify the number of copies. In such cases, the [Quantity] setting on the control panel becomes invalid. If you do not specify the number of copies using the lpr command, the printer assumes 1 set.

The following is an example of printing DocuWorks files from a computer using the lpr command.

Note
- In the following examples, the bold characters are input characters.
- Spaces are indicated with **r**.

Example

At the command prompt, enter the command as follows.

Example: A command for printing "Report.xdw" when the printer's IP address is 192.168.1.100.

C:\>**lprr-Sr192.168.1.100r-PrlprReport.xdw**   <Enter> key

3.12 Printing Using E-mail
- E-mail Print -

When the printer has HDD Extension Kit (optional) installed, and is connected to a network environment that allows TCP/IP communication and e-mail receipt, e-mail can be sent from a computer to the printer.

The printer can automatically print e-mails received according to settings by the printer.

This feature is called Mail Print.

Important
- In case the HDD Extension Kit (optional) fails, we recommend you to back up the HDD Extension Kit (optional) data on your computer.

Note
- The following documents are available as an attachment: TIFF, PDF, JPEG (JFIF), XML Paper Specification (XPS), XDW (DocuWorks documents) and XBD (DocuWorks binder documents).
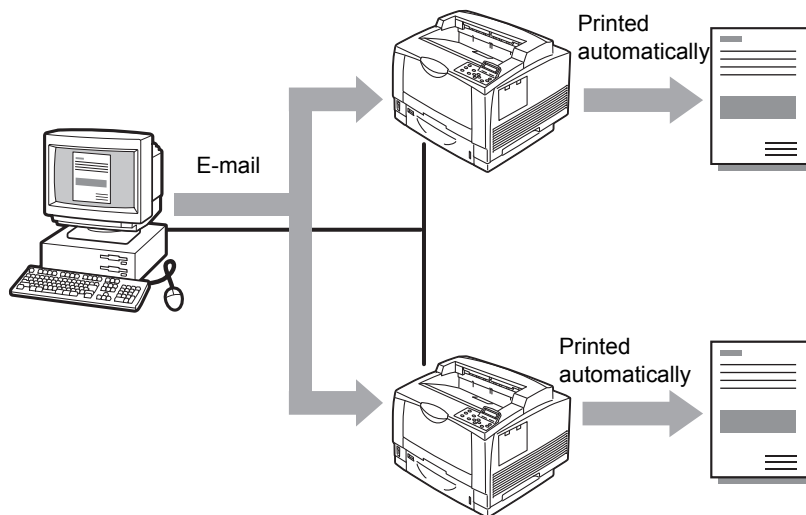
Configuring the Mail Print Environment

To use Mail Print, you must configure servers on your network (such as SMTP and POP3 servers).

Note
- Configuring the wrong e-mail settings can cause network problems. Be sure to leave configuration of e-mail settings up to your network administrator.

Network Environment Settings

E-mail account creation

E-mail Environment Settings (Printer)

Configure the items described below on the [Properties] tab of CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- After configuring the settings, be sure to click [Apply] and then turn the printer power off and then back on again.
- For details on each menu item, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Item	Setting	Description	Available Settings	Receiving Protocol	
				SMTP	**POP3**
Description	Administrator's E-mail Address	Specify the e-mail address of the Internet service administrator.	Alphanumeric characters plus ampersand (@), period (.), hyphen (-), and underbar (_); up to 128 bytes	○	○
	Machine's E-mail Address	Specify the printer's e-mail address. This address will appear in the "From:" field on e-mails sent from the printer.			
Connectivity > Port Settings	Receive E-mail	Select this check box.	-	○	○

Item	Setting	Description	Available Settings	Receiving Protocol	
				SMTP	POP3
Connectivity > Protocols > TCP/IP	Host Name	Specify the printer's host name. Host name is used by dynamic update of DNS and SMB. If host name having more than 16 single-byte characters is set, the first 15 characters are regarded as host name.	Alphanumeric characters plus hyphen (-); up to 32 bytes	O	O
	Domain Name	Specify the DNS domain name.	Alphanumeric characters plus period (.) and hyphen (-); up to 255 bytes	O	-
	Obtain DNS Server Address Automatically/ Obtain IPv6 DNS Server Address Automatically	Select the [Enabled] check box to obtain the IPv4 DNS server address/IPv6 server address automatically.	IPv4: • Cleared: Manual • Selected: DHCP* IPv6: • Cleared: Manual • Selected: DHCPv6-lite	O	-
	Preferred DNS Server/ Alternate DNS Server 1 - 2	Specify the IPv4/IPv6 DNS server address.	IPv4: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx IPv6: IPv6-addr format	O	-
	Dynamic DNS Registration (IPv4/IPv6)	Select the [Enabled] check box to update the IPv4/IPv6 DNS automatically, and the [Overwrite] check box to overwrite.	• Enabled • Overwrite*	O	-
	Generate Domain Search List Automatically	Select the [Enabled] check box to generate the domain search list automatically.	• Selected: Auto generation enabled* • Cleared: Auto generation disabled	O	-
	Domain Name 1 - 3	Specify domain names.	Alphanumeric characters plus period (.) and hyphen (-); up to 255 bytes	O	-
	Connection Time-Out	Specify the time-out time for domain searches.	1 - 60 seconds 1 second*	O	-
	DNS Resolution via IPv6 First	Select the [Enabled] check box to give priority to IPv6 DNS resolution in the dual stack mode.	• Selected: Priority* • Cleared: Non-priority	O	-

Item	Setting	Description	Available Settings	Receiving Protocol	
				SMTP	POP3
Services > E-mail > Defaults > From Address > Edit	Receiving Protocol	Specify the e-mail receiving protocol.	• SMTP • POP3*	O	-
	Incoming E-mail Print Options	Configure this setting when printing the e-mail header and message along with the document attached to received e-mail. Specify [Attachment, Full Headers & Message] to print the receive routing of the e-mail, etc.	• Print Attachment Only • Print Attachment & Message if it exists • Attachment, Basic Headers & Message* • Attachment, Full Headers & Message	O	O
	Print Delivery Confirmation E-mail	Specify whether or not delivery receipt e-mail should be printed.	• Off* • On • Print when delivery fails	O	O
Connectivity > Protocols > POP3 Setup	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Specify the IP address of the POP3 server for receiving e-mail, the IPv6-addr format, or FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name). Specify the port number used by the POP3 server.	Alphanumeric characters plus period (.) and hyphen (-); up to 128 bytes 1 ~ 65535	-	O
	POP Receive Password Encryption	Select the [APOP Authentication] check box to use APOP for POP receive verification.	• Cleared: Disabled* • Selected: Enabled	-	O
	Login Name	Set the login user name for the POP3 server. Only one user can be specified.	ASCII graphic characters (codes 33 to 126); up to 64 bytes	-	O
	Password	Specify the password for the POP user name, and re-enter the same password into [Retype Password].	ASCII printable characters (ASCII graphic characters plus space; codes 32 to 126); up to 64 bytes	-	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval for polling the POP3 server for mail.	1 to 120 minutes 10 minutes*	-	O

Item	Setting	Description	Available Settings	Receiving Protocol	
				SMTP	**POP3**

Connectivity > Protocols > SMTP Server	SMTP Server IP Address / Host Name	Specify the IP address of the POP3 server for receiving e-mail, the IPv6-addr format, or FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name). Also specify the port number used by the SMTP server.
		• IPv4
		  Input data in the form of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. xxx indicates numeric values between 0 and 255.
		• IPv6
		  Input data in the form of xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx. xxxx indicates values in hexadecimal.
		• When inputting the wrong data, re-enter it by pressing <Clear>button.
			Alphanumeric characters plus period (.) and hyphen (-); up to 128 bytes	○	-

	Port Number for sending E-mail	Specify the port number used by the SMTP server for sending e-mail.	1 ~ 65535	○	○
	Port Number for receiving E-mail	Specify the port number used by the SMTP server for receiving e-mail.	1 ~ 65535	○	-
	SSL/TLS Communication	Specify the SSL/TLS communication for SMTP.	•Disabled* •STARTTLS (If Available) •STARTTLS •SSL/TLS	○	○
	Machine's E-mail Address	Specify the printer's e-mail address. Any name can be specified for the account (Left side of @ mark) in case of SMTP reception. Specify combined values of the host name and domain name for the address (Right side of @ mark). Alias cannot be specified. • Account Name: mymail • Host Name: myhost • Domain Name: example.com E-mail address for the above example is mymail@myhost.example.com.	Characters allowed for e-mail addresses; up to 128 bytes	○	-
	Login Credentials for the Machine to access the SMTP Server to send automated e-mails	Specify the authentication method for the SMTP server.	• None* • POP before SMTP • SMTP AUTH	○	-

Item	Setting	Description	Available Settings	Receiving Protocol	
				SMTP	**POP3**
Connectivity > Protocols > SMTP Server	Login Name	Specify the user name for authentication for an SMTP server that requires authentication.	ASCII graphic characters (codes 33 to 126); up to 64 bytes	○	-
	Password	Specify the login for the SMTP server.	ASCII printable characters (ASCII graphic characters plus space; codes 32 to 126); up to 64 bytes	○	-

Receiving E-mails

Supported E-mail Attachments

The printer can receive e-mail attachments in the following formats.

- PDF files (Created with Adobe Acrobat 4 to Acrobat 9. However, when using PDF Bridge, some features added from PDF 1.5 and later are not supported. When using PostScript, some features added from PDF 1.7 and later are not supported.)

- TIFF files

- XML Paper Specification (XPS) files

- JPEG (JFIF) files

- DocuWorks files

Receiving E-mails

This example shows how to use Outlook Express to receive e-mail from a computer to the printer.

1. Use your e-mail software to create the e-mail and attach any XML Paper Specification (XPS) file.

Note
- E-mail messages in text or HTML format are supported. For e-mail messages in HTML format, the printer prints only text part of the message. If text part of the message is not sent despite its format is in HTML, the printer does not print e-mail message.
- The printer may not be able to print the attached file properly if its extension is other than tif, tiff, pdf, jpeg, jpg, jpe, jfif, xps, xdw or xbd.
- If the extension of the attached file is txt, "text/plain" is specified for Content-Type. It is printed only when "us-ascii" or "iso-2022-jp" is specified for charset.
- There is no case sensitivity in extensions of the attached files.
- Attachment of up to 31 documents is supported.
  However, if the attachment cannot be printed by the printer due to its format, it is not counted as the number of attachments.

2. Enter the printer's e-mail address for the address.

3. Send the e-mail.

Note
- E-mail messages and attached documents are printed in accordance with the following settings on the receiving printer.
  - Mail Message: A4-size, one-sided
  - TIFF File Attachment: current [TIFF/JPEG] setting for [Memory Settings] under the CentreWare Internet Services [Language Emulations] setting
  - PDF File Attachment: [PDF] when [PDF Bridge] is selected for [PDF] > [Process Mode] on the control panel; current [PostScript] setting for [Memory Settings] under CentreWare Internet Services [Language Emulations] when [PS] is selected for [Process Mode]
  - XML Paper Specification (XPS) File Attachment: Settings of Print Ticket (operation depends on [XPS] settings configured with control panel) included in the XPS
  - XDW or XBD File Attachment: [XDW (DocuWorks)] settings configured with control panel

Receiving and Printing E-mail Manually

Though e-mail is printed automatically when it is received by the printer, it also can be printed manually from the control panel (Only when POP reception).

Note
- This feature is available if HDD Extension Kit (optional) has been installed while [Properties] > [Connectivity] > [Port Settings] > [Receive E-mail] of CentreWare Internet Services is [Enabled] and [Properties] > [Services] > [E-mail] > [Receiving Protocol] is set to [POP3].

1. On the control panel, press the <Print Menu> button.

```
Print Menu
 Secure Print
```

Note
- In some environments, [Pte. Charge Print] will appear on the display first.

2. Press the <▼> button until [Mail Print] is displayed.

```
Print Menu
 Mail Print
```

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. A receive start confirmation screen is displayed.

```
Mail recvd.
Use OK to process
```

4. Press the <OK> button.
   This starts reception of the e-mail. The message is printed after reception is complete.

```
Mail received
Job in queue
```

   The [Ready to print] screen appears automatically after printing is complete.

```
Ready to print
 Toner Left ▭
```

Precautions When Using Mail Print

Security Precautions

E-mail uses the Internet, a network connecting computers around the world, as its transmission medium. Because of this, exchanging e-mails involves security risks such as information leakage and tampering.

Use of a method that is more secure than e-mail is recommended whenever exchanging important or confidential information. To prevent unwanted e-mails, do not give out your e-mail address unless necessary.

Setting IP Filter by Domains

The printer can be programmed to receive e-mails only from particular domains.

For more information on setting IP Filter by domains, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Precautions When Connecting the Printer with an Internet Provider

- If your Internet provider does not bill you at a flat rate, or if you do not have full-time access to the Internet, you will be charged every time the printer retrieves data from the e-mail server.

- Make sure to connect the printer in an IP masked environment. Proper operation is not guaranteed when the printer is connected to the Internet with a global IP address assigned.

- When enabling POP access, make sure to create a unique e-mail account for the printer. Using a shared e-mail account can cause problems.

- It may take time to receive graphics and other large data when Internet speed is slow.

- Some providers also support SMTP reception. Use of SMTP requires detailed setup with your provider.

- When connecting the printer to an Internet environment where MTA (Mail Transfer Agent) is running in a private segment, configure settings according to your operating needs.

4 Paper

4.1 About Paper

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. Use only paper that is appropriate for the printer.

⚠ **WARNING**
- Do not use conductive paper such as carbonic paper or coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.

Supported Paper

Supported Paper Sizes and Types

The following table lists the supported paper sizes and paper types, and the capacity of each paper tray.

Note
- G.S.M. (gram per square meter) refers to a weight in grams of one square meter of paper.

Paper Tray	Paper Size	Paper Type (G.S.M.)	Maximum Capacity
Bypass tray	A3, B4, A4, A4, B5, A5, 5.5 x 8.5", 7.25 x 10.5", 8.5 x 11", 8.5 x 14", 8.5 x 13", 11 x 17" Post Card (100 x 148mm), Post Card (148 x 200mm), Envelope (120 x 235mm), C5, Envelope (105 x 235mm), Monarch, COM-10, DL, Long-size paper(297 x 900 mm) Custom Paper (Width: 75 - 297 mm, Length: 98 - 432 mm)	Plain (60 - 90 g/m^2), Plain side (60 - 90 g/m^2), Recycled (60 - 90 g/m^2), Heavyweight (91 - 157 g/m^2), Extra Heavyweight (158 - 216 g/m^2), Light Weight (60 - 90 g/m^2), Label, Transparency,	150 sheets (RX-80) 150 sheets (Fuji Xerox 4200) or 17.5 mm max 75 sheets (Transparency) 10 sheets (Envelopes) 60 sheets (Postcard) 75 sheets (Label) **Important** • Load coated paper one sheet at a time. When multiple sheets are loaded moisture in the paper can cause multi-feeds and printer failure.
Tray 1 (standard) Tray 2 - 3[*1] (optional)	A3, B4, A4, A4, B5, A5, 8.5 x 11", 8.5 x 14", 11 x 17" Custom Paper (Width: 76 - 297 mm, Length: 148 - 432 mm)	Plain (60 - 90 g/m^2), Plain side (60 - 90 g/m^2), Recycled (60 - 90 g/m^2), Heavyweight (91 - 157 g/m^2), Extra Heavyweight (158 - 216 g/m^2), Light Weight (60 - 90 g/m^2), Transparency	500 sheets (Xerox 4200 Letter or RX 80 A4) or 59.4 mm max

[*1]: Can be loaded when a Single Tray Module (optional) is installed.

Important
- Be sure to load paper that meets the above requirements in each paper tray. Also be sure to select the correct paper sizes, paper types, and paper trays when sending print requests from your print driver. Loading paper that is not supported or configuring wrong settings can cause paper jams.
- Moisture, such as water, rain, and humidity can cause print images to come off from paper. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealers.

■ Paper for 2-Sided Printing

The following sizes and types of paper can be used for automatic 2-sided printing when using the Duplex unit (optional).

Paper Size	Paper Type
A3 ⊡, B4 ⊡, A4 ⊡, A4 ⊡, B5 ⊡, A5 ⊡, 11 x 17" ⊡, 5.5 x 8.5" ⊡, 8.5 x 14" ⊡, 8.5 x 13" ⊡, 8.5 x 11" ⊡, 8.5 x 11" ⊡, 7.25 x 10.5" ⊡, Custom Paper (Width: 100 - 297 mm, Length: 139 - 432 mm)	Plain (60 - 90g/m^2), Recycled (60 - 90 g/m^2), Light Weight (60 - 90 g/m^2), Heavyweight (91 - 157 g/m^2)

Note
- If you want to print on both sides of a type of paper that is not supported for duplex printing, print the front side and then reload the paper manually and print the reverse side (this is only possible if the front side was printed with this machine). In this case, for plain paper only, the paper type can be set to "Plain Side 2" with the printer driver.
- Depending on paper quality, paper fiber orientation, and other factors, proper printing may not be possible with some types of paper. The use of standard paper is recommended.

Supported Paper Specifications

If using general paper (commercially available paper), make sure that it meets the following specifications. To achieve the best print quality, however, we recommend you to use standard paper instead.

Paper Tray	Specifications (G.S.M.)
Bypass tray	60 - 216 g/m^2
Tray1	60 - 216 g/m^2
Tray 2 - 3 (optional)	60 - 216 g/m^2

Standard Paper and Tested Paper

The following paper and media are recommended or have been tested on the printer.

For information about other paper or media, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealers.

■ Standard paper

This printer uses the following standard paper.

Product Name	Paper Size	G.S.M
Xerox P Paper (64 g/m^2)	A3 (297 x 420mm)	Plain
	A4 (210 x 297mm)	

■ Special paper

The following types of paper can also be printed.

Product Name	Paper Size	Paper Type
XEROX P/N 3A8204 (E.U.) XEROX P/N 3R3117 (U.S.)	210 x 297 (A4) 216 x 279 (Letter)	Transparency
XEROX P/N GAAA0545 XEROX P/N 3A6178 XEROX P/N 3A7408 (E.U.)	215.9 x 279.4 (Letter) 210 x 297 (A4) 210 x 297 (A4)	Labels
Columbian Brand Com #10 P/N 3B1183 Monroe Brand Monarch P/N 3B1039 C5 (RIVERSERIES #02067/Gummed) 3B1041 DL (RIVERSERIES #01029/Gummed) 3B1042	10.48 x 241.3 98.4 x 190.5 162 x 229 110 x 220	Envelope
Classic Crest Cover 216gsm P/N 3B1326	216 x 279 (Letter)	Heavyweight

Unsupported Paper

Do not use the following types of paper or media. They can cause paper jams or printer failure.

- Non-recommended Transparency such as Fuji Xerox full-color Transparency film
- Special ink jet printer paper and ink jet transparencies
- Paper that is too Heavyweight or too lightweight
- Paper pre-printed by another printer or copier
- Wrinkled, creased, or ripped paper
- Damp or wet paper
- Rough or curled paper
- Static-cling paper
- Pasted-up or glued paper
- illustrated postcards
- Specially coated paper
- Color paper with surface treatments
- Paper that uses ink that deteriorates with heat
- Photosensitive paper
- Carbon paper
- Paper with staples, clips, ribbons, or tape
- Paper with a rough surface, such as pulp paper or fibrous paper
- Acid paper (Texts printed on acid paper may blur. Use alkaline paper instead.)
- Envelopes that are not flat, or that have clasps
- Label paper with some labels already peeled off, or that are partially cut off
- Tack film
- Water transfer paper
- Textile transfer paper

Note
- Feeding illustrated postcards may cause image transfer prevention powder to adhere to the paper rollers and make paper feed impossible.

Storing and Handling Paper

Paper stored in poor conditions may deteriorate, resulting in paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. Use the following guidelines when storing paper.

Paper Storage Environment

- Temperature: 10 - 30 °C
- Relative humidity: 30 - 65%

Paper Storage Guidelines

- Re-wrap partly used packages of paper, and store them in a location away from humidity such as in a cabinet.
- Store paper flat. Do not store it upright.
- Keep paper from becoming wrinkled, curled, or creased.
- Do not expose paper to direct sunlight.

4.2 Loading Paper

This section explains how to load paper in the bypass tray or trays 1 - 4.

Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray

Important
- Make sure to load paper when the power is on.
- Do not load paper of different types in the same tray.
- Do not remove paper from or add paper to the paper trays during printing. Doing so can cause paper jams.
- Do not place any objects other than paper on the bypass tray. Do not push down the tray or apply an excessive force to the tray.

1. Lower the bypass tray.
   Extend the tray as required. The extension tray can extend two levels.
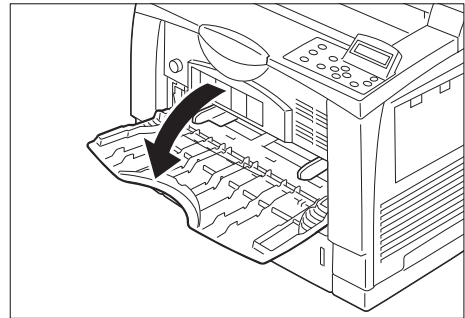
2. Neatly align the edges of the paper sheets and insert them print side facing up into the inlet slot until you feel them bump lightly.

Important
- Do not use creased or wrinkled paper.
- Do not load paper above the maximum fill-line. Doing so can cause paper jams.
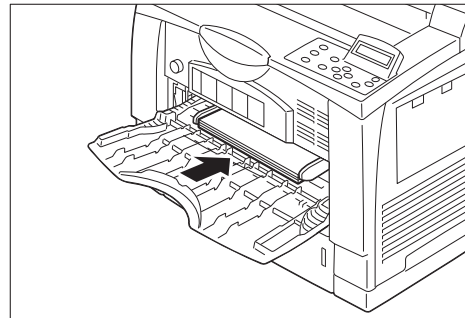
Note
- In the case of long-size paper, load the paper as shown in the illustration.
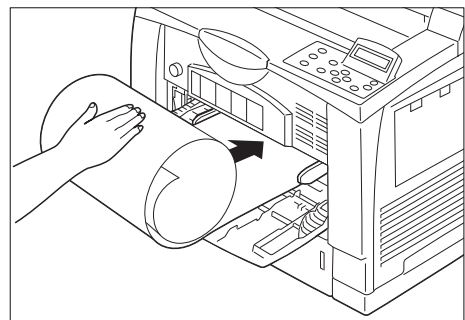
3. Adjust the paper guides to the size of the loaded paper.

Important
- Make sure that the guides are positioned lightly against the paper. Paper guides that are positioned too tight or two narrow can cause paper jams.
- Do not load paper above the maximum fill-line. Doing so can cause paper jams.
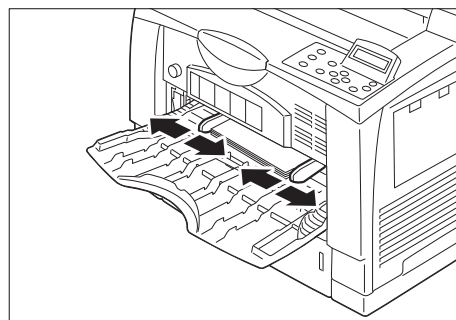
4. Set the paper size setting dial on the bypass tray according to the size and orientation of the paper to be loaded.

Important
- If the desired size or orientation is not available, set the paper size setting dial to " ."

Note
- The " " mark indicates the orientation of the paper. The " " is displayed when the paper is inserted in the horizontal orientation when facing the front of the printer.
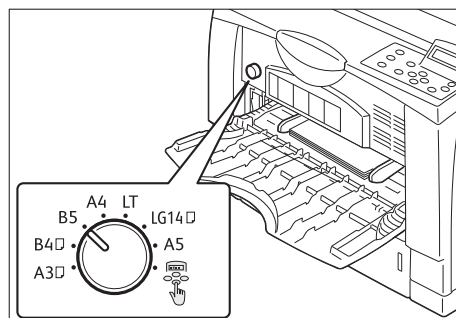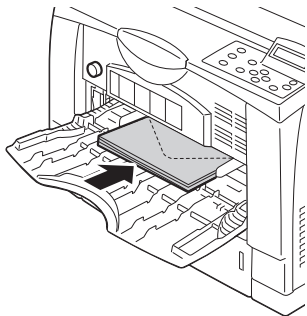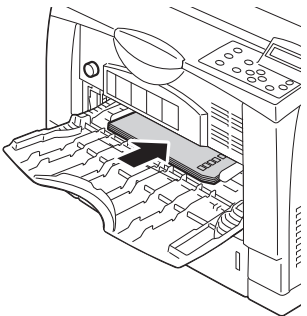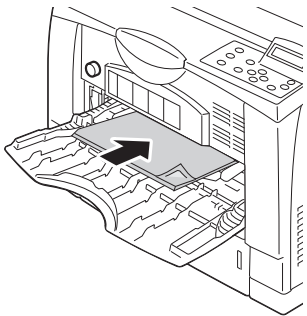
Note
- When Auto Tray Selection is set to the bypass tray, the setting for the paper size setting dial becomes disabled.
- When printing without using the print driver (such as lpr printing of a PDF file), use the printer's control panel to configure the paper type setting. For more information, see "[Paper Type]" (P.175).

Bypass Tray Feed Orientations for Envelopes

Make sure to use the proper orientation whenever loading envelopes into the bypass tray.

Envelopes with adhesive flaps	Envelopes with non-adhesive flaps	Label
Set the envelopes with the side to be printed facing up, their flaps fully closed, and oriented so that they feed into the printer from the flaps. **Note** • In the case of a custom size envelope, select [General Settings] tab > [Mixed Size Original Output Setting] > [Image Rotation 180 Degrees] in the printer driver and set [Portrait/Landscape (Envelopes, etc.)].	Set the envelopes with the side to be printed facing up, their flaps fully open, and oriented so that the flaps are on the right side of the envelopes as they feed into the printer. **Note** • In the case of a custom size envelope, select [General Settings] tab > [Mixed Size Original Output Setting] > [Image Rotation 180 Degrees] in the printer driver and set [Portrait/Landscape (Envelopes, etc.)] • The flap part is included in the paper length, so set the paper size to [Custom Size] .	Set the label sheets in landscape orientation with the printable side of the sheets facing up. **Note** • EBe sure to set the sheets in landscape orientation. Otherwise, paper jam or machine fault may occur.

Important
- For best print quality, do not use envelopes that:
  - are curled or twisted.
  - are stuck together or damaged.
  - have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossments.
  - use tie strings, metal clamps, or metal folding bars.
  - have postage stamps attached.
  - have any exposed adhesive when the flaps are closed.
  - have deckle edges or creased corners.
  - are wrinkled, rough or are glued.
  - have adhesive flaps.
- In cases where you must print on envelopes with adhesive flaps, close the flaps and load the envelopes so they feed from the flap side. Loading envelopes with adhesive flaps open can cause a malfunction.

Loading paper into Trays 1 through 3

This section describes the procedure to load paper into Tray 1 as an example. The paper loading procedure is the same for all the trays, but differs according to paper size.

Important
- During printing, do not remove or add paper, as this may cause a paper jam.
- Load paper while the printer is powered on.

Loading paper of size A4 or smaller

1. Pull out the paper tray from the printer and place it on a flat surface.
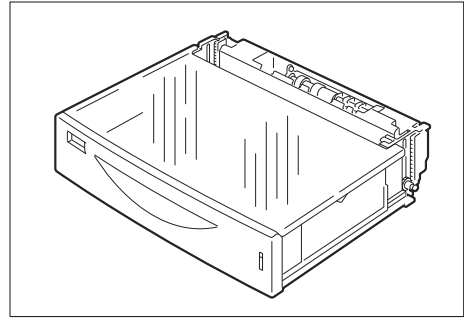
2. Remove the cover of the paper tray.
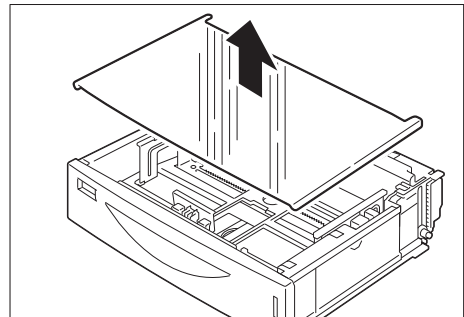
3. If the plate at the bottom of the paper tray is raised, push it down.
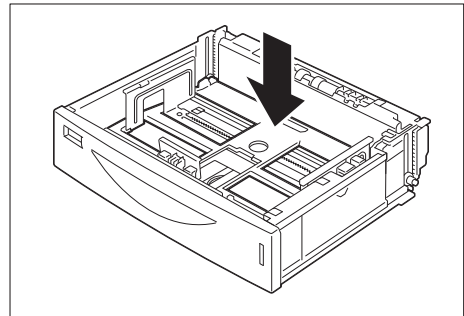
4. Squeezing the paper guide clips with your fingers, slide them to the positions corresponding to the paper size.

   Important
   - Set the top guide correctly to the Length of the paper. If the paper guides are not adjusted correctly, the printer may not correctly detect the size of the loaded paper. Also, the paper may not be fed properly, which can cause paper jams.
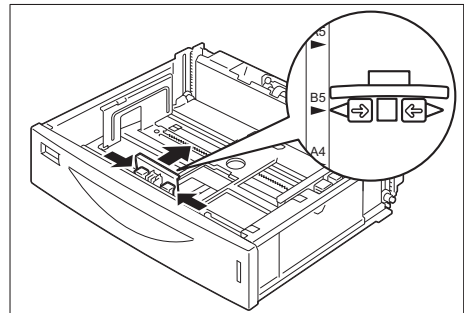
5. Squeezing the right side guide with your fingers, adjust it to the paper size.

Important
• Adjust the side guides correctly to the width of the paper. If the paper guides are not adjusted correctly, the printer may not correctly detect the size of the loaded paper.Also, the paper may not be fed properly, which can cause paper jams.
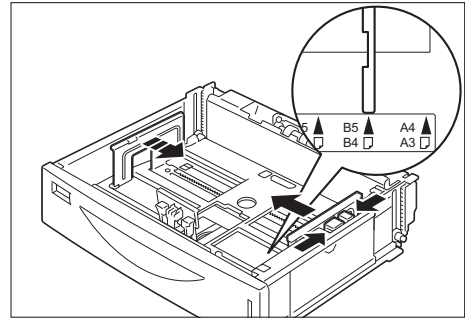
6. Neatly align the edges of the paper sheets and load then with the print side facing up. At this time, make sure that the paper does not extend higher than the side guides.

Important
• Do not use creased or wrinkled paper.
• Do not load paper above the maximum fill-line.
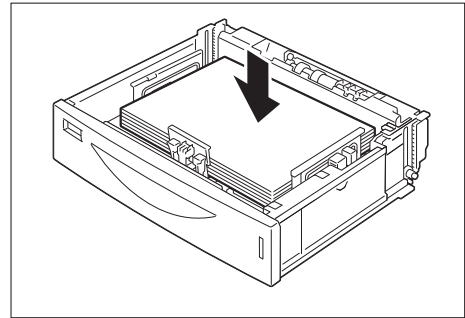
7. Change the paper size label according to the loaded paper.

Note
• When facing the front of the printer, the orientation of the paper is " ▱ " when the paper is oriented vertically when loaded, and " ▱ " when the paper is oriented horizontally when loaded. The illustration is for when B5 size paper " ▱ " has been loaded.
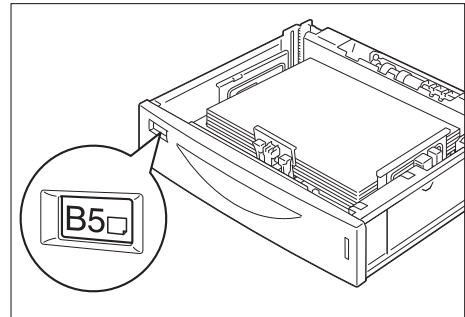
8. Close the cover of the paper tray.

Important
• Be sure to close the cover of the paper tray to protect the paper from dust and humidity.
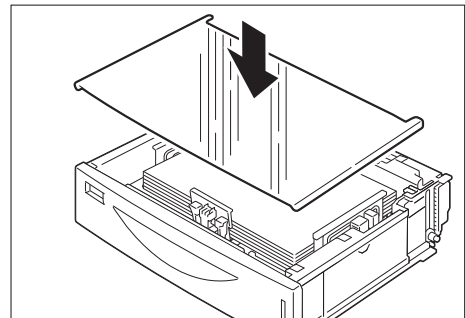
9. Firmly push the paper tray all the way back into the printer.
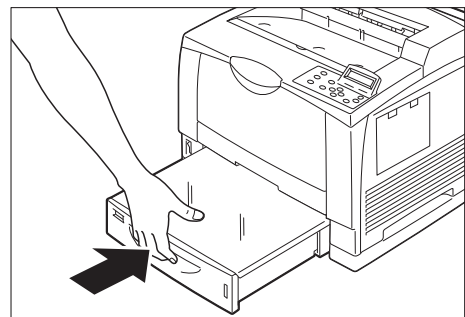
Loading paper larger than A4 portrait, and A4

1. Pull out the paper tray from the printer and place it on a flat surface.
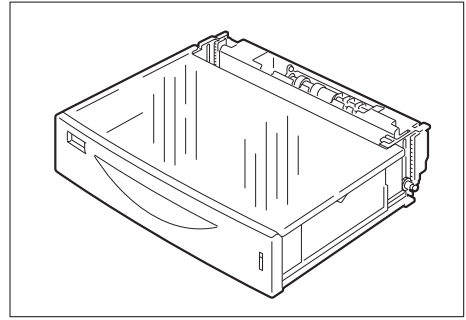
2. Remove the cover of the paper tray.
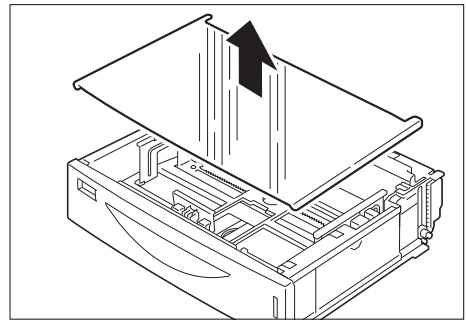
3. Move the projecting tabs on the left and right in the paper tray toward the outside to release the lock.
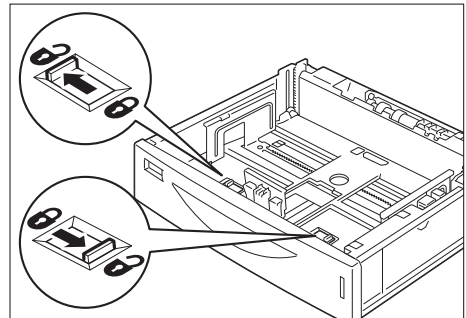
4. Pull the paper tray by gripping its handle to adjust the extension to the paper size.
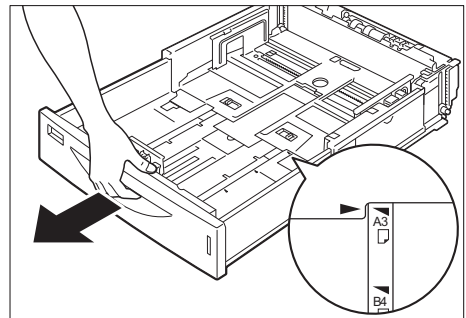
5. Move the projecting tabs on the left and right in the paper tray toward the inside to set the lock.
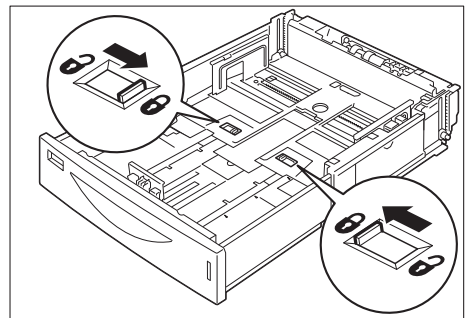
6. Squeezing the paper guide clips with your fingers, slide them to the positions corresponding to the paper size.

Important
• Set the top guide correctly to the Length of the paper. If the paper guides are not adjusted correctly, the printer may not correctly detect the size of the loaded paper.Also, the paper may not be fed properly, which can cause paper jams.
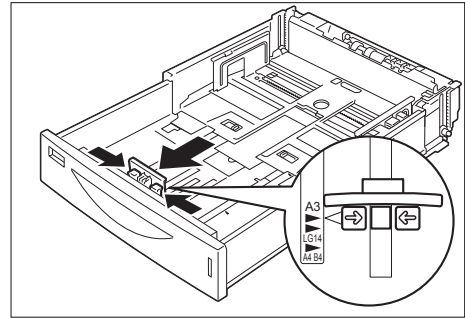
7. Squeezing the right side guide with your fingers, adjust it to the paper size.

Important
• Adjust the side guides correctly to the width of the paper. If the paper guides are not adjusted correctly, the printer may not correctly detect the size of the loaded paper.Also, the paper may not be fed properly, which can cause paper jams.
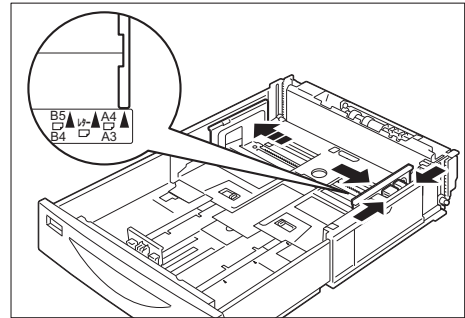
8. Neatly align the edges of the paper sheets and load them with the print side facing up.

Important
• Make sure that the paper does not extend higher than the side guides.
• Do not load paper above the maximum fill-line.
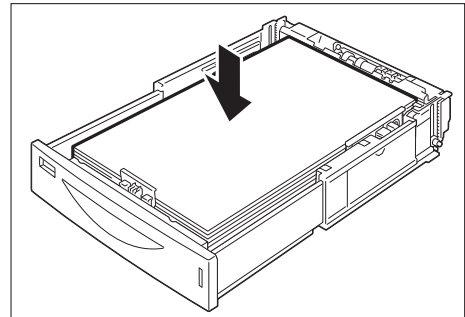
9. Change the paper size label according to the loaded paper.
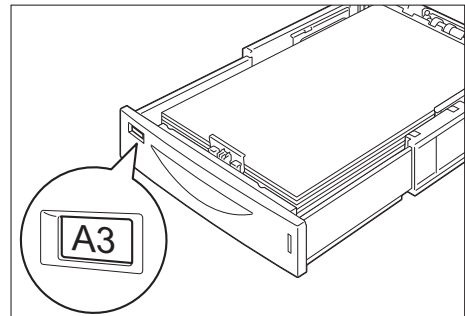
10. Close the cover of the paper tray.

Important
• Be sure to close the cover of the paper tray to protect the paper from dust and humidity.
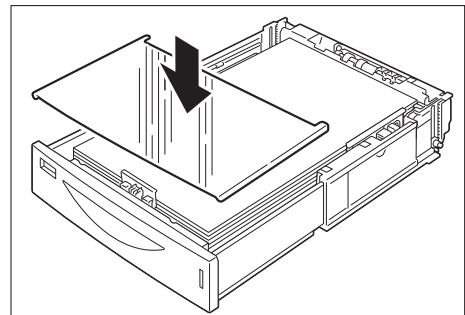
11. Firmly push the paper tray all the way back into the printer.

Note
• If paper larger than A4 portrait, and A4 was loaded, the tray protrudes from the front of the printer.
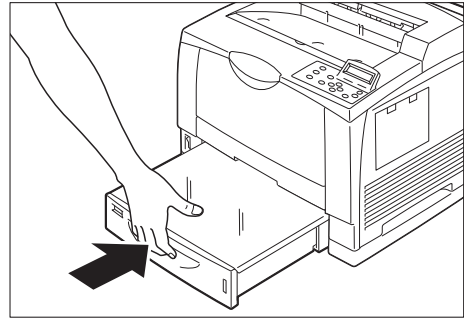
Paper Sizes/Paper Types for Trays 1 through 3

Though the printer can detect the size and orientation of paper loaded in paper trays 1 through 3, use the control panel to configure the size setting after loading custom size paper.

Paper type also cannot be detected and so the paper type setting also must be configured. If the paper type setting does not match the actual type of the paper, toner may not fuse properly to the paper, resulting in poor print quality. Make sure to configure the paper type settings correctly. The initial factory default setting for all the trays is plain paper.

Refer to
• "Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays" (P. 115)
• "Changing the Paper Type Settings of Trays" (P. 117)

Note
• The print paper type also can be changed with the print driver when printing. For the procedure, refer to "3.4 Printing various types of papers" (P. 71).

Pulling out the paper output extension tray

The paper output extension tray prevents printed paper from falling off the printer.
Prior to printing, pull out the extension tray.
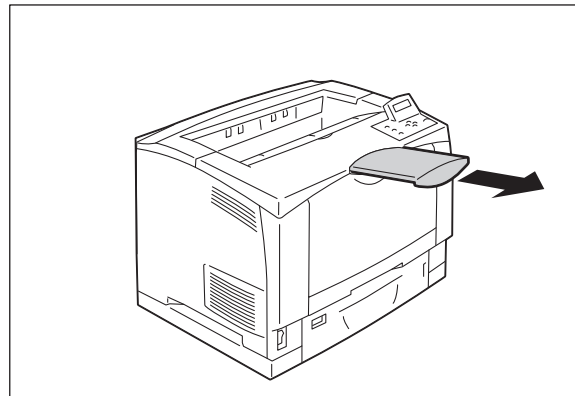
Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays

Use the following procedure when configuring custom paper size settings for trays 1 through 3.

Note
•If you changed the paper loaded in a tray from custom size paper to standard size paper, select [Auto] in Step 9 below. Doing so allows the printer to automatically detect the type of the paper loaded in each paper tray.

1. On the control panel, press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```
↓

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```
↓

3. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
```
↓

4. Press the <▼> button until [Printer Settings] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Printer Settings
```
↓

5. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Substitute Tray] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
  Substitute Tray
```
↓

6. Press the <▼> button until [PaperSize Settings] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
  PaperSizeSettings
```
↓

7. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Tray 1] is displayed.

```
PaperSizeSettings
  Tray 1
```
↓

8. Press the <▼> button until the desired paper tray is displayed, and then press the <►> or <OK> button to display its current setting.
The current set value is displayed.

```
Tray 1
•Auto
```
↓

9. Press the <▼> button until [Custom] is displayed.

```
Tray 1
  Custom
```
↓

10. Press the <OK> button to select. [Portrait (Y) Size] is displayed.

```
Tray 1 Custom
  Portrait (Y) Size
```
↓

11. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. The current set value is displayed.

```
Portrait (Y) Size
•148 mm
```
↓
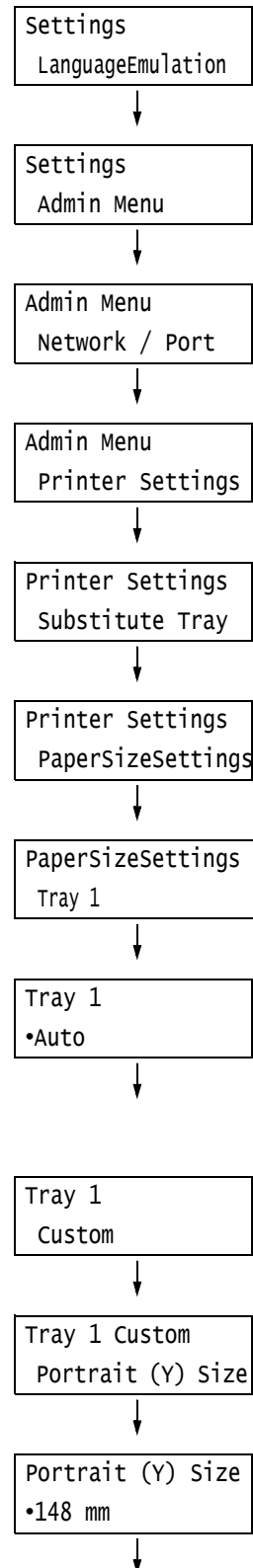
12. Use the <▲> and <▼> buttons to enter the Portrait (Y) size and then press the <OK> button to apply it.
(Example: 432 mm)

```
Portrait (Y) Size
•432 mm
```

13. After setting the Portrait (Y) Size, set the Landscape (X) Size.
Press the <◄> or <Back> button to return to [Portrait (Y) Size].

```
Tray 1 Custom
 Portrait (Y) Size
```

14. Press the <▼> button.
[Landscape (X) Size] is displayed.

```
Tray 1 Custom
 Landscape (X) Size
```

15. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select.
The current set value is displayed.

```
Landscape (X) Size
•210 mm
```

16. Use the <▲> and <▼> buttons to enter the Landscape (X) Size and then press the <OK> button to apply it.
(Example: 297 mm)

```
Landscape (X) Size
•297 mm
```

17. To configure settings for other trays, press the <◄> or <Back> button until the screen in step 8 is displayed. Then repeat the steps that follow.
To exit the setting operation, press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.
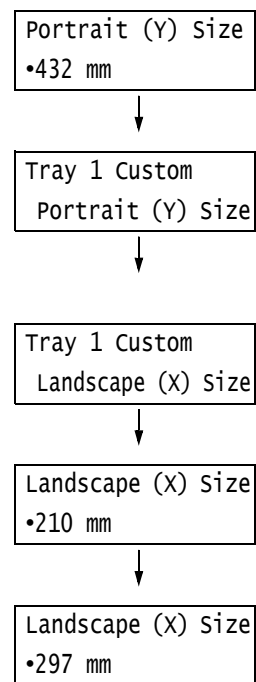
Note
• In the case of landscape (X) and Portrait (Y), sizes from 76 mm to 297 mm, and sizes from 148 mm to 432 mm, respectively, can be set.

Changing the Paper Type Settings of Trays

If the paper type setting does not match the actual type of the paper, toner may not fuse properly to the paper, resulting in poor print quality.

Use the procedure below to change the paper type settings of trays.

Important
- If a paper type setting results in toner not fusing properly on the paper and poor print quality, try changing to a different paper type setting and printing again. If the paper type setting is for plain paper, for example, try changing it to bond paper or recycled paper.

Note
- Refer to "Standard Paper and Tested Paper" (P. 104) for information about setting values appropriate for each paper type.

1. On the control panel, press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
```

4. Press the <▼> button until [Printer Settings] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Printer Settings
```

5. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Substitute Tray] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
  Substitute Tray
```

6. Press the <▼> button until [Paper Type] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
  Paper Type
```

7. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Tray 1] is displayed.

```
Paper Type
  Tray 1
```

8. Press the <▼> button until the desired paper tray is displayed, and then press the <▶> button to display its current setting. The current set value is displayed.

```
Tray 1
 •Plain
```

9. Press the <▼> button until the desired paper type is displayed.
(Example: Recycled)

```
Tray 1
  Recycled
```

10. Press the <OK> button to apply the setting.

```
Tray 1
 •Recycled
```
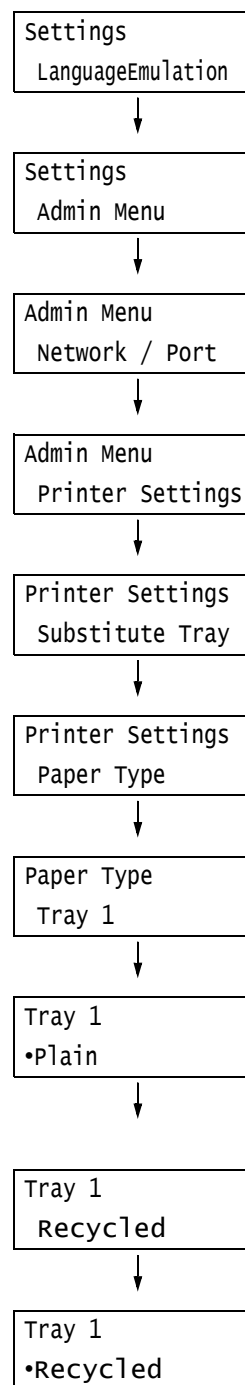
11. To configure settings for other trays, press the <◄> or <Back> button until the screen in step 8 is displayed. Then repeat the steps that follow.
To exit the setting operation, press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.

Auto Tray Selection Feature

Printing while [Automatically Select] is selected for the [Paper] > [Select By Tray] setting on the [Paper/Output] tab of the print driver, the printer automatically selects a paper tray based on the size and orientation or paper type and color of the document to be printed. This feature is called "Auto Tray Selection".

If there are several appropriate trays for the document, the printer applies [Paper Type] setting specified in the control panel to [PaperTypePriority] to select a paper tray with the highest priority. In this case, if the [PaperTypePriority] is set to [Auto Paper Off] for the type of paper in the tray, it is not subject to Auto Tray Selection. If the [PaperTypePriority] setting is the same for all of the paper types, the printer selects paper based on the [PaperTrayPriority] setting.

For example

Set Paper Priority
Plain Paper   ▶ 1st
Recycled Paper ▶ 1st
Plain S2 Paper ▶ Not Selected
1.Custom 1 ▶ Not Selected
2.Custom 2 ▶ Not Selected
3.Custom 3 ▶ 2nd
4.Custom 4 ▶ Not Selected
5.Custom 5 ▶ Not Selected

Set Tray Priority
Tray 1 ▶ 1st
Tray 2 ▶ 2nd
Tray 3 ▶ 3rd

Selected!

Paper in the paper trays
Tray 1 ▶ A4 Recycled Paper
Tray 2 ▶ A4 Plain S2 Paper
Tray 3 ▶ A4 Plain Paper

Set Paper Type
Tray 1 ▶ Recycled Paper·· 1st
Tray 2 ▶ Plain S2 Paper·· Not Selected
Tray 3 ▶ Plain Paper····· 1st

Tray 1 ▶ A4 Recycled Paper
Tray 3 ▶ A4 Plain Paper

Tray 1 ▶ A4 Recycled Paper

Note
- Bypass tray is set to [No AutoTraySwitch] by default. Refer to " Setting the Bypass Tray for Auto Tray Selection" (P. 119) to set it for auto tray selection.
- The printer does not perform auto tray selection for the tray which is set to [No AutoTraySwitch] in [Paper Tray Priority].
- If there is no tray that corresponds to the automatically selected tray, the printer will display a message prompting you to load paper. You can program your printer not to display this message and have the printer print the job on paper that is nearly the same size or larger than the document size (Substitute Tray feature).
- If a tray runs out of paper during printing, the printer automatically switches to another tray that contains paper of the same size and orientation (Auto Tray Switch feature). The printer will not switch trays if the [PaperTypePriority] is set to [Auto Paper Off] for the type of paper in the tray.
- You can assign names to paper of the same type and configure them as custom paper. For example, if blue plain paper is loaded in one tray, you can name it "Plain blue" to differentiate it from other plain paper.

Refer to
- "[Printer Settings]" (P. 174)

Setting the Bypass Tray for Auto Tray Selection

Use the procedure below to set Bypass Tray for auto tray selection on the control panel. You can set Bypass Tray for auto tray selection by specifying paper tray priority and paper size.

Refer to
• "Auto Tray Selection Feature" (P. 118)

1. On the control panel, press the <Printer Settings> button to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
 LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
 Admin Menu
```

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
 Network / Port
```

4. Press the <▼> button until [Printer Settings] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
 Printer Settings
```

5. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Substitute Tray] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
 Substitute Tray
```

6. Press the <▼> button until [PaperTray Priority] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
 PaperTrayPriority
```

7. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Tray 1] is displayed.

```
PaperTrayPriority
 Tray 1
```

8. Press the <▼> button until [Bypass Tray] is displayed.

```
PaperTrayPriority
 Bypass Tray
```

9. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [No AutoTraySwitch] is displayed.

```
Bypass Tray
•No AutoTraySwitch
```

10. Press the <▼> button, and then press the <OK> button.
Now, priority for Bypass Tray is set.

```
Bypass Tray
•Priority:4
```
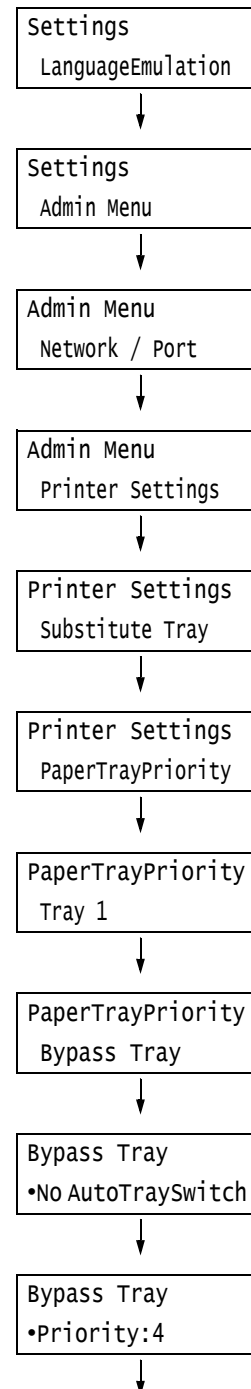
Note
• Only the lowest priority can be set for Bypass Tray. The example shown to the right is when 3 Tray Module (optional) has been installed to the printer.

11. Press the <◄> button until [Printer Settings] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
 PaperTrayPriority
```

12. Press the <▼> button until [PaperSizeSettings] is displayed.

```
Printer Settings
 PaperSizeSettings
```

13. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Tray 1] is displayed.

```
PaperSizeSettings
 Tray 1
```

14. Press the <▼> button until [Bypass Tray] is displayed.

```
PaperSizeSettings
 Bypass Tray
```

15. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. The current set value is displayed.

```
Bypass Tray
•A4 ▱
```

16. Press the <▼> button until the desired paper size is displayed.
(Example: A5▱)

```
Bypass Tray
 A5 ▱
```

17. Press the <OK> button to apply the setting.

```
Bypass Tray
•A5 ▱
```

18. To exit the setting operation, press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.
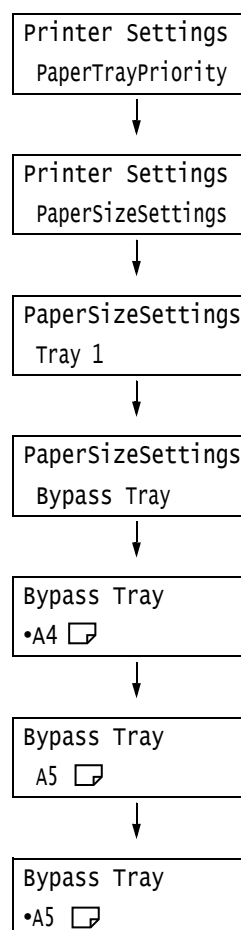
5 Control Panel Settings

5.1 Overview of the Common Menus

Menu Structure

The control panel menus consist of five common menus and six mode menus. This section describes mainly the common menus.

Common Menus	Mode Menus	
Ready to print		
Press the <Menu> button		
Settings LanguageEmulation	LanguageEmulation ESCP	ESCP extension menu items
Settings Print Reports	LanguageEmulation HPGL	HPGL extension menu items
Settings Meter Reading	LanguageEmulation PDF	PDF extension menu items
Settings Admin Menu	LanguageEmulation PCL	PCL extension menu items
Settings Language	LanguageEmulation KS	KS extension menu items
	LanguageEmulation KSSM	KSSM extension menu items
	LanguageEmulation KS5895	KS5895 extension menu items
	LanguageEmulation PostScript	PostScript extension menu items
	LanguageEmulation XPS	XPS extension menu items
	LanguageEmulation XDW(DocuWorks)	XDW(DocuWorks) extension menu items

Common menus are screens for configuring common settings to all of the print modes. Each common menu is organized into the following structure:

• common menu > menu items > items > optional values

The following is a portion of the hierarchical structure of the common menus.

Settings — Meter Reading — Current Count — Meter 1 / Meter 2 / Meter 3

— Admin Menu — Network / Port — Parallel — Port Status — Enabled / Disabled

Print Mode — Auto / PS

— System Settings

Common menus   Menu items   Items   Optional values
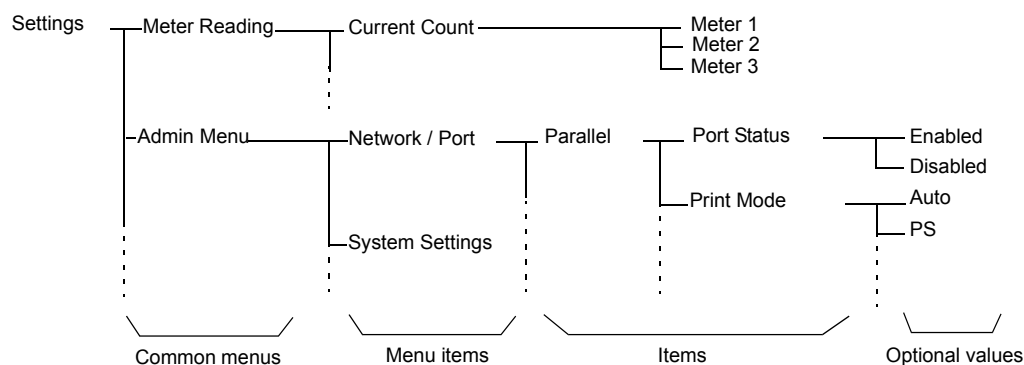
The following table describes the overview of the common menus.

Common menu	Description	Reference
LanguageEmulation	[ESCP] Sets the ESC/P emulation mode.	'ESC/P Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.
	[HPGL] Sets the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 emulation modes.	'HP-GL, HP-GL/2 Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.
	[PDF] Configures the settings for printing PDF files directly.	"[PDF]" (P. 126)
	[PCL] Sets the PCL emulation mode.	'PCL Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.
	[PostScript] Sets the PostScript-related settings.	"[PostScript]" (P. 128)
	[XPS] Configures the settings for printing XML Paper Specification (XPS) files directly.	"[XPS]" (P. 129)
	[XDW (DocuWorks)] Configures the settings for printing DocuWorks files directly.	" [XDW (DocuWorks)]" (P. 129)
Print Reports	Allows you to print a variety of reports/lists.	"Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)
Meter Reading	Displays the number of printed pages on the control panel.	"Checking the Meter Reading by Output Meter" (P. 263)
Admin Menu	[Network / Port] Sets host interfaces and the settings required to enable their communication.	"[Network / Port]" (P. 132)
	[System Settings] Sets the printer's basic functions, such as alert tones and the Energy Saver feature. It also sets a password for the control panel to prevent settings from being changed unintentionally.	"[System Settings]" (P. 155)
	[Printer Settings] Sets the paper trays and the Auto Tray Selection feature.	"[Printer Settings]" (P. 174)
	[Allocate Memory] Changes the size of memory and form memory of each interface.	"[Allocate Memory]" (P. 184)
	[Init/Delete Data] Initializes the HDD Extension Kit (optional) and settings, and deletes data (such as forms) stored in the printer.	"[Init/Delete Data]" (P. 186)
Language	Switches the control panel display language.	"[Language]" (P. 188)

Note
• For information on the basic procedure to set each menu item, refer to "Basic Procedure" (P. 123).

Changing the Settings

Basic Procedure

To display a menu screen or to move up and down the menus to make the printer settings, use the following buttons on the control panel.
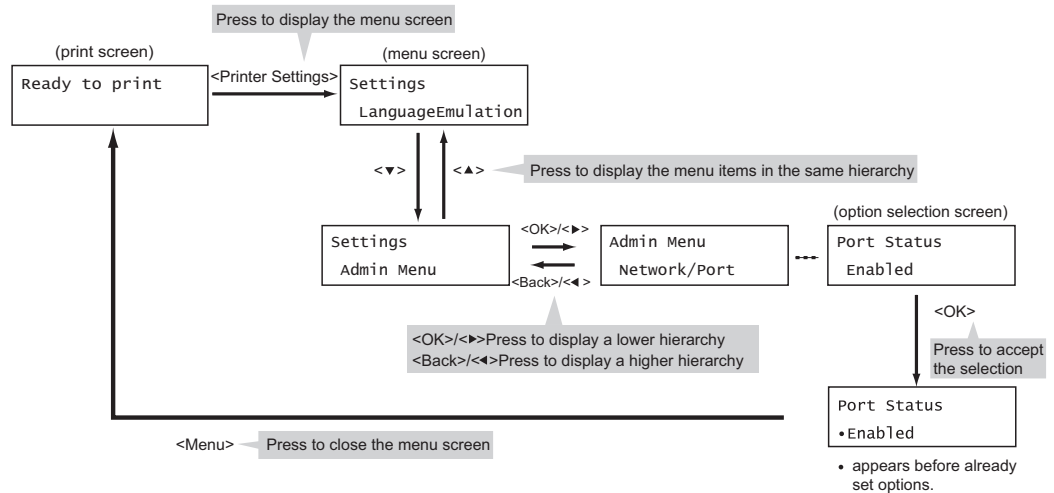
Note
- Once you save a value by pressing the <OK> button, a "•" mark appears before the value. To change the value, return to the initial screen and repeat the preceding steps.
- To enable the settings of some items, the printer sometimes must be restarted. In this case, the printer automatically restarts when the menu screen is exited.

Resetting a Value to Its Default

For items to change numeric values with the <▲> or <▼> button, press the <▲> and <▼> buttons simultaneously to reset a value to its default.

The value changes to its factory setting. To accept the value, press the <OK> button.

Setting Example: Changing the Sleep Mode Timer

In this example, we will set the Sleep Mode Timer for operations in common menus to 60 minutes.

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```

Note
- If you went past the desired item, return to the item by pressing the <▲> button.

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. Move on to the next lower level.

```
Admin Menu
  Network/Port
```

Note
- If you pressed the <▶> or <OK> button on the wrong item, return to the previous screen by pressing the <◀> or the <Back> button.
- To start over from the beginning, press the <Printer Settings> button.

4. Press the <▼> button until [System Settings] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  System Settings
```

5. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. Move on to the next lower level.

```
System Settings
  Alert Tone
```

6. Press the <▼> button until [Sleep Mode Timer] is displayed.

```
System Settings
  Sleep Mode Timer
```

7. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current set value is displayed.

```
Sleep Mode Timer
•1 Minutes Later
```

8. Press the <▲> or <▼> button to display [60 Minutes Later].

```
Sleep Mode Timer
 60 Minutes Later
```

Note
- Holding down the <▲> or <▼> button scrolls through the options in a circular fashion.

9. Press the <OK> button to confirm your selection.
   The value is accepted.

```
Sleep Mode Timer
•60 Minutes Later
```

10. The setting is now complete.
    Press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.

```
Ready to print
  Tonner Left ⊔
```

5.2   Common Menus Setting

This section describes the settings in the common menus.

Note
- For information on how to set the menu items, refer to "Changing the Settings" (P. 123).
- Some of the menu items can also be configured on CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.
- For the entire list of the common menus shown in a diagram, refer to "Control Panel Menu Tree" (P. 376).

[LanguageEmulation]

The [LanguageEmulation] menu consists of four submenus: [ESCP], [HPGL], [PDF], [PCL], [PostScript], [XPS] and [XDW (DocuWorks)].

[ESCP]

For information about the items under [ESCP], refer to the 'ESC/P Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM included with the printer.

[HPGL]

For information about the items under [HPGL], refer to the 'HP-GL, HP-GL/2 Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM included with the printer.

[PDF]

Allows you to send PDF files directly to the printer.

Note
- The [Quantity], [2 Sided Printing], [Print Mode], [Password], [Collated], [Output size], [Layout], and [Output Color] settings are enabled when printing PDF files without using ContentsBridge Utility (software by Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.). For more information, refer to "3.10 Direct Printing of PDF Files" (P. 90).

```
┌─────────────────┐       ┌─────────────────┐
│ LanguageEmulation│───────│ PDF             │
│   PDF           │       │   Process Mode  │
└─────────────────┘       └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   Quantity      │
                          └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   2 Sided Printing│
                          └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   Print Mode    │
                          └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   Password      │
                          └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   Collated      │
                          └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   Output Size   │
                          └─────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────┐
                          │ PDF             │
                          │   Layout        │
                          └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Process Mode	Sets the print processing mode for PDF files. • [PDF Bridge] (default) PDF files are processed using the PDF Bridge feature installed on the printer. • [PS] PDF files are processed using the PostScript feature. **Note** • Printing results when [PS] is selected differ from when [PDF Bridge] is selected.
Quantity	Sets the print quantity. • [1 Set(s)] to [999 Set(s)] (default: [1 Set(s)]) **Note** • Depending on the protocol used for file transmission, the value specified on the protocol may override the [Quantity] setting.

Setting	Description

2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to enable 2-sided printing.
	• [Off] (default)
	  Disables 2-sided printing.
	• [Long Edge Flip]
	  Prints on both sides of the paper so that the finished document opens like a book.
	• [Short Edge Flip]
	  Prints on both sides of the paper so that the finished document opens like a calendar.
	
	 Note
	• This item is displayed when the Duplex unit (option) is installed.

Print Mode	Sets the print mode to one of the following:
	• [High Speed]
	  Prints documents at a higher speed than [Normal].
	• [Normal] (default)
	  Prints documents at standard speed with standard image quality.
	• [High Quality]
	  Produces higher image quality than [Normal], but at a lower print speed.

Password	Before printing a password-locked PDF, set the password here. The file will be printed only if its password matches the password you set here. The password can be up to 32 alphanumeric characters long. (See No. 1, 3, 4, 5 of *4 on P. 188.)
Collated	Sets whether to collate multiple-set documents. (1, 2, 3...1, 2, 3...) • [Off] (default) • [On]

Output Size	Sets the output paper size.
	• [Auto] (default)
	  Automatically determines the output size based on the size and settings of your PDF file.
	• [A4] or [8.5 x 11"]
	  Displays either [A4] or [8.5 x 11"] depending on the option selected under [Admin Menu] > [Printer Settings] > [DefaultPaperSize].

Layout	Sets the output layout.
	• [Auto %] (default)
	  Automatically selects the output size and calculates the zoom ratio to print the file as large as possible on the output paper.
	• [100% (No Zoom)]
	  Prints your PDF file in its original size regardless of the output size.
	• [Booklet]
	  Creates a booklet from a set of 2-sided documents. It correctly positions each page to produce output, that when folded, will be ordered read like a book. Depending on the page structure, [Booklet] cannot be used and [Auto %] is used instead. When [Output Size] is [A4], the output size will be A4. When [Output Size] is [Auto], the output size will be A3 or A4.
	
	• [2 Pages Up]
	  Prints two pages onto one sheet of paper. When this is selected, the output size will be A4 or 8.5 x 11" depending on the option selected under [Admin Menu] > [Printer Settings] > [DefaultPaperSize].
	
	• [4 Pages Up]
	  Prints four pages onto one sheet of paper. When this is selected, the output size will be A4 or 8.5 x 11" depending on the option selected under [Admin Menu] > [Printer Settings] > [DefaultPaperSize].
	
	 Note
	• The Duplex unit (optional) is required for "Catalog (Booklet)". If the 2 Side Printing function is not available, printing is done on 1 side.

[PCL]

For information about the items under [PCL], refer to the 'PCL Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM included with the printer.

[PostScript]

Configures the settings related to PostScript.

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ LanguageEmulation   │      │ PostScript          │
│   PostScript        │──┬───│   Paper Supply      │
└─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ PostScript          │
                         ├───│   Font Absence      │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ PostScript          │
                         └───│   Font Substitution │
                             └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

Paper Supply	Sets whether or not to enable the PostScript DMS (Deferred Media Selection) feature.
	• [Auto Paper Select] (default)
	  Enables the DMS feature.
	• [Select Paper Tray]
	  Disables the DMS feature and selects a paper tray.

Font Absence	Sets the processing when the PostScript font specified in the job is not found.
	• [Substitute Font] (default)
	  Prints the document with the font specified in the job substituted. The font can be substituted with Courier.
	• [Cancel Printing]
	  Stops printing.

FontSubstitution	Sets whether or not to use ATCx in font substitution when the PostScript font specified in the job is not found. • [Use ATCx] (default) • [Do not use ATCx]

[XPS]

Sets XPS related settings.

Note
• XPS stands for XML Paper Specification.

```
┌──────────────────────┐     ┌──────────────────────┐
│ LanguageEmulation    │     │ XPS                  │
│   XPS                │─────│   Print Ticket       │
└──────────────────────┘     └──────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

PrintTicket	Sets printer operation when print settings (PrintTicket[1]) listed in XPS documents are read.
	• [Standard Mode] (default)
	  PrintTicket processing is performed. It allows to obtain the result close to the output from other print drivers for the printer.
	• [Off]
	  PrintTicket processing is not performed. Output is available by setting this option if PrintTicket error occurs when processing of XPS documents created for the model other than the printer is performed.
	• [Compatible Mode]
	  Processing according to Microsoft specifications is performed in case of substitute setting or invalid print instruction. This option is set to match the output result of XPS documents from the model other than the printer.
	[1] PrintTicket is print settings stored in XPS documents provided by Microsoft Corporation.

[XDW (DocuWorks)]

Allows you to send DocuWorks files directly to the printer.

```
┌──────────────────────┐     ┌──────────────────────┐
│ LanguageEmulation    │     │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
│   XDW (DocuWorks)    │──┬──│   Quantity           │
└──────────────────────┘  │  └──────────────────────┘
                          │  ┌──────────────────────┐
                          │  │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
                          ├──│   2 Sided Printing   │
                          │  └──────────────────────┘
                          │  ┌──────────────────────┐
                          │  │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
                          ├──│   Print Mode         │
                          │  └──────────────────────┘
                          │  ┌──────────────────────┐
                          │  │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
                          ├──│   Password           │
                          │  └──────────────────────┘
                          │  ┌──────────────────────┐
                          │  │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
                          ├──│   Collated           │
                          │  └──────────────────────┘
                          │  ┌──────────────────────┐
                          │  │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
                          ├──│   Layout             │
                          │  └──────────────────────┘
                          │  ┌──────────────────────┐
                          │  │ XDW (DocuWorks)      │
                          └──│   Output Size        │
                             └──────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Quantity	Sets the print quantity. • [1 Set(s)] to [999 Set(s)] (default: [1 Set(s)]) **Note** • Depending on the protocol used for file transmission, the value specified on the protocol may override the [Quantity] setting.

2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to enable 2-sided printing.
	• [Off] (default)
	  Disables 2-sided printing.
	• [Long Edge Flip]
	  Prints on both sides of the paper so that the finished document opens like a book.
	• [Short Edge Flip]
	  Prints on both sides of the paper so that the finished document opens like a calendar.
	
	Note
	• The Duplex unit (optional) is required for "Catalog (Booklet)". If the 2 Side Printing function is not available, printing is done on 1 side.

Print Mode	Sets the print mode to one of the following:
	• [High Speed]
	  Prints documents at a higher speed than [Normal].
	• [Normal] (default)
	  Prints documents at standard speed with standard image quality.
	• [High Quality]
	  Produces higher image quality than [Normal], but at a lower print speed.

Password	Before printing a password-locked DocuWorks files, set the password here. DocuWorks files will be printed only if its password matches the password you set here. The password can be up to 32 alphanumeric characters long. (See No. 1, 3, 4, 5 of *4 on P. 188.)
Collated	Sets whether to collate multiple-set documents. (1, 2, 3...1, 2, 3...) • [Off] (default) • [On]

Layout	Sets the output layout.
	• [Auto %] (default)
	  Automatically selects the output size and calculates the zoom ratio to print the file as large as possible on the output paper.
	• [100% (No Zoom)]
	  Prints your DocuWorks file in its original size regardless of the output size.
	
	• [2 Pages Up]
	  Prints two pages onto one sheet of paper. When this is selected, the output size will be A4 or 8.5 x 11" depending on the option selected under [Admin Menu] > [Printer Settings] > [DefaultPaperSize].
	
	• [4 Pages Up]
	  Prints four pages onto one sheet of paper. When this is selected, the output size will be A4 or 8.5 x 11" depending on the option selected under [Admin Menu] > [Printer Settings] > [DefaultPaperSize].
	
	Note
	• For [Auto %], [2 Pages Up] or [4 Pages Up], the zoom ratio will be calculated based on the document size excluding sticky notes.

Setting	Description

Output Size	Sets the output paper size.
	• [Auto] (default)
	  Automatically determines the output size based on the size and settings of your DocuWorks file.
	• [A4] or [8.5 x 11"]
	  Displays either [A4] or [8.5 x 11"] depending on the option selected under [Admin Menu] > [Printer Settings] > [DefaultPaperSize].

[Print Reports]

Allows you to print a variety of reports/lists. For details on the reports/lists and how to print them, refer to "7.2 Printing Reports/Lists" (P. 260).

Note
• The reports/lists that can be printed vary depending on the options installed on your printer. For details, refer to "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262).

[Meter Reading]

Displays the number of printed pages on the control panel. Meter information can be checked for each output color. For details on the meter information and how to display it, refer to "Checking the Meter Reading by Output Meter" (P. 263).

[Admin Menu]

The [Admin Menu] menu consists of six submenus: [Network / Port], [System Settings], [Printer Settings], [Allocate Memory], [Image Quality], and [Init/Delete Data].

[Network / Port]

Allows you to configure host interfaces and the settings required to enable their communication.

[Parallel]

Note
• This menu appears only when the Parallel Port Kit (optional) is installed.

```
Network/Port          Parallel
 Parallel              Port Status

                      Parallel
                       Print Mode

                      Parallel
                       PJL

                      Parallel
                       Adobe Protocol

                      Parallel
                       Auto Eject Time

                      Parallel
                       Bi-directional
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the parallel port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • When there is not enough memory, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation). • [Auto] (default) After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.) • [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895] After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language. • [HexDump] Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.)

Setting	Description
PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]

Adobe Protocol	Sets the PostScript communication protocol.
	• [Normal] (default)
	  Select this when the communication protocol is in ASCII format.
	• [Binary]
	  Select this when the communication protocol is in binary format. Some data is printed slower than with the [Normal] protocol.
	• [TBCP]
	  Select this when the communication protocol is both in the ASCII and binary formats, and switches between the two using control codes.
	
	Note
	• Select an appropriate option according to the data format specified on your print driver.
	• [Adobe Protocol] is enabled only when printing in PostScript.

Auto Eject Time	Sets the time that data still remaining on your printer is automatically printed and ejected when data has continuously not been received. Set the time from 5 to 1275 seconds in 5-second increments. Jobs are judged as finished when the next data is not received within the time set here, after the last data has been received. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [30 Seconds] (default)
Bi-directional	Sets whether or not to enable bi-directional parallel communication (IEEE1284). • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]

[LPD]

```
┌─────────────────┐        ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │────────│ LPD             │
│  LPD            │        │  Port Status    │
└─────────────────┘        └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  Print Mode     │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  PJL            │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  Connect Time-Out│
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  TBCP Filter    │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  Port Number    │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  Maximum Sessions│
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ LPD             │
                           │  Print Queue    │
                           └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the LPD port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Note** • The IP address must be set to enable the LPD port. **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation). • [Auto] (default) After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.) • [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895] After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language. • [HexDump] Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.) **Note** • [KS], [KSSM], and [KS5895] appear when the Korea Font ROM (optional) is installed.

Setting	Description
PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]
Connect Time-Out	Sets the time after which data reception is canceled if data is not received. Specify the value from 2 to 3600 seconds in 1-second increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [16 Seconds] (default)
TBCP Filter	Sets whether to enable or disable the TBCP filter during processing of PostScript data. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [515] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers.
Maximum Sessions	Set the maximum number of clients that can connect to the printer simultaneously by LPD. Specify the value from 1 to 10. • [5] (default)

Print Queue	Sets the print data queue.
	• [Data Process Order] (default)
	  The printer prints print data in the order that it is processed.
	• [Job Submit Order]
	  The printer prints print data in the order that it is received.

[NetWare]

```
┌─────────────────┐        ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │────────│ NetWare         │
│   NetWare       │        │   Port Status   │
└─────────────────┘        └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ NetWare         │
                           │  TransportProtocol │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ NetWare         │
                           │   Print Mode    │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ NetWare         │
                           │   PJL           │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ NetWare         │
                           │   No. of searches │
                           └─────────────────┘

                           ┌─────────────────┐
                           │ NetWare         │
                           │   TBCP Filter   │
                           └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the NetWare port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] • [Disabled] (default) **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
TransportProtocol	Sets the protocol of the transport layer used by NetWare. Either or both of IPX/SPX and TCP/IP can be selected. • [TCP/IP, IPX/SPX] (default) • [TCP/IP] • [IPX/SPX] **Note** • When using TCP/IP protocol, both the printer and client computers must have IP addresses.

Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation).
	• [Auto] (default)
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.)
	• [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895]
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language.
	• [HexDump]
	  Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.)

PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]
No. of searches	Sets the number of times that the file server is searched. Set from 1 to 100 in "times" units or [No Limit]. Searches are performed at 1-minute intervals. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [No Limit] (default) • [1 Time(s)] to [100 Time(s)]
TBCP Filter	Sets whether to enable or disable the TBCP filter during processing of PostScript data. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]

[SMB]

```
┌─────────────────┐        ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │────────│ SMB                 │
│   SMB           │        │   Port Status       │
└─────────────────┘        └─────────────────────┘
                    │
                    │       ┌─────────────────────┐
                    │───────│ SMB                 │
                    │       │   TransportProtocol │
                    │       └─────────────────────┘
                    │
                    │       ┌─────────────────────┐
                    │───────│ SMB                 │
                    │       │   Print Mode        │
                    │       └─────────────────────┘
                    │
                    │       ┌─────────────────────┐
                    │───────│ SMB                 │
                    │       │   PJL               │
                    │       └─────────────────────┘
                    │
                    │       ┌─────────────────────┐
                    └───────│ SMB                 │
                            │   TBCP Filter       │
                            └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the SMB port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
TransportProtocol	Sets the protocol of the transport layer used by SMB. Either or both of NetBEUI and TCP/IP can be selected. • [TCP/IP, NetBEUI] (default) • [TCP/IP] • [NetBEUI] **Note** • When using TCP/IP protocol, both the printer and client computers must have IP addresses.
Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation). • [Auto] (default) After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.) • [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895] After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language. • [HexDump] Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.)
PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]
TBCP Filter	Sets whether to enable or disable the TBCP filter during processing of PostScript data. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]

[IPP]

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │──────│ IPP             │
│   IPP           │      │   Port Status   │
└─────────────────┘      └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     ├───│   Print Mode    │
                     │   └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     ├───│   PJL           │
                     │   └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     ├───│   Access Control│
                     │   └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     ├───│   DNS           │
                     │   └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     ├───│   Added Port Number│
                     │   └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     ├───│   Connect Time-Out│
                     │   └─────────────────┘
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ IPP             │
                     └───│   TBCP Filter   │
                         └─────────────────┘
```

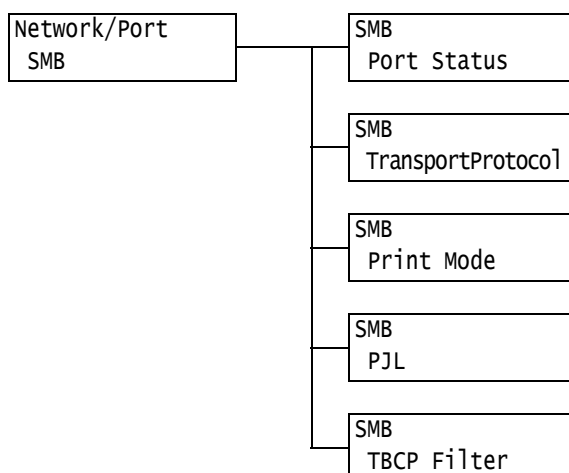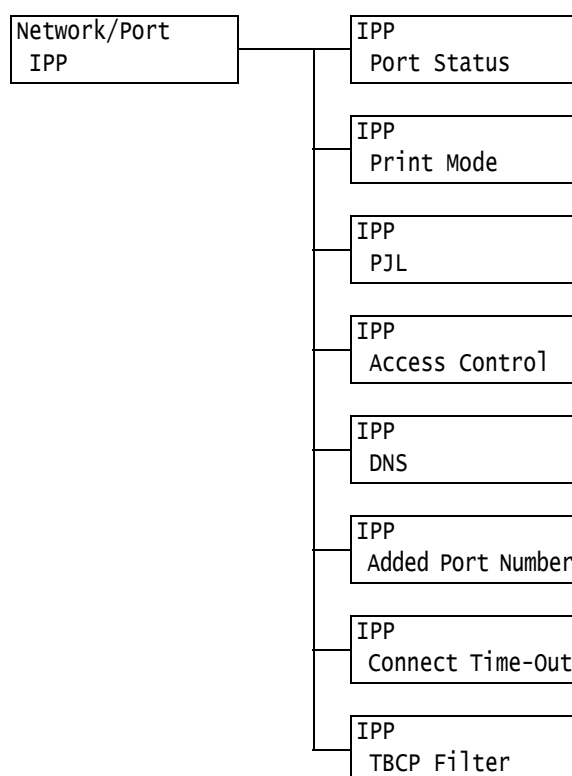| Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the IPP port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] • [Disabled] (default) **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].

Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation).
	• [Auto] (default)
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.)
	• [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895]
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language.
	• [HexDump]
	  Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.)

PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]
Access Control	Sets whether to enable or disable access control when stopping or deleting a print job, pausing the printer, or when canceling a pause. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]

Setting	Description

DNS	Sets whether or not to use the name registered to the DNS (Domain Name System) when identifying the printer.
	• [Enabled] (default)
	  The DNS name is used.
	• [Disabled]
	  The IP address is used.

Added Port Number	Sets the additional port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [80] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers. Note, however, that InternetServices/IPP/ SOAP/UPnP/WSD ports and Internet services that use HTTP protocol can share the same port number. (See *6 on P. 188.)
Connect Time-Out	Sets the time after which data reception is canceled if data is not received. Specify the value from 0 to 65535 seconds in 1-second increments. • [60 Seconds] (default)
TBCP Filter	Sets whether to enable or disable the TBCP filter during processing of PostScript data. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]

[EtherTalk Compat]

```
┌─────────────────┐     ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │─────│ EtherTalk Compat│
│  EtherTalk Compat│     │  Port Status    │
└─────────────────┘     └─────────────────┘
                        ┌─────────────────┐
                        │ EtherTalk Compat│
                        │  PJL            │
                        └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the EtherTalk port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] • [Disabled] (default) **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]

[Bonjour]

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port        │      │ Bonjour             │
│  Bonjour            ├──────┤  Port Status        │
└─────────────────────┘      └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the Bonjour port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory]. **Note** • To use the Multicast DNS feature, set [Enabled]. To use Bonjour to print on the detector printer, also enable the LPD port.

[USB]

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port        │      │ USB                 │
│  USB                ├──┬───┤  Port Status        │
└─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ USB                 │
                         ├───┤  Print Mode         │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ USB                 │
                         ├───┤  PJL                │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ USB                 │
                         ├───┤  Auto Eject Time    │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ USB                 │
                         ├───┤  Adobe Protocol     │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ USB                 │
                         └───┤  PS Wait Timeout    │
                             └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the USB 2.0 (High Speed) port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • When there is not enough memory, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory]. • Only USB2.0 is supported.

Setting	Description

Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation).
	• [Auto] (default)
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.)
	• [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895]
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language.
	• [HexDump]
	  Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.)

PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]
Auto Eject Time	Sets the time that data still remaining on your printer is automatically printed and ejected when data has continuously not been received. Set the time with the range 5 to 1275 seconds in 5-second increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) Jobs are judged as finished when the next data is not received within the time set here, after the last data has been received. • [30 Seconds] (default)

Adobe Protocol	Sets the PostScript communication protocol.
	• [Normal] (default)
	  Select this when the communication protocol is in ASCII format.
	• [Binary]
	  Select this when no special processing is required for data. Some data is printed slower than with the [Normal] protocol.
	• [TBCP]
	  Select this when the communication protocol is both in the ASCII and binary formats, and switches between the two using control codes.
	• [RAW]
	  Select this when the communication protocol is in Raw format. Select this item when EPS files cannot be printed properly from Macintosh computers using a USB interface.
	
	Note
	• Select an appropriate option according to the data format specified on your print driver.
	• [Adobe Protocol] is enabled only when printing in PostScript.
	• Normally, use this setting at its default [Normal].

PS Wait Timeout	Sets the print waiting time for PostScript.
	• [Disabled] (default)
	  [Auto Eject Time] of [USB] is used.
	• [Enabled]
	  [Wait Timeout] for PostScript print driver is used.

[Port 9100]

```
┌──────────────────┐      ┌──────────────────┐
│ Network/Port     │──┬───│ Port 9100        │
│  Port 9100       │  │   │  Port Status     │
└──────────────────┘  │   └──────────────────┘
                      │   ┌──────────────────┐
                      ├───│ Port 9100        │
                      │   │  Print Mode      │
                      │   └──────────────────┘
                      │   ┌──────────────────┐
                      ├───│ Port 9100        │
                      │   │  PJL             │
                      │   └──────────────────┘
                      │   ┌──────────────────┐
                      ├───│ Port 9100        │
                      │   │  Connect Time-Out│
                      │   └──────────────────┘
                      │   ┌──────────────────┐
                      ├───│ Port 9100        │
                      │   │  Port Number     │
                      │   └──────────────────┘
                      │   ┌──────────────────┐
                      └───│ Port 9100        │
                          │  TBCP Filter     │
                          └──────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the Port9100 port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].

Print Mode	Sets the method of processing data (language emulation).
	• [Auto] (default)
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer automatically detects its language emulation and processes the data accordingly. (See *1 on P. 188.)
	• [PS] [ESCP] [HP-GL/2] [PCL] [TIFF] [KS] [KSSM] [KS5895]
	  After receiving data from a computer, the printer processes the data with the selected print language.
	• [HexDump]
	  Allows you to view data received from a computer by printing it in ASCII code (hexadecimal format). (See *3 on P. 188.)

PJL	Sets whether to enable or disable PJL commands that are sent from the computer. PJL commands control print jobs, and are required to print jobs using the print driver. Use of PJL commands allows you to specify the language emulation for the next job while another language emulation is being processed by the printer. (See *5 on P. 188.) • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]
Connect Time-Out	Sets the time after which data reception is canceled if data is not received. Specify the value from 2 to 65535 seconds in 1-second increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [60 Seconds] (default)
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [9100] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers.

Setting	Description
TBCP Filter	Sets whether to enable or disable the TBCP filter during processing of PostScript data. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]

[UPnP]

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │──────│ UPnP            │
│  UPnP           │      │  Port Status    │
└─────────────────┘      └─────────────────┘

                         ┌─────────────────┐
                         │ UPnP            │
                         │  Port Number    │
                         └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the UPnP port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] • [Disabled] (default) **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [80] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers. Note, however, that InternetServices/IPP/ SOAP/UPnP/WSD ports and Internet services that use HTTP protocol can share the same port number. (See *6 on P. 188.)

[WSD]

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │──────│ WSD             │
│  WSD            │      │  Port Status    │
└─────────────────┘      └─────────────────┘

                         ┌─────────────────┐
                         │ WSD             │
                         │  Port Number    │
                         └─────────────────┘
```

Note
• WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the WSD port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].

Setting	Description
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [80] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers. Note, however, that InternetServices/IPP/ SOAP/UPnP/WSD ports and Internet services that use HTTP protocol can share the same port number.

[SOAP]

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │──────│ SOAP            │
│   SOAP          │      │   Port Status   │
└─────────────────┘      └─────────────────┘
                         ┌─────────────────┐
                         │ SOAP            │
                         │   Port Number   │
                         └─────────────────┘
```

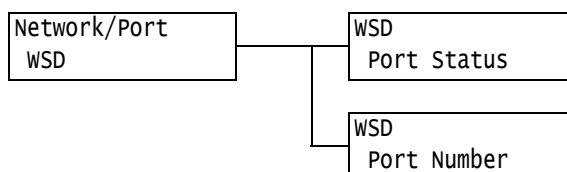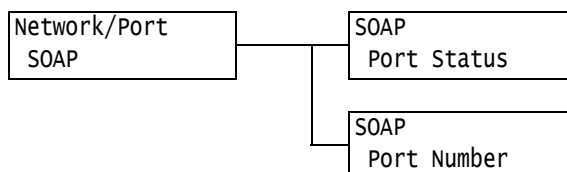| Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the SOAP port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [80] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers. Note, however, that InternetServices/IPP/ SOAP/UPnP/WSD ports and Internet services that use HTTP protocol can share the same port number. (See *6 on P. 188.)

[ThinPrint]

Note
• This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
• To use ThinPrint® feature, contact our Customers Support Center or your dealer for details.

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │──────│ ThinPrint       │
│   ThinPrint     │      │   Port Status   │
└─────────────────┘      └─────────────────┘
                         ┌─────────────────┐
                         │ ThinPrint       │
                         │   Port Number   │
                         └─────────────────┘
                         ┌─────────────────┐
                         │ ThinPrint       │
                         │   SSL/TLS       │
                         └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the ThinPort port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] • [Disabled] (default)
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [4000] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers.
SSL/TLS	Sets whether to enable or disable SSL encrypted communications. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled] **Note** • Client certificate is necessary for SSL communications. Configure an appropriate certificate on the printer.

[SNMP]

Note
• SNMP must be configured when using an application to remotely manage multiple printers. SNMP manages printer information and provides it to the management application.

```
┌──────────────┐      ┌──────────────────┐
│ Network/Port │──────│ SNMP             │
│   SNMP       │      │   Port Status    │
└──────────────┘      └──────────────────┘
                      ┌──────────────────┐
                      │ SNMP             │
                      │   TransportProtocol │
                      └──────────────────┘
```

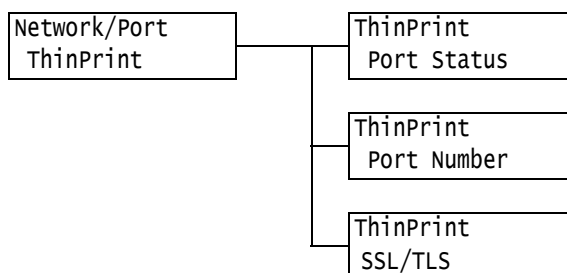| Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the SNMP port at printer start-up. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory].
TransportProtocol	Sets the protocol of the transport layer used by SNMP. Either or both of IPX and UDP can be selected. • [UDP] (default) • [IPX] • [IPX, UDP] **Note** • When using UDP protocol, both the printer and client computers must have IP addresses. • To determine which protocol (IPX or UDP) to use, refer to the manual supplied for the application.

[TCP/IP Settings]

```
┌─────────────────────┐     ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port        │─────│ TCP/IP Settings     │
│  TCP/IP Settings    │     │  IP Mode            │
└─────────────────────┘     └─────────────────────┘

                            ┌─────────────────────┐     ┌─────────────────────┐
                            │ TCP/IP Settings     │─────│ IPv4 Settings       │
                            │  IPv4 Settings      │     │  Get IP Address     │
                            └─────────────────────┘     └─────────────────────┘

                                                        ┌─────────────────────┐
                                                        │ IPv4 Settings       │
                                                        │  IP Address         │
                                                        └─────────────────────┘

                                                        ┌─────────────────────┐
                                                        │ IPv4 Settings       │
                                                        │  Subnet Mask        │
                                                        └─────────────────────┘

                                                        ┌─────────────────────┐
                                                        │ IPv4 Settings       │
                                                        │  Gateway Address    │
                                                        └─────────────────────┘
```
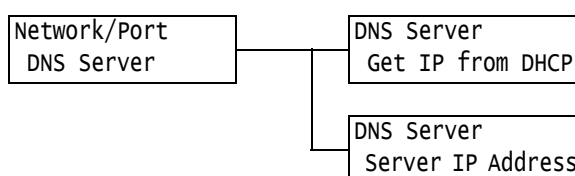
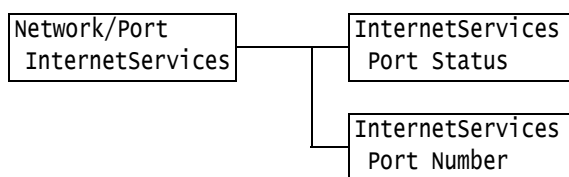| Setting		Description
IP Mode		Sets the IP mode. • [IPv6] 　The IPv6 mode is used. Advanced settings are unnecessary since it is automatically configured. • [IPv4] 　The IPv4 mode is used. Set the IP address from [IPv4 Settings]. • [Dual Stack] (default) 　Both the IPv4 and IPv6 modes can be used.
IPv4 Settings	**-**	Sets the IPv4 settings
	Get IP Address	Sets the method of obtaining the information (IP address, subnet mask, or gateway address) required to use the TCP/IP protocol. • [DHCP / Autonet] (default) 　Automatically obtains information from a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server that has the AutoIP feature. • [STATIC] 　Sets the information manually on the control panel. Consult your network administrator for the IP address. • [DHCP] 　Automatically obtains the information from the DHCP server. • [BOOTP] 　Automatically obtains the information from the BOOTP. • [RARP] 　Automatically obtains the information from the RARP. **Note** • When [DHCP/Autonet], [DHCP], [BOOTP], and [RARP] is changed to [STATIC], a screen for setting the IP address is sometimes displayed. Manually set the IP address when this screen is displayed.

Setting		Description
IPv4 Settings	IP Address, Subnet Mask, Gateway Address	Allows you to verify the automatically acquired IP address or manually enter the IP address. Enter the IP address in the format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. Any number from 0 to 255 can be set for each xxx in the IP and gateway addresses. However, the initial xxx cannot be 127 or any number from 224 to 255. For subnet masks, each xxx must be one of the following numbers: 0, 128, 192, 224, 240, 248, 252, 254, and 255. (See *2 on P. 188.) **Important** • Make sure that you set the IP address correctly. Setting the wrong address can cause problems on the network. • If the correct address is not entered in the subnet mask (e.g. 0 is set in bits midway), the previous setting is restored to even if you press the <Menu> button after the number is set. You cannot configure other items until the correct value is set. • Set the gateway address only when it must be clearly indicated. This setting is not required in environments where the gateway address is automatically set.

[DNS Server]

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │──┬───│ DNS Server          │
│  DNS Server     │  │   │  Get IP from DHCP   │
└─────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────┘
                     │
                     │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                     └───│ DNS Server          │
                         │  Server IP Address  │
                         └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Get IP from DHCP	Specifies whether or not to automatically acquire the DNS server IP address from the DHCP server. • [Enabled] • [Disabled] (default) **Note** • Consult your network administrator for the IP address when setting it manually. • When [Enabled] is changed to [Disabled], the screen for setting the IP address is sometimes displayed. Manually set the IP address when this screen is displayed. • When the IP address acquisition method is set to manual, this item is fixed under [Disabled].
Server IP Address	These items allow you to verify the automatically acquired IP address or manually enter the IP address. Enter the IP address in the format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. For IP addresses, xxx can be any number between 0 and 255. (See *2 on P. 188.) **Important** • Make sure that you set the IP addresses correctly. Setting the wrong addresses can cause problems on the network.

[InternetServices]

```
┌─────────────────────┐        ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port        │        │ InternetServices    │
│   InternetServices  │────┬───│   Port Status       │
└─────────────────────┘    │   └─────────────────────┘
                           │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                           │   │ InternetServices    │
                           └───│   Port Number       │
                               └─────────────────────┘
```

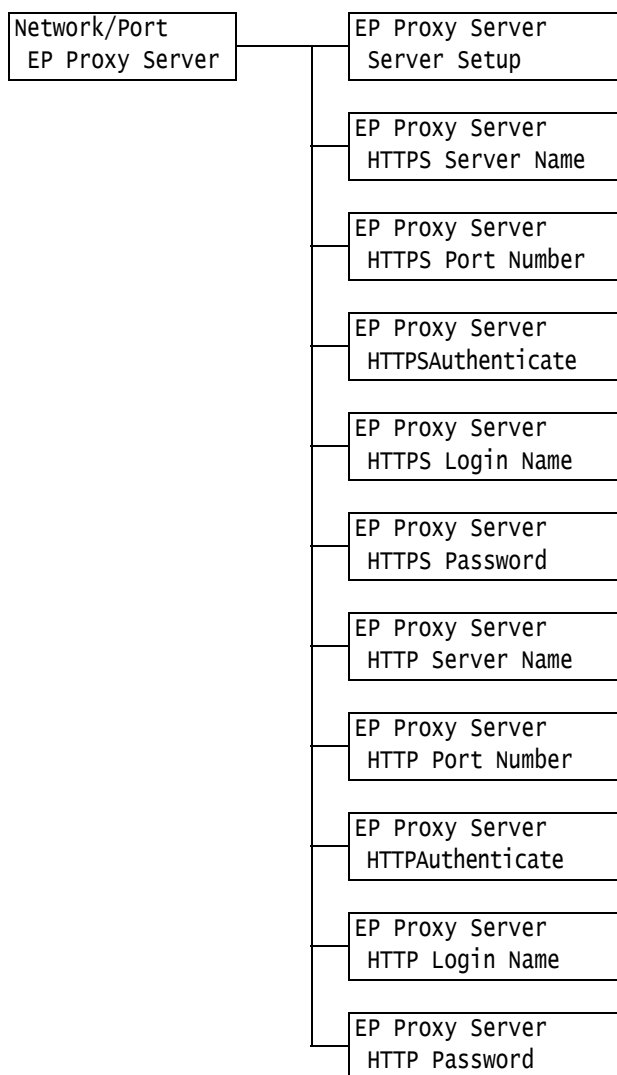| Setting	Description
Port Status	Sets whether to enable or disable the Internet Services port at printer start-up. Selecting [Enabled] allows you to use CentreWare Internet Services. CentreWare Internet Services allows you to monitor or remotely configure the printer using a web browser on your computer. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Important** • If the printer runs out of memory when the port is enabled, the port is sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory]. **Note** • When using Internet Services, both the printer and client computers must have IP addresses.
Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [80] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers. Note, however, that InternetServices/IPP/ SOAP/UPnP/WSD ports and Internet services that use HTTP protocol can share the same port number. (See *6 on P. 188.)

[EP Proxy Server]

Important
- This feature may be used when EP system is used. Consult our Customers Support Center or your dealer for more details.
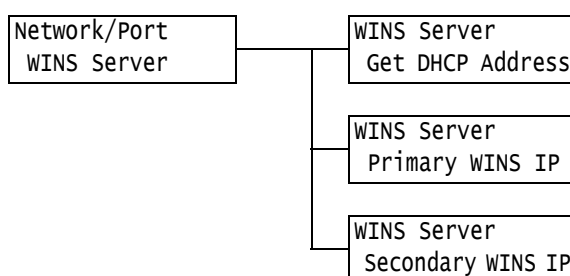
Note
- This item is not supported on the model available in China.

```
┌────────────────────┐      ┌────────────────────┐
│ Network/Port       │      │ EP Proxy Server    │
│   EP Proxy Server  ├──┬───│   Server Setup     │
└────────────────────┘  │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTPS Server Name │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTPS Port Number │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTPSAuthenticate │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTPS Login Name  │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTPS Password    │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTP Server Name  │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTP Port Number  │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTPAuthenticate  │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        ├───│   HTTP Login Name   │
                        │   └────────────────────┘
                        │
                        │   ┌────────────────────┐
                        │   │ EP Proxy Server    │
                        └───│   HTTP Password     │
                            └────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

Server Setup	Sets EP proxy server specification.
	• [Same Proxy] (default)
	  The same setting is used for HTTPS and HTTP.
	  Settings in HTTPS is used for HTTP.
	• [Different Proxy]
	  HTTPS and HTTP are separately set.

HTTPS Server Name **HTTP Server Name**	Enter the server name of EP proxy server used in HTTPS and HTTP. Up to 255 characters are allowed. (See *4 on P. 188.)

Setting	Description
HTTPS Port Number **HTTP Port Number**	Sets the port number used in HTTPS and HTTP from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [8080] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers.
HTTPS Authenticate **HTTP Authenticate**	Sets whether to enable or disable authentication feature of EP proxy server used in HTTPS and HTTP. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]
HTTPS Login Name **HTTP Login Name**	Enter the login name of EP proxy server used in HTTPS and HTTP. Up to 31 characters are allowed. (See *4 on P. 188.)
HTTPS Password **HTTP Password**	Enter the password of EP proxy server used in HTTPS and HTTP. Up to 31 characters are allowed. (See *4 on P. 188.)

[WINS Server]

```
Network/Port          WINS Server
 WINS Server           Get DHCP Address


                      WINS Server
                       Primary WINS IP


                      WINS Server
                       Secondary WINS IP
```

Setting	Description
Get DHCP Address	Specifies whether or not to automatically acquire the WINS server IP address required for using WINS (Windows Internet Name Service) from the DHCP server. • [On] • [Off] (default) **Note** • Consult your network administrator for the IP address when setting it manually. • When [On] is changed to [Off], the screen for setting the IP address is sometimes displayed. Manually set the IP address when this screen is displayed. • When the IP address acquisition method is set to manual, this item is fixed under [On].
Primary WINS IP **Secondary WINS IP**	These items allow you to verify the automatically acquired IP address or manually enter the IP address. Enter the IP address in the format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. For IP addresses, xxx can be any number between 0 and 255. (See *2 on P. 188.) When [Primary WINS IP] is invalid, the [Secondary WINS IP] is also invalid. **Important** • Make sure that you set the IP addresses correctly. Setting the wrong addresses can cause problems on the network.

[Ethernet]

```
Network/Port
 Ethernet
```

Setting	Description

Ethernet	Sets the communication speed and connector type for the Ethernet interface.
	• [Auto] (default)
	  Automatically detects 100 Mbps (full duplex), 100 Mbps (half duplex), 10 Mbps (full duplex), or 10 Mbps (half duplex).
	• [100 Mbps Full-Dup]
	  Uses 100 Mbps (full duplex).
	• [100 Mbps Half-Dup]
	  Uses 100 Mbps (half duplex).
	• [10 Mbps Full-Dup]
	  Uses 10 Mbps (full duplex).
	• [10 Mbps Half-Dup]
	  Uses 10 Mbps (half duplex).
	• [1000 Mbps]
	  Sets 1000 Mbps.
	
	Note
	• [1000 Mbps] appears when Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) has been installed.

[IPX/SPXFrameType]

```
Network/Port
 IPX/SPXFrameType
```

Setting	Description

IPX/SPXFrameType	Sets the IPX/SPX frame type.
	• [Auto] (default)
	  Automatically selects the frame type.
	• [Ethernet II]
	  Uses the Ethernet frame type.
	• [Ethernet 802.3]
	  Uses the IEEE802.3 frame type.
	• [Ethernet 802.2]
	  Uses the IEEE802.2 frame type.
	• [Ethernet SNAP]
	  Uses the SNAP frame type.

[IP Filter (IPv4)]

Note
• [IP Filter] can be set also on CentreWare Internet Services. For details, refer to "Controlling Data Reception by IP Address" (P. 278).

```
┌─────────────────┐   ┌─────────────────┐
│ Network/Port    │   │ IP Filter (IPv4)│
│  IP Filter (IPv4)├───┤  IP Filter      │
└─────────────────┘   └─────────────────┘
                      ┌─────────────────┐   ┌─────────────┐   ┌─────────────────┐
                      │ IP Filter (IPv4)│   │ IP Address  │   │ No.1            │
                      │  IP Address     ├───┤  No.1       ├───┤  IP Address     │
                      └─────────────────┘   └─────────────┘   └─────────────────┘
                                                              ┌─────────────────┐
                                                              │ No.1            │
                                                              │  IP Mask        │
                                                              └─────────────────┘

                                            ┌─────────────┐   ┌─────────────────┐
                                            │ IP Address  │   │ No.10           │
                                            │  No.10      ├───┤  IP Address     │
                                            └─────────────┘   └─────────────────┘
                                                              ┌─────────────────┐
                                                              │ No.10           │
                                                              │  IP Mask        │
                                                              └─────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
IP Filter	Sets whether or not to restrict reception using IP addresses. • [Off] (default) • [On]
IP Address	Registers IP addresses allowed through the filter for printing. Up to ten IP addresses can be registered. Set the filter address for registered IP addresses. Enter the IP address and filter address in the format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. For IP addresses, xxx can be any number between 0 and 255. (See *2 on P. 188.) For example, when [IP Address] is set to 129.249.110.23 and [IP Mask] is set to 255.255.255.0, IP addresses 129.249.110.xxx are allowed to print. xxx can be any number between 1 and 254. **Note** • Up to 25 IP addresses can be registered in CentreWare Internet Services.

[SNTP Settings]

```
Network/Port          SNTP Settings
  SNTP Settings         NTP Synchronize

                       SNTP Settings
                         Connect Interval

                       SNTP Settings
                         NTP IP Address
```
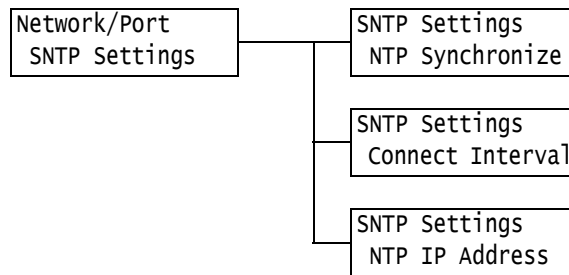
Setting	Description
NTP Synchronize	Sets whether or not to synchronize the time of the printer's machine clock with that of the NTP server. • [Off] (default) • [On]
Connect Interval	Sets the interval used for connecting to the NTP server. Specify the value from 1 to 500 hours in 1 hour increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [168 Hours] (default)
NTP IP Address	Sets the IP address of the NTP server. Enter the IP address in the format: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx. For IP addresses, xxx can be any number between 0 and 255. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [000.000.000.000] (default)

[HTTP-SSL/TLS]

Note
• Set this when encrypting HTTP communication data using the SSL/TLS protocol. [HTTP-SSL/TLS] appears only when a certificate is registered on the printer.
• For details on encrypting HTTP communication data and a server certificate required for the printer, refer to "Configuring HTTP Communication Encryption Settings" (P. 293).
• Communication encryption is not supported on the model available in China.

```
Network/Port          HTTP-SSL/TLS
  HTTP-SSL/TLS          Enablement

                       HTTP-SSL/TLS
                         Port Number
```
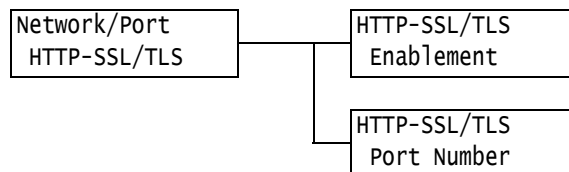
Setting	Description

Enablement	Sets whether or not to encrypt HTTP communication data using the SSL/TLS protocol.
	• [Disabled] (default)
	  Disables SSL/TLS communication.
	• [Enabled]
	  Enables SSL/TLS communication.

Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [443] (default) **Note** • Set only unique port numbers.

[IPSec Comm.]

Note
• Communication encryption is not supported on the model available in China.

```
Network/Port
 IPSec Comm.
```

Setting	Description
IPSec Comm.	Sets whether or not to encrypt data in packet units when sending data to your printer from the computer over the network. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled] **Note** • This item can be used only when the OS is Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2. • For information on how to set the menu items, see "Configuring IPSec for Encryption" (P. 296).

[IEEE 802.1x]

Note
• Communication encryption is not supported on the model available in China.

```
Network/Port          IEEE 802.1x
 IEEE 802.1x           802.1x

                      IEEE 802.1x
                       Authenticate by

                      IEEE 802.1x
                       Verify SrvrCert
```
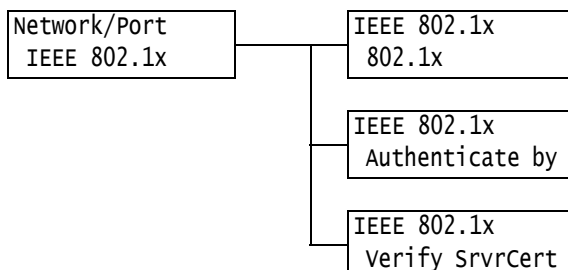
Setting	Description
802.1x	Sets whether or not to use Enable IEEE 802.1x. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]
Authenticate by	Sets the IEEE 802.1x authentication method. • [EAP-MD5] (default) • [EAP-MS-CHAPv2] • [PEAP/MS-CHAPv2] • [EAP-TLS]
Verify SrvrCert	Sets whether or not to validate the server certificate. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]

[System Settings]

The [System Settings] menu allows you to set basic printer behavior.

[Alert Tone]

```
System Settings
 Alert Tone
```

Setting	Description
Alert Tone	Sets the volume to be sounded when a fault such as a paper jam occurs, and a job is held in a fault state. • [Off] (default) • [On]

[Panel Settings]

```
System Settings        Panel Settings
 Panel Settings          Panel Lock

                        Panel Settings
                         Change Passcode

                        Panel Settings
                         Max.LoginAttempts

                        Panel Settings
                         Login Attempts
```

Setting	Description
Panel Lock	Sets whether or not to set a passcode to control access to the menus. • [Off] (default) • [On] **Note** • When [On] is set, the screen for setting the passcode is displayed. Enter a 12-digit number for the passcode by pressing the <▲> and <▼> buttons. Press the <▶> and <◀> buttons to move the digit. • [000000000000] cannot be set as the passcode.
Change Passcode	Allows you to change the passcode for setting the panel lock. Enter a new passcode (12-digit number). The new passcode takes effect when the first and second entries match. **Note** • [Change Passcode] is valid only if [Panel Lock] is set to [On].
Max.LoginAttempts	Sets whether or not to deny access when an authentication error occurs. • [Unlimited] • [Limit] (default)
Login Attempts	Sets the number of authentication errors until access is denied within 1 to 10 tries. • [5 Time(s)] (default) **Note** • When [Max.LoginAttempts] is set to [Unlimited], [Unlimited] is displayed.

[Auto Clear]

```
System Settings
  Auto Clear
```

Setting	Description
Auto Clear	Sets whether or not to automatically clear the menu display within 1 to 30 minutes in 1-minute increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [Off] (default) • [1 Minutes Later] to [30 Minutes Later]

[Low Power Timer]

Note
• Refer to "2.3 Setting/Exiting the Energy Saver Modes" (P. 51) for more information on Low Power Timer.

```
System Settings
 Low Power Timer
```

Setting	Description
Low Power Timer	Sets the time before the printer enters the Low Power mode. Specify the value from 1 to 240 minutes in 1-minute increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [1 Minutes Later] (default)

[Sleep Mode]

Note
• Refer to "2.3 Setting/Exiting the Energy Saver Modes" (P. 51) for more information on Sleep Mode.

```
System Settings
  Sleep Mode
```

Setting	Description
Sleep Mode	Consumes less electricity than the Low Power mode. Set whether or not to enable this feature. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Note** • When [Low Power Mode] is set to [Disabled], [Sleep Mode] cannot be set to [Disabled]. **Refer to** • "2.3 Setting/Exiting the Energy Saver Modes" (P. 51)

[Sleep Mode Timer]

Note
• Refer to "2.3 Setting/Exiting the Energy Saver Modes" (P. 51) for more information on Sleep Mode Timer.

```
System Settings
 Sleep Mode Timer
```

Setting	Description
Sleep Mode Timer	Sets the time before the printer enters the Sleep mode. Specify the value from 1 to 240 minutes in 1-minute increments. (See *2 on P. 188.) • [1 Minutes Later] (default) **Refer to** • "Setting Example: Changing the Sleep Mode Timer" (P. 124)

[Auto Job History]

```
System Settings
 Auto Job History
```

Setting	Description

Auto Job History	Sets whether or not to automatically print the [Job History Report] on the completed print jobs.
	• [Do not print] (default)
	  Does not automatically print the [Job History Report].
	• [Print]
	  When memory fills up to its maximum of 50 print jobs, a history of past jobs that have not been output is automatically output starting with the oldest print job. Data being printed or queued print data is not recorded in this history.

[Set Jobs View]

```
System Settings          Set Jobs View
 Set Jobs View            Active Jobs

                          Set Jobs View         Completed Jobs
                          Completed Jobs        Viewing Options

                                                Completed Jobs
                                                Access To:

                                                Completed Jobs
                                                Hide Job Detail
```
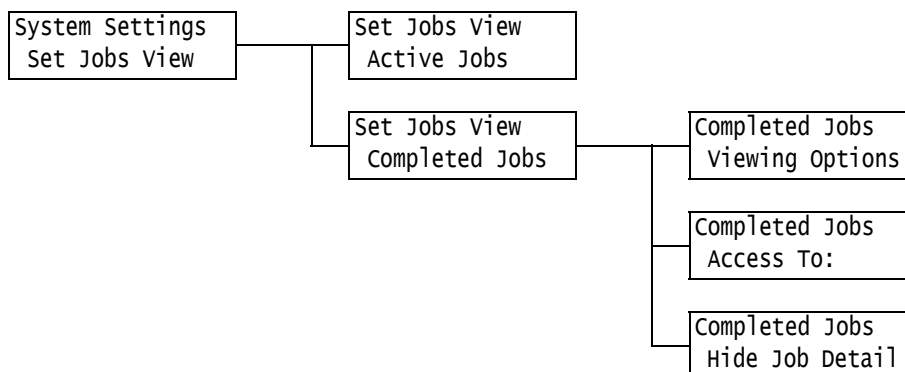
Setting	Description
Active Jobs	Sets to display information about printing or queued jobs. • [Show Job Detail] (default) • [Hide Job Detail]

Setting		Description
Completed Jobs	-	Configures settings for the display of completed job information.
	Viewing Options	Sets view options for completed jobs. • [No Job Viewing] • [Require Login] • [Always Allow View] (default)
	Access To:	Sets whether to display all user jobs or the information of only authenticated users for completed jobs. • [All Jobs] (default) • [Own Jobs]
	Hide Job Detail	Sets whether or not to hide the details of completed jobs. • [No] (default) • [Yes]

[2 Sided Report]

```
System Settings
 2 Sided Report
```

Setting	Description
2 Sided Report	Sets whether or not to print reports and lists either 1-sided or 2-sided. • [1 Sided] (default) • [2 Sided]

[Print Area]

```
System Settings
 Print Area
```

Setting	Description
Print Area	Sets whether or not to extend the print area. This item is enabled when printing by emulation (HP-GL/2, ESC/P, PCL) or in PostScript. • [Standard] (default) • [Extended]

[Banner Settings]

```
System Settings        Banner Settings
  Banner Settings        Banner Sheet

                        Banner Settings
                          Banner Tray

                        Banner Settings
                          Driver Settings
```

Setting	Description

Banner Sheet	Sets whether or not to insert banner sheets.
	• [Off] (default)
	  Does not output banner sheets.
	• [Start Sheet]
	  Outputs a banner sheet at the beginning of a document.
	• [End Sheet]
	  Outputs a banner sheet at the end of a document.
	• [Start & End]
	  Outputs banner sheets at the beginning and end of a document.

Banner Tray	Sets the paper tray to be used for printing banner sheets. • [Tray 1] (default) • [Tray 2] to [Tray 3] **Note** • Tray 2 to 3 are optional. The display only shows the trays that are actually installed on the printer.
Driver Settings	Sets whether or not to enable banner settings for the print drivers. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]

[Secure Print]

Note
• This item appears only when Secure Print feature is available.

```
System Settings
  Secure Print
```

Setting	Description

Secure Print	Sets whether or not to permit printing of Secure Print jobs from the control panel.
	• [Enabled] (default)
	  Permits users to print Secure Print jobs from the control panel.
	• [Disabled]
	  Does not permit users to print Secure Print jobs from the control panel.

[Print Order]

Note

• This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) has been installed.

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────────┐
│ System Settings     │      │ Print Order             │
│  Print Order        │──┬───│  Oldest Date First      │
└─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Print Order             │
                         └───│  Newest Date First      │
                             └─────────────────────────┘
```
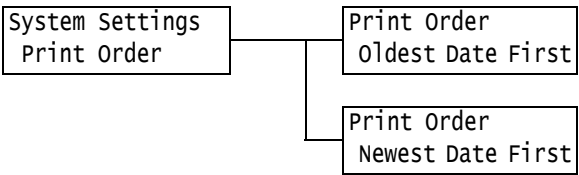
Setting	Description
Print Order	Sets print order for selected files when printing documents by using Secure Print, Private Charge Print or Charge Print features. • [Oldest First] (default) Prints files in chronological order. • [Newest First] Prints files in reverse chronological order.

[Machine Clock]

Note
• The date and time set under this item are printed in reports and lists.

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────────┐
│ System Settings     │      │ Machine Clock           │
│  Machine Clock      │──┬───│  Set Date               │
└─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Machine Clock           │
                         ├───│  Set Time               │
                         │   └─────────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Machine Clock           │
                         ├───│  Date Format            │
                         │   └─────────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Machine Clock           │
                         ├───│  Time Format            │
                         │   └─────────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Machine Clock           │
                         ├───│  Time Zone              │
                         │   └─────────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────────┐      ┌──────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Machine Clock           │      │ Daylight Savings     │
                         └───│  Daylight Savings       │──┬───│  Off                 │
                             └─────────────────────────┘  │   └──────────────────────┘
                                                          │
                                                          │   ┌──────────────────────┐
                                                          │   │ Daylight Savings     │
                                                          ├───│  Set by Date         │
                                                          │   └──────────────────────┘
                                                          │
                                                          │   ┌──────────────────────┐
                                                          │   │ Daylight Savings     │
                                                          └───│  Set by Month/Week   │
                                                              └──────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Set Date	Sets year/month/day to match with the format set in [Date Format].
Set Time	Sets hours : minutes to match with the format set in [Time Format].

Date Format	Sets the date display format.
	• [yyyy/mm/dd]
	  The date is displayed in order year/month/day.
	• [mm/dd/yyyy]
	  The date is displayed in order month/day/year.
	• [dd/mm/yyyy] (default)
	  The date is displayed in order day/month/year.
	Note
	• The initial values may be different depending on the model.

Time Format	Sets the time display format. • [12 Hour Clock] • [24 Hour Clock] (default)
Time Zone	Sets the time zone.

Daylight Savings	Sets Daylight Saving Time.
	• [Off] (default)
	  No Daylight Saving Time is set.
	• [Set by Date]
	  Start date and End date of Daylight Saving Time is set by date (Month, Day).
	• [Set by Month/Week]
	  Start date and End date of Daylight Saving Time is set by month and week.
	Note
	• [Invalid value] appears for inputting incorrect values, while [Start date and end date are incorrect] appears for configuring the same setting for Start date and End date.

[When Jam Occurs]

```
System Settings
 when Jam Occurs
```

Setting	Description

When Jam Occurs	Specify how the printer handles print jobs if a paper jam occurs while printing.
	• [ClearJam ToResume] (default)
	  The printer resumes printing after a paper jam is cleared.
	• [Delete Job]
	  The printer cancels the print job after a paper jam is cleared.

[PrintcartridgeLifeEnd]

```
System Settings
PrintCartridgeLifeEnd
```

Setting	Description

Printcartridge Life End	There are two types of print cartridge (6K and 0K), with respective lives of 6,000 pages and 10,000 pages.
	When the time to replace the print cartridge is near, a message appears indicating to have a replacement ready, approximately 650 ± 350 pages before the cartridge reaches the end of its life. Approximately 100 pages before the end of its life, another message appears indicating that the cartridge soon needs to be replaced.
	Select whether or not to cancel printing when a print cartridge has reached its replacement cycle.
	• [Cancel Printing]
	  After the print cartridge replacement message appears, printing is disabled until the print cartridge is replaced with a new one.
	• [Continue to print] (default)
	  Even when the [Replace the print cartridge] message is displayed, printing does not stop. You can continue printing, but the toner may run out during printing or your prinouts may be faded. If this happens, remove the cartridge out of the printer and shake it. This may allow you to print some more pages before the toner runs out completely. For information on how to shake the cartridge, refer to " Output is too light" (P. 240).

* : The page yield of each consumable varies depending on print requests, documents printed, how often the power is switched on/off or temperature and humidity of the environment where the printer is located. For more information, refer to "A.3 Life of Consumables and Regular Replacement Parts" (P. 327).

[mm / inches]

```
System Settings
 mm / inches
```

Setting	Description
mm / inches	Sets the unit of measure for lengths displayed or entered on the control panel. • [Millimeter(mm)] (default) • [Inches (")]

[Data Encryption]

Important
• The HDD Extension Kit (optional) is initialized when the [Data Encryption] setting is changed.

Note
• This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
• This item is not supported on the model available in China.
• All data is automatically encrypted when data is written to the HDD Extension Kit (optional).

```
System Settings          Data Encryption
 Data Encryption          Encryption

                         Data Encryption
                          Encryption Key
```
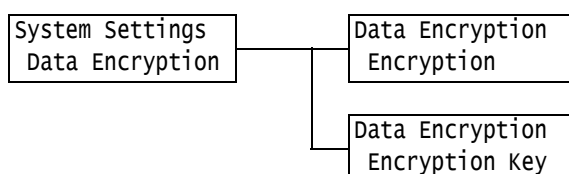
Setting	Description
Encryption	Sets whether or not encrypt data on the system disk (HDD Extension Kit (optional)). • [Off] (default) • [On]
Encryption Key	Sets the 12-digit number encryption key for encrypting data. **Note** • [Encryption Key] is always displayed as [0] on the setting screen even when set as a security measure.

[Overwrite HD]

Note
• This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.

```
System Settings
 Overwrite HD
```
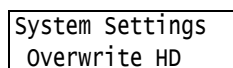
Setting	Description
Overwrite HD	Sets whether or not to overwrite data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional), and the number of times data is overwritten. • [Off] • [1 Overwrite] • [3 Overwrites] (default)

[Auto Job Promote]

Note
• This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.

```
System Settings
 Auto Job Promote
```

Setting	Description
Auto Job Promote	Sets whether or not to allow another job to automatically bypass the current job when the printer is unable to start an operation for any reason, (for example, running out of paper in a tray when starting printing). • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled] **Note** • Stored jobs such as Secure Print and Sample Set documents cannot be used with the Auto Job Promote feature. • [Resume Error Job] is not available if [Enabled] is set.

[Resume Job After Print Error]

Note
• This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed while [Auto Job Promote] is set to [Disabled].

```
System Settings
 Resume Error Job
```

Setting	Description
Resume Error Job	Sets the operation by the printer if it needs to cancel a print job, when the error occurs in the print job for any reason. • [Auto Resume] (default) The printer automatically cancels a print job with error and resumes the subsequent jobs. • [Resume by User] Error message appears on the control panel if the error which involves canceling of print jobs occurs. Print jobs are canceled by the operation from the printer.

[Software Download]

```
System Settings
 Software Download
```

Setting	Description
Software Download	Sets whether to enable or disable software downloads. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled]

[Ram Disk]

Note
• This item is displayed when additional system memory (1 GB) (optional) is installed, but no the HDD Extension Kit (optional).

```
System Settings
 Ram Disk
```

Setting	Description
Ram Disk	Sets whether or not to use the RAM disk. Setting this to [Enabled] allows you to use the RAM disk. • [Enabled] (default) • [Disabled] **Note** • If you are using the RAM disk, all documents accumulated in the printer will be deleted if you switch the printerÅfs power on and then on again.

[Accounting]

```
┌─────────────────────┐        ┌─────────────────────┐
│ System Settings     │────────│ Accounting          │
│  Accounting         │        │  Accounting Type    │
└─────────────────────┘   │    └─────────────────────┘
                          │
                          │    ┌─────────────────────┐
                          ├────│ Accounting          │
                          │    │  VerifyUserDetails  │
                          │    └─────────────────────┘
                          │
                          │    ┌─────────────────────┐
                          └────│ Accounting          │
                               │  Customize Prompts  │
                               └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

Accounting Type	Select types of management to perform account administration. When an [Local Accounting] is set, you can print the [Auditron Report (Print Jobs)] instead of the [Meter Report (Print Jobs)].
	• [Disabled] (default)
	• [AuthenticationSrvr]
	  Performs account administration using user information managed on the Authentication Server.
	• [Local Accounting]
	  Performs account administration using pre-registered information in the printer.
	• [Network Accounting]
	  Performs account administration based on the user information managed by a remote service. User information is registered on the remote service.
	• [Xerox Std Accounting]
	  Accounting administration is carried out based on the user information and account information pre-registered on the machine.
	  The optional hard disk is required to select [Xerox Std Accounting].

VerifyUserDetails	When [Network Accounting] is selected under [Accounting Type], set whether or not to check authentication information. • [No] • [Yes] (default) **Note** When [Login Type] is set to [Local Accounts], this item is not displayed. Set to [Yes].
Customize Prompts	When [Network Accounting] is selected under [Accounting Type], set whether or not to input users. • [UserID, AccountID] (default) • [User ID Prompt] • [Account ID Prompt] • [No Prompts] **Note** • When connecting an Smart card system, you can only set [User ID Prompt]. • The display of items you can set changes depending on the [Login Type] and [VerifyUserDetails] settings.

[Authentication]

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
│ System Settings │      │ Authentication  │
│  Authentication │──┬───│  Login Type     │
└─────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────┘
                     │
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ Authentication  │      │ User Details Setup │
                     ├───│  User Detail Setup │──┬──│  StoreUserDetails  │
                     │   └─────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────┘
                     │                        │
                     │                        │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │                        │   │ User Details Setup │
                     │                        ├───│  FailedAccess Log  │
                     │                        │   └─────────────────┘
                     │                        │
                     │                        │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │                        │   │ User Details Setup │
                     │                        ├───│  SaveRemoteAccount │
                     │                        │   └─────────────────┘
                     │                        │
                     │                        │   ┌─────────────────┐
                     │                        │   │ User Details Setup │
                     │                        └───│  Del RemoteAccount │
                     │                            └─────────────────┘
                     │
                     │   ┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────┐
                     │   │ Authentication  │      │ Charge Print    │
                     └───│  Charge Print   │──┬──│  PJLReceiveCommand │
                         └─────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────┘
                                              │
                                              │   ┌─────────────────┐
                                              │   │ Charge Print    │
                                              ├───│  PJL OutputCommand │
                                              │   └─────────────────┘
                                              │
                                              │   ┌─────────────────┐
                                              │   │ Charge Print    │
                                              ├───│  Receive Control │
                                              │   └─────────────────┘
                                              │
                                              │   ┌─────────────────┐      ┌──────────────────┐
                                              │   │ Charge Print    │      │ Process Job Login │
                                              └───│  Process Job Login │──┬──│  Job Login Success │
                                                  └─────────────────┘  │   └──────────────────┘
                                                                       │
                                                                       │   ┌──────────────────┐
                                                                       │   │ Process Job Login │
                                                                       ├───│  Job Login Failure │
                                                                       │   └──────────────────┘
                                                                       │
                                                                       │   ┌──────────────────┐
                                                                       │   │ Process Job Login │
                                                                       └───│  Without User ID  │
                                                                           └──────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

Login Type	Sets the printer authentication method.
	• [No Login Required] (default)
	  Authentication is not performed.
	• [Local Accounts]
	  Performs user authentication based on the user information pre-registered in the printer.
	• [Remote Accounts]
	  Authenticates users with a remote authentication server.

Setting		Description
User Detail Setup	**StoreUser Details**	Sets whether to store authentication information to non-volatile memory (NVM) or HDD Extension Kit (optional). • [NVM] (default) • [HDD Extension Kit (optional)] **Note** • This item appears only when [Local Accounts] is set in [Login Type] while [Network Accounting] is set in [Accounting] > [Accounting Type].
	Failed Access Log	Sets whether or not to record failed authentication to [Error History Report] when authentication fails for the preset number of times in 10 minutes. This is to detect invalid accesses. • [Off] • [On] (default) When [On] is specified, the number of authentication failures recorded can be specified as a value from 1 to 600. **Note** • Authentication failures are only recorded in [Error History Report], and access denials, as in "[Panel Settings]" (P. 155) are not recorded.
	Save Remote Account	Sets whether or not to save remote accounts. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled] **Note** • This item appears when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed and [Remote Accounts] is selected for [Login Type].
	Del Remote Account	Deletes user information for remote authentication saved by setting [Save Remote Account] to [Enabled]. **Note** • This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed, while [Remote Accounts] is set in [Login Type].
Charge Print	**–**	Sets charge printing that uses authenticated user information. **Note** • This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
	PJL Receive Command	Reception of remote printing commands can be controlled by PJL commands. When [Off] is set or no PJL command has arrived on the printer, the [Receive Control] setting described later is used. • [Off] (default) • [On] **Note** • This feature is displayed only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
	PJL Output Command	Printing of remote print jobs can be controlled by PJL commands. • [Off] (default) • [On] **Note** • This feature is displayed only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.

Setting		Description

	Receive Control	Sets how received print jobs are handled.
		• [ReferPrintAuditron] (default)
		• [PrivateChargePrint]
		  Saves jobs with User IDs to private charge print regardless of whether or not the authentication feature is used.
		• [Save in ChargePrint]
		  Saves all received jobs to charge print regardless of whether or not the authentication feature is used.
		
		Important
		• When [Save in ChargePrint] is set, all print jobs are saved even if authentication succeeds or fails. To prevent unwanted print jobs from building up, either set up automatic deletion or manually delete print jobs that have exceeded their storage period set under [Job Expiry Date]. For more information on how to set the storage period, refer to "[Stored Jobs]" (P. 170).
		
		Note
		• This item appears only when IC Card Reader (optional or purchase separately) is installed. The IC Card Reader may not be supplied with the printer in some regions. Contact your dealer for details.
		• When [PrivateChargePrint] and [Save inChargePrint] are set, secure print, sample set or delayed print are ignored even if you specify them on the print driver.

	Process Job Login	Sets the processing method when a print job is received.
		
		[Job Login Success]
		Sets the processing method when successfully authenticated jobs are received.
		• [Print Job] (default)
		  Print jobs are printed.
		• [PrivateChargePrint]
		  Print jobs are saved to Private Charge Print.
		
		[Job Login Failure]
		Sets the processing method when failed authentication jobs are received.
		• [Save in ChargePrint]
		• [Delete Job] (default)
		
		[Without User ID]
		Sets the processing method when a print job without a User ID is received.
		• [Print Job]
		• [Save in ChargePrint]
		• [Delete Job] (default)
		
		Note
		• This item appears only when IC Card Reader (optional or purchase separately) is installed. The IC Card Reader may not be supplied with the printer in some regions. Contact your dealer for details.

[Stored Jobs]

```
System Settings        Stored Jobs
 Stored Jobs            Job Expiry Date


                       Stored Jobs
                        Keep for (Days)


                       Stored Jobs
                        Delete at (Time)


                       Stored Jobs
                        Keep for


                       Stored Jobs
                        Upon Power Off
```

Setting	Description

Job Expiry Date	Sets the storage period for documents. Stored jobs are automatically deleted when the document expiry date is reached.
	• [Off] (default)
	  Documents are kept unconditionally.
	• [No. of Days & Time]
	  Sets the storage period as a number of days and time.
	• [Duration]
	  Sets the number of hours until documents are deleted.

Keep for (Days)	Sets the storage period within 1 to 14 days in 1-day increments. • [7 Days] (default)
Delete at (Time)	Sets the time that documents are deleted. • [3:00AM] or [3:00] (default) **Note** • Set the time by the 12-hour clock or 24-hour clock by setting [System Settings] > [Machine Clock] > [Time Format].
Keep for	Sets the storage period between 0 hours and 15 minutes and 120 hours and 0 minutes. • [4 Hours and 0 Minutes] (default)

Upon Power Off	Sets whether or not to delete stored jobs regardless of the storage period when the priner is turned off or on.
	• [Do not Delete Jobs] (default)
	  Deletes only stored jobs whose document expiry date is reached when the priner is turned off or on.
	  It does not delete stored jobs whose document expiry date is not reached.
	• [Delete Jobs]
	  Deletes all stored jobs when the printer is turned off or on.

[Software Options]

Note
- This item appears only when the Feature Enhance Kit (optional) is installed.
- To install the Feature Enhance Kit and HDD Extension Kit (optional) are necessary.

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ System Settings     │      │ Software Options    │      │ FeatureEnhance Kit  │
│  Software Options    ├──────┤  FeatureEnhance Kit ├──────┤  Enable Kit         │
└─────────────────────┘      └─────────────────────┘      └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
FeatureEnhance Kit	Enables the Feature Enhance Kit installed on the printer. The confirmation message is displayed when [Enable Kit] is selected. Press the <OK> button. **Note** • Once the [FeatureEnhance Kit] is enabled, the ROM of the installed Feature Enhance Kit cannot be used by other devices. • To reset or disable this feature, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

[Image Log Control]

Important
- Consult your dealer to use the Image Log Control feature.

Note
- This item appears only when the Feature Enhance Kit (optional) and HDD Extension Kit (optional) are installed.

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ System Settings     │      │ Image Log Control   │
│  Image Log Control   ├──┬───┤  Image Log Control  │
└─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Image Log Control   │
                         ├───┤  Generate ImageLog  │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Image Log Control   │
                         ├───┤  Assurance Level    │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ Image Log Control   │      │ ImageLog Transfer   │
                         └───┤  Transfer ImageLog  ├──┬───┤  Log Transfer       │
                             └─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────┘
                                                      │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                                                      │   │ ImageLog Transfer   │
                                                      ├───┤  Logs To Transfer   │
                                                      │   └─────────────────────┘
                                                      │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                                                      │   │ ImageLog Transfer   │
                                                      ├───┤  Transfer Timing    │
                                                      │   └─────────────────────┘
                                                      │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                                                      │   │ ImageLog Transfer   │
                                                      └───┤  Assurance Level    │
                                                          └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting		Description
Image Log Control		Set whether or not to use the image log control feature. Normally, the printer is used with this feature set to [Off]. Consult your dealer to use the Image Log Control feature. • [Off] (default) • [On]
Generate ImageLog		Sets whether or not to generate an image log. • [Off] • [On] (default)

Assurance Level		Sets the level at which an image log is reliably generated for a print job.
		• [High]
		  Image logs are generated unconditionally. For this reason, print operations are sometimes affected.
		• [Low] (default)
		  Image logs are generated as much as possible with priority given to printer performance. For this reason, generation of image logs is sometimes skipped.

Transfer ImageLog	**-**	Sets transfer of image logs to the log server.
	Log Transfer	Set whether or not to enable the image log transfer feature. • [Disabled] (default) • [Enabled]
	Logs To Transfer	Sets automatic transfer of image logs. • [Pause] • [Per Job Basis] • [Accumulate First] (default) **Note** • [Per Job Basis] is displayed when [Image Log Control] > [Assurance Level] is set to [High].
	Transfer Timing	Sets the timing that image logs are transferred. Set [Disabled] or [Enabled] for each of the transfer timings. Default is all [Enabled]. • [At end of the job] • [At power On] • [End of selections] • [When max reached]
	Assurance Level	Sets the assurance level when data is transferred to the log server. • [Low] (default) • [High] **Note** • When [High] is set, data is transferred unconditionally. However, during data transfer, printer performance might drop or printing may be paused.

[Software Upgrade]

Note
- This item appears only when EP system is used. Contact our Customers Support Center or your dealer for details.
- This item is not supported on the model available in China.

```
System Settings
 Software Upgrade
```

Setting	Description
Software Upgrade	Allows to upgrade the firmware used in the printer to the latest version when EP system using the Internet has been used. **Note** • EP system may not be available in some regions. Contact our Customers Support Center or your dealer for its application.

[EP Service]

Note
- This item appears only when EP system is used. Contact our Customers Support Center or your dealer for details.
- This item is not supported on the model available in China.

```
System Settings        EP Service            EP Diag. / Repair
 EP Service            EP Diag. / Repair       DiagnosticRequest

                       EP Service            EP Diag. / Repair
                        Check Connection       Repair Request
```
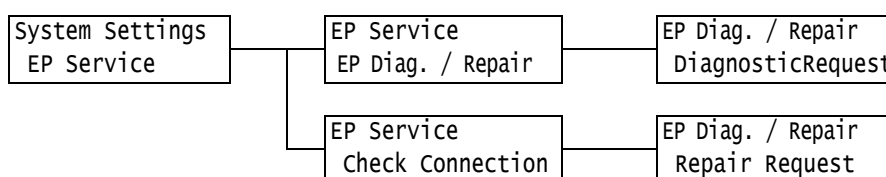
Setting		Description
EP Diag. / Repair	**-**	Sends the Diagnostic or Repair Request to the Remote Center when EP system using the Internet has been used. **Note** • EP system may not be available in some regions. Contact our Customers Support Center or your dealer for its application.
	Diagnostic Request	Request EP diagnosis of the printer.
	Repair Request	Request repair of the printer.
Check Connection		Allows to check Connection status when you contacted our Customers Support Center using EP system. Confirmation message is displayed by selecting [Check Connection]. Press <OK> button.

[Printer Settings]

The [Printer Settings] menu allows you to set paper trays and the Auto Tray Selection feature.

Note
• Refer to "Auto Tray Selection Feature" (P. 118) for more information about the Auto Tray Selection feature.

[Substitute Tray]

```
Printer Settings
 Substitute Tray
```

Setting	Description

Substitute Tray	Sets whether or not to switch to another paper tray if the paper tray selected by the Auto Tray Selection feature runs out of paper. When using this feature, set the paper size for the substitute tray.
	• [Off] (default)
	  Does not substitute the tray, and displays a message prompting to load paper into the paper tray.
	• [Use Larger Size]
	  Switches to another paper tray that contains paper that is one size larger than the size requested, and prints documents at 100% zoom ratio.
	• [Use Closest Size]
	  Switches to another paper tray that contains paper of size closest to the size requested, and prints documents at a reduced zoom ratio if necessary.
	• [Select Bypass Tray]
	  Switches to the bypass tray, and prints documents on the paper loaded in the bypass tray.
	
	Note
	• These settings will be overridden by requests sent from computers.

[PaperTypeMismatch]

```
Printer Settings
 PaperTypeMismatch
```

Setting	Description

PaperTypeMismatch	Sets the action to take when there is no paper tray loaded with the paper type specified in the print job.
	• [PaperSupply Screen]
	  The message prompting you to change the settings for type of paper is displayed.
	• [ConfirmationScreen] (default)
	  The message prompting you to make sure the type of paper is displayed.
	• [Print]
	  The print job is proceeded with the currently specified paper type without showing any messages.

[Paper Type]

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Printer Settings    │──────│ Paper Type          │
│  Paper Type         │      │  Tray 1             │
└─────────────────────┘      └─────────────────────┘

                             ┌─────────────────────┐
                             │ Paper Type          │
                             │  Tray 2             │
                             └─────────────────────┘

                             ┌─────────────────────┐
                             │ Paper Type          │
                             │  Tray 3             │
                             └─────────────────────┘

                             ┌─────────────────────┐
                             │ Paper Type          │
                             │  Bypass Tray        │
                             └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
Tray 1	Sets the type of the paper loaded in tray 1. • [Plain] (default), [Recycled], [Heavyweight], [Extra Heavyweight], [Transparency], [Punched], [Lttrhead], [Pre-Printed], [Others], [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5]. **Note** • [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] display the names specified under [Custom Paper Name].
Tray 2 to Tray 3	Sets the types of the paper loaded in trays 2 to 3. • [Plain] (default), [Recycled], [Heavyweight], [Extra Heavyweight], [Transparency], [Punched], [Lttrhead], [Pre-Printed], [Others], [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5]. **Note** • Tray 2 to Tray 3 are optional. The display only shows the trays that are actually installed on the printer. • [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] display the names specified under [Custom Paper Name].
Bypass Tray	Sets the types of the paper loaded in bypass tray. • [Plain] (default), [Recycled], [Heavyweight], [Extra Heavyweight], [Transparency], [Envelopes], [Lightweight], [Punched], [Lttrhead], [Pre-Printed], [Others], [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5]. **Note** • [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] display the names specified under [Custom Paper Name].

[Paper Color]

```
Printer Settings          Paper Color
 Paper Color               Tray 1

                          Paper Color
                           Tray 2

                          Paper Color
                           Tray 3

                          Paper Color
                           Bypass Tray
```

Setting	Description
Tray 1 to Tray 3 **Bypass Tray**	Sets the color of the paper loaded in the trays. • [White] (default), [Blue], [Yellow], [Green], [Pink], [Clear], [Ivory], [Gray], [Buff], [Goldenrod], [Red], [Orange], [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5], [Others] **Note** • Tray 2 to Tray 3 are optional. The display only shows the trays that are actually installed on the printer. • [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] display the names specified under [Custom Color Name].

[PaperTypePriority]

```
Printer Settings          PaperTypePriority
PaperTypePriority          Plain

                          PaperTypePriority
                           Plain S2

                          PaperTypePriority
                           Recycled

                          PaperTypePriority
                           1. Custom 1

                          PaperTypePriority
                           2. Custom 2

                          PaperTypePriority
                           3. Custom 3

                          PaperTypePriority
                           4. Custom 4

                          PaperTypePriority
                           5. Custom 5
```

Setting	Description

Plain, Plain S2, Recycled, 1. Custom 1 to 5. Custom 5	This setting will be used by the Auto Tray Selection feature. Defaults are as follows: Plain=[1], Recycled=[2]. Otherwise, the default is [Auto Paper Off].
	• [1] to [8]
	  Sets the priority order of paper types.
	• [Auto Paper Off]
	  Does not set the priority order of paper types. In this case, the Auto Tray Selection feature is not used.
	
	Note
	• [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] display the names specified under [Custom Paper Name].
	• You can assign the same priority order to different paper types. In this case, the printer selects a tray based on the [Paper Tray Priority] setting.

[PaperTrayPriority]

```
┌─────────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Printer Settings    │      │ PaperTrayPriority   │
│ PaperTrayPriority   │──────│  Tray 1             │
└─────────────────────┘  │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ PaperTrayPriority   │
                         ├───│  Tray 2             │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ PaperTrayPriority   │
                         ├───│  Tray 3             │
                         │   └─────────────────────┘
                         │
                         │   ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │   │ PaperTrayPriority   │
                         └───│  Bypass Tray        │
                             └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

Tray 1 to Tray 3 Bypass Tray	Sets the priority order of the paper trays. This setting will be used by the Auto Tray Selection feature. Defaults are as follows: Tray 1=[1], Tray 2=[2], Tray 3=[3] and [No AutoTraySwitch].
	• [1] to [3]
	  Sets the priority order of the paper trays.
	  [No AutoTraySwitch]
	  Does not set the priority order of paper types. In this case, the Auto Tray Selection feature is not used.
	
	Note
	• Tray 2 to Tray 3 are optional. The display only shows the trays that are actually installed on the printer.
	• You cannot assign the same priority to more than one tray. If the same priority order of other trays are specified, a priority order other than the specified tray is automatically changed.
	• Only the lowest priority can be set for Bypass Tray.

[PaperSizeSettings]

```
┌─────────────────────┐        ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Printer Settings    │────────│ PaperSizeSettings   │
│  PaperSizeSettings  │        │  Tray 1             │
└─────────────────────┘        └─────────────────────┘

                               ┌─────────────────────┐
                               │ PaperSizeSettings   │
                               │  Tray 2             │
                               └─────────────────────┘

                               ┌─────────────────────┐
                               │ PaperSizeSettings   │
                               │  Tray 3             │
                               └─────────────────────┘

                               ┌─────────────────────┐
                               │ PaperSizeSettings   │
                               │  Bypass Tray        │
                               └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description

Tray 1 to Tray 3	Sets the paper size of the paper loaded in each paper tray.
	• [Auto] (default for Tray 1 to Tray 3)
	  The sensor automatically detects the paper size.
	• [Custom]
	  Sets the length and width of the paper.
	  When [Custom] is selected, set the print orientation to [Portrait (Y) Size] or [Landscape (X) Size].
	
	Note
	• Tray 2 to Tray 3 are optional. The display only shows the trays that are actually installed on the printer.
	• For details on how to set custom paper sizes, refer to "Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays" (P. 115).
	• [Tray 3] is not displayed if [No AutoSwitchOff] is specified in [Paper Tray Priority] > [Tray3].

Bypass Tray	Set the paper sizes of the various trays. A3, A4, A4, A5, B4, B5, 5.5 x 8.5" 7.25 x 10.5", 8.5 x 11", 8.5 x 13", 8.5 x 14", 11 x 17", Postcard (100 x 148), Postcard (148 x 200), Envelope (120 x 235mm), No.10 Env. Monarch, DL Env., C5 Env., 105x235" • [Custom] Set the desired vertical direction size and horizontal direction size. For this purpose, use [Vertical (Y) direction size] and [Horizontal (X) direction size] displayed when [Custom] is selected. **Note** • Regarding the setting procedure for custom sizes, refer to "" Setting the Paper Sizes of Trays" (P. 115) • [Bypass Tray] is not displayed when [No AutoSwitchOff] is selected in [Bypass Tray] under [Paper Tray Priority].

[Custom Paper Name]

```
Printer Settings          Custom Paper Name
 Custom Paper Name          1. Custom 1

                          Custom Paper Name
                           2. Custom 2

                          Custom Paper Name
                           3. Custom 3

                          Custom Paper Name
                           4. Custom 4

                          Custom Paper Name
                           5. Custom 5
```
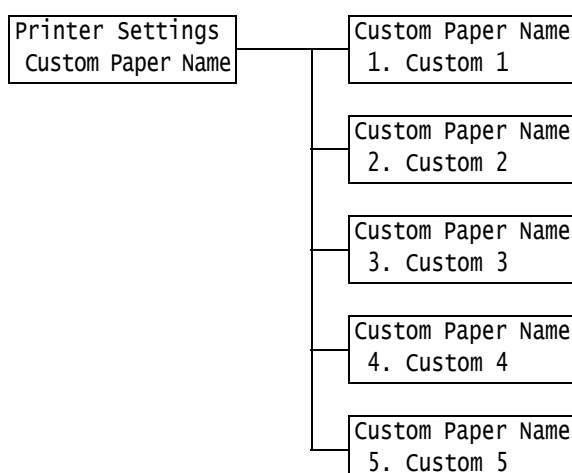
Setting	Description
1. Custom 1 to 5. Custom 5	Sets the names for [1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] that are displayed under [PaperTypePriority], [Paper Type], and [Image Quality]. Up to 8 alphanumeric characters can be used for a name. (See No 1, 2, 3 and 4 of *2 and *4 on P. 188.)

[Custom Color Name]

```
Printer Settings          Custom Color Name
 Custom Color Name          1. Custom 1

                          Custom Color Name
                           2. Custom 2

                          Custom Color Name
                           3. Custom 3

                          Custom Color Name
                           4. Custom 4

                          Custom Color Name
                           5. Custom 5
```
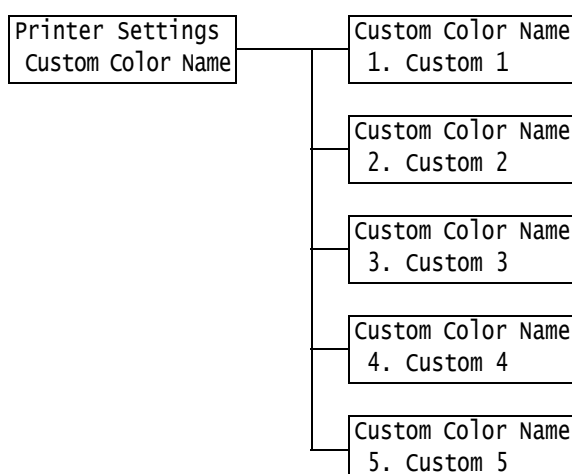
Setting	Description
1. Custom 1 to 5. Custom 5	[1. Custom 1] to [5. Custom 5] displayed under [Paper Color] can be given any name. Up to 8 alphanumeric characters can be used for a name. (See No 1, 2, 3 and 4 of *2 and *4 on P. 188.)

[Print User ID]

```
Printer Settings
 Print User ID
```

Setting	Description
Print User ID	Prints a user ID at a specified location. • [Off] (default) Does not print a user ID. • [Top Left] Prints a user ID at the top left corner of the paper. • [Top Right] Prints a user ID at the top right corner of the paper. • [Bottom Left] Prints a user ID at the bottom left corner of the paper. • [Bottom Right] Prints a user ID at the bottom right corner of the paper.

[Odd Page 2 Sided]

```
Printer Settings
 Odd Page 2 Sided
```

Setting	Description
Odd Page 2 Sided	Sets how to print on the final page of an odd-numbered document during 2-side printing. • [Off] (default) The side of the final page is printed in the same way as 1-sided printing, and paper is not fed again through the Duplex unit as with 2-sided printing. The document can be printed faster since paper is not fed again through the Duplex unit. • [On] The paper is fed again through the Duplex unit even though there is only one side of data for the final page. The printing orientation can be aligned when printing on paper (e.g. paper with punch holes) that must be aligned in a specific way, top to bottom or left to right, for example.

[UnregisteredForms]

```
Printer Settings
UnregisteredForms
```

Setting	Description
UnregisteredForms	Sets whether to cancel printing or print only data when the format specified at printing is not registered. • [Print (Data only)] (default) • [Do not print]

[DefaultPaperSize]

```
Printer Settings
  DefaultPaperSize
```

Setting	Description
DefaultPaperSize	Sets the default paper size for each print mode. • [A4] (default) • [8.5 x 11"]

[Paper Size Group]

```
Printer Settings
  Paper Size Group
```

Setting	Description
Paper Size Group	Sets the size detection mode for automatically detecting the paper size from trays 1 to 3. Select the size detection mode according to the country of use. The default is [AB (8K/16K)]. Refer to the tables below for combinations of sizes that can be automatically detected. **Note** • Some size detection modes cannot be used depending on the model of printer you are using. For information of paper sizes supported by this printer, refer to "Supported Paper" (P. 102).

Size Detection Modes and Automatically Detectable Sizes

Paper Size Group	AB series (8x13") AB series (8x13"/8x14")			AB series AB (8K/16K)			Inch Series		
Loading position	Trays 1	Tray 2 - 3	Bypass Trays (Dial settings)	Trays 1	Tray 2 - 3	Bypass Trays (Dial settings)	Trays 1	Tray 2 - 3	Bypass Trays (Dial settings)
A5	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
A4	O	O	x	O	O	x	O	O	x
A4	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
A3	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
B5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
B5	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
B4	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
5.5 x 8.5"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Paper Size Group	AB series (8x13") AB series (8x13"/8x14")			AB series AB (8K/16K)			Inch Series		
Loading position	**Trays 1**	**Tray 2 - 3**	**Bypass Trays (Dial settings)**	**Trays 1**	**Tray 2 - 3**	**Bypass Trays (Dial settings)**	**Trays 1**	**Tray 2 - 3**	**Bypass Trays (Dial settings)**
5.5 x 8.5"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
7.25 x 10.5"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
8 x 10"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
8 x 10"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
8.5 x 11"	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
8.5 x 11"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
215 x 315mm	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
8.5 x 13"	O	O	O	O	O	x	O	O	O
8.5 x 14"	O	O	x	O	O	x	O	O	x
11 x 15"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
11 x 17"	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Cover-A4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Cover-Letter (9 x 11")	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
SRA3	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
16K (Taiwan/China)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
16K (Taiwan, China)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
8K (Taiwan/China)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Post Card	x	x	O	x	x	O	x	x	O
eply-paid postcard	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Photo L (3.5 x 5")	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Post Card (4 x 6")	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Photo 2L (5 x 7")	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Post Card (6 x 9")	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Envelope (120 x 235mm)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Western No. 3 size envelope	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Commercial#10	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Monarch7.3/4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Envelope DL	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Paper Size Group	AB series (8x13") AB series (8x13"/8x14")			AB series AB (8K/16K)			Inch Series		
Loading position	Trays 1	Tray 2 - 3	Bypass Trays (Dial settings)	Trays 1	Tray 2 - 3	Bypass Trays (Dial settings)	Trays 1	Tray 2 - 3	Bypass Trays (Dial settings)
Kakugata 20 envelopes (C4)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Kakugata 6 envelopes (C5)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Long Paper A	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Long Paper B	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

[OCR Font Glyphs]

```
Printer Settings
 OCR Font Glyphs
```

Setting	Description
OCR Font Glyphs	It allows you to switch Font Glyph Code 0x5c of OCR-B in ESC/P or PCL emulation mode. • [Backslash] (default) • [Japanese Yen Sign]

[Allocate Memory] (See *2 on P. 188.)

[Allocate Memory] changes the size of memory and form memory of each interface.

Important
- Memory is reset when its size is changed, and all data stored in each of the memory areas is deleted.
- You cannot allocate more than the total memory. When the memory allocation settings exceed the size of mounted memory when the power is turned on, the system automatically adjusts memory allocation.
- If the printer runs out of memory when ports are set to be enabled at printer startup, the ports are sometimes automatically disabled. If this happens, either disable unused ports, or change the memory allocation under [Allocate Memory]. Note, however, that the parallel, USB ports are never automatically disabled.

Note
- Memory allocation, excluding the print page buffer, can be set on the control panel or in CentreWare Internet Services.
- The print page buffer is the area where the actual printed image is plotted. The size of the print page buffer can be changed directly by the user. Area remaining after memory is allocated for other uses is allocated as the print page buffer.
  When printing high-resolution documents, set so that a large buffer size is allocated as print page buffer. The actual size of the allocated print buffer can be confirmed by printing the [Configuration Report]. You can also check it by using CentreWare Internet Services.

```
┌─────────────────┐      ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Admin Menu      │──────│ Allocate Memory     │
│  Allocate Memory│      │  PS                 │
└─────────────────┘      └─────────────────────┘
                         ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │ Allocate Memory     │
                         │  HPGL Auto Layout   │
                         └─────────────────────┘
                         ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │ Allocate Memory     │
                         │  Job Ticket Memory  │
                         └─────────────────────┘
                         ┌─────────────────────┐
                         │ Allocate Memory     │
                         │  Receiving Buffer   │
                         └─────────────────────┘
```

Setting	Description
PS	Specifies the size of memory used by PostScript. Specify memory size from 55.00 to 128.00 MB in 0.25 MB increments. The maximum size that can be set changes according to the amount of free memory. • [55.00 M] (default)
HPGL Auto Layout	Specifies the size of memory to be used in HP-GL and HP-GL/2 auto layout. Specify memory size from 64 to 5120 KB in 32 KB increments. The maximum size that can be set changes according to the amount of free memory. • [64K] (default) When HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed, the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is used for auto layout memory. In this case, the size cannot be changed by the user, and is displayed as [HDD Extension Kit (optional)] on the display.
Job Ticket Memory	Specify the amount of memory to use for job tickets from 0.25 to 8.00 MB in 0.25 MB increments. The maximum amount of memory you can allocate varies according to the amount of free space available in memory. • [0.25 MB] (default)

Setting		Description
Receiving Buffer	-	Sets the memory of the receiving buffer (temporary storage location for data arriving from the computer) for each interface. Set the spooling setting, allocation location, and size of memory for each of the LPD, SMB and IPP interfaces. The receiving buffer size can be changed according to operating status and purpose. Increasing the receiving buffer size sometimes frees up the computer supporting a particular interface more quickly. The maximum size that can be set changes according to the amount of free memory. **Note** • When a port is disabled, its corresponding items are not displayed. • Even if the receiving buffer size is increased, the time required to free up a computer sometimes does not change depending on the size of data arriving from the computer.
	Parallel, NetWare, IPP, USB and Port 9100	Specify memory size from 64 to 1024 KB in 32 KB increments. The default memory size is [64K] for parallel, USB memory. Otherwise, it is [256K]. **Note** • [IPP] appears when the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is not installed. [IPP Spool] is displayed when the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed. • [Parallel] appears only when the Parallel Port Kit (optional) is installed.
	EtherTalk Compat	Specify memory size from 1024 to 2048 KB in 32 KB increments. The default is [1024K].
	LPD Spool, SMB Spool	• [Off] (default) Spooling is not performed. Data cannot be simultaneously printed and received using the LPD or SMB interfaces. When printing on the LPD interface, set the memory size of the receiving buffer exclusively for LPD from 1024 to 2048 KB in 32 KB increments. The default is [1024K]. When printing on the SMB interface, set the memory size of the receiving buffer exclusively for SMB from 64 to 1024 KB in 32 KB increments. The default is [256K]. • [Hard Disk] Spooling to HDD Extension Kit (optional) is performed. The HDD Extension Kit (optional) is used as the receiving buffer for spooling. This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed. • [Memory] Spooling to memory is performed. Memory is used as the receiving buffer for spooling. When this optional value is selected, set the memory size of the receiving buffer for spooling from 0.5 to 32.00 MB in 0.25 MB increments. The default is [1.00M]. Note that print data exceeding the preset memory size cannot be received to memory. In this case, select [HDD Extension Kit (optional)] or [No Spooling]. **Important** • When the LPR byte count is disabled and a document larger than the size set as the spooling memory is received, the job is repeatedly transmitted. If this happens, either open the [Ports] tab in the print driver Properties dialog box, and enable the LPR byte count, or change the size of spooling memory so that it is larger than the size of the document.
	IPP Spool	• [Off] (default) Spooling is not performed. Data cannot be simultaneously printed and received using the IPP interface. Set the memory size of the receiving buffer exclusively for IPP from 64 to 1024 KB in 32 KB increments. The default is [256K]. • [Hard Disk] Spooling to HDD Extension Kit (optional) is performed. The HDD Extension Kit (optional) is used as the receiving buffer for spooling. **Note** • [IPP Spool] appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed. [IPP] is displayed when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is not installed.

[Init/Delete Data]

The [Init/Delete Data] menu allows you to initialize printer settings stored in NV memory, network ports, and an HDD Extension Kit (optional), and delete data such as forms registered on the printer.

Note
• Executing initialization returns the settings to their default values.

```
┌─────────────────────┐   ┌─────────────────────┐
│ Admin Menu          │   │ Init/Delete Data    │
│   Init/Delete Data  │───│  NVM                │
└─────────────────────┘   └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Hard Disk          │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Initialize Cert    │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Delete All Data    │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Print Meter        │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Job Counters       │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  DeleteForm/Macro   │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Delete Font        │
                          └─────────────────────┘

                          ┌─────────────────────┐
                          │ Init/Delete Data    │
                          │  Secure Print Jobs*1│
                          └─────────────────────┘
```

[1]:[Secure Print Jobs] appears when using Secure Print feature while [Pte ChargePrint Jobs] appears when using Private Charge Print.

Setting	Description
NVM	Initializes the NV memory. All settings return to the defaults when NV memory is initialized. **Note** • The NV memory is nonvolatile memory that retains the printer settings even when its power is switched off.
Hard Disk	Initializes the HDD Extension Kit (optional). The following data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is deleted by initialization: additional fonts, ESC/P, HP-GL, HP-GL/2, and PCL forms, SMB folder, secure print documents, sample set documents, and delayed print documents. Secure Print, Sample Set and Delayed Print logs are not deleted. **Note** • This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
Initialize Cert	Deletes all certificates and initializes data. Use this option only when the certificate registered is damaged.

Setting	Description
Delete All Data	Initializes all data in NV memory and HDD Extension Kit (optional). All settings return to the defaults when NV memory is initialized. The following data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is deleted by initialization: additional fonts, HP-GL, HP-GL/2, ESC/P, and PCL forms, SMB folder, Secure Print documents, Sample Set documents, and Delayed Print documents. Secure Print, Sample Set and Delayed Print logs are not deleted. **Important** • When HDD Extension Kit (optional) is mounted, it may take approx. 1 hour or more to initialize all data. During initialization, the lamps on the printer's control panel blink. Do not turn the printer off while initialization is in progress.
Print Meter	Initializes meter reports. Meter readings return to 0 when meter reports are initialized. **Refer to** • "Initializing [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] Data" (P. 265)
Job Counters	Initializes the job counter and the accumulated job time counter. Counter readings return to 0 when job counters are initialized.

DeleteForm/Macro	Deletes the forms and macros registered on the printer.
	• [Del ESCP Forms]
	  Deletes ESCP forms for emulation.
	• [DeletePCL Macros]
	  Deletes PCL macros.
	
	Note
	• [Not registered] is displayed if a registered form or a macro does not exist.

Delete Font	Deletes the fonts registered on the printer. • [Delete PCL Fonts] Deletes PCL fonts. **Note** • This item appears only when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed. • [Not registered] is displayed if no fonts are registered.
Secure Print Jobs Pte ChargePrint Jobs	Deletes a document saved as a Secure Print or Private Charge Print job. **Note** • [Secure Print Jobs] appears when using Secure Print feature while [Pte ChargePrint Jobs] appears when using Private Charge Print. • [No Secure Print Jobs] or [No Private Charge Print Jobs] is displayed when there are no documents.

[Language]

```
Settings
 Language
```

Setting	Description
Language	Sets the display language for the control panel. • [English] (default) The display language is English. • [Trad. Chinese] Displays screen messages in traditional Chinese. • [Simp. Chinese] Displays screen messages in simplified Chinese. • [Korean] Displays screen messages in Korean.

[*1]   When [Auto] is selected, data will be deleted if the language emulation automatically selected is not present or is unavailable on the printer.

[*2]   Holding down the <▼> or <▲> button cycles through the options. To display a setting's default value, press <▼> and <▲> at the same time.

[*3]   The following information is printed in each line during dump printing:

Count	Prints the total number of bytes counted from the beginning of the job data.
Hexadecimal code	Prints print data delimited in 4 bytes in hexadecimal format.
ASCII code	Prints print data using JIS X0201 8-bit coded characters. Characters that are not defined in JIS X0201 are printed as "UD".

[*4]   Character List

No.	Type	Characters
1	Blank	Space
2	Alphabet	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
3	Numerals	0123456789
4	Symbols	!"#$%&'()*+,-./:;q=r?@m\n^_`

[*5]   • When [Enabled] is set, and the print mode is set to [HexDump], PJL commands are also output by [HexDump].

        • When language emulation not installed on the printer is specified by a PJL command, data is deleted.

[*6]   • WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

6 Troubleshooting

If you encounter a problem while using this printer and have trouble solving it, see if any of the symptoms in the following pages "6.1 Clearing Paper Jams" (P. 189) through "6.7 Network-related Problems" (P. 231) match your problem.

If your problem is described in the following pages, apply the suggested solution provided for the problem.

If your problem is not described, or could not be solved with the suggested solution, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

6.1 Clearing Paper Jams

When a paper jam occurs, immediately remove the jammed paper by referring to the following illustration and the procedures described below.

After the paper jam is cleared, printing restarts automatically from the point where printing stopped due to the paper jam.

Note
• The following illustration is for a printer installed with two optional paper trays.

1:" Paper jams in the fuser unit area" (P. 196)

2:" Paper jams in the Duplex unit" (P. 199)

3:" Paper Jam in Trays 1 - 3" (P. 193)

4:" Paper jams in the Print cartridge area" (P. 197)

5:" Paper Jam in the Bypass Tray" (P. 191)
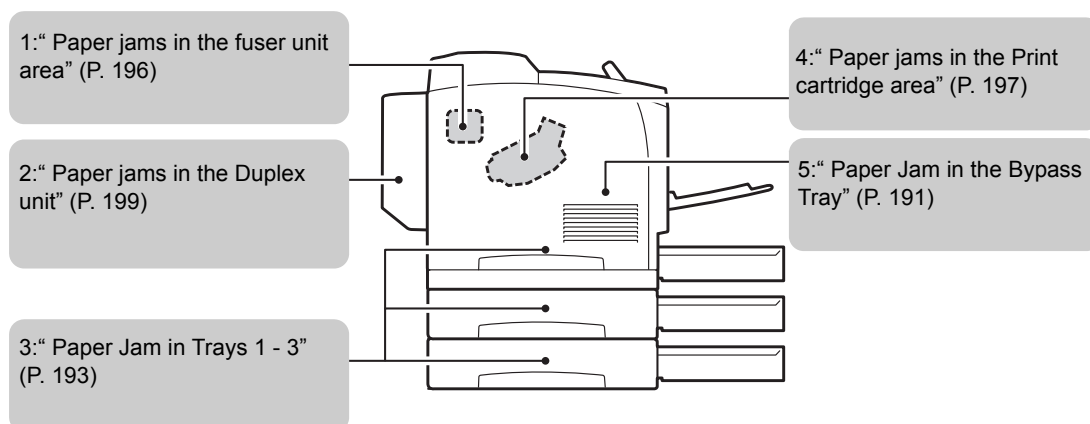
# in Figure	Paper Jam Location	Message Example
1	Paper jams in the fuser unit area	Open covers C and B in this order and remove the jammed paper. If the jammed paper cannot be removed, open cover A, remove the cartridge, and remove the jammed paper.
2	Paper jams in the Duplex unit	Open cover C, and remove the jammed paper. If the jammed paper cannot be removed, open cover A, remove the cartridge, and remove the jammed paper.
3	Paper Jam in Trays 1 - 3	Pull out tray N, remove the jammed paper, and check the positions of the paper guides (N refers to Trays 1 - 3).
4	Paper jams in the Print cartridge area	Open cover A, remove the cartridge, and remove the jammed paper.
5	Paper Jam in the Bypass Tray	Pull out all the trays, including the bypass tray, remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, and open/ close cover A.

⚠ CAUTION

• Do not attempt to remove a paper jammed deeply inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around a Fuser Unit or a heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product promptly and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Important
• Pulling out a paper tray without confirming the location of the paper jam may tear paper and cause pieces of paper to be left in the machine. This can cause a malfunction. Be sure to confirm the location of the paper jam before attempting to clear it.
• The paper jam indicator remains lit on the control panel if there are pieces of paper remaining inside the printer.
• Make sure that the power is on when clearing a paper jam. Switching the power off erases the print data remaining in the printer and the information stored in the printer's memory.
• Do not touch interior components of the printer. Doing so can cause defective printing.

Note
• Labels with the symbol shown below provide jam clearance procedures. Also use the labels as guides when clearing paper jams.

Paper clearance instruction
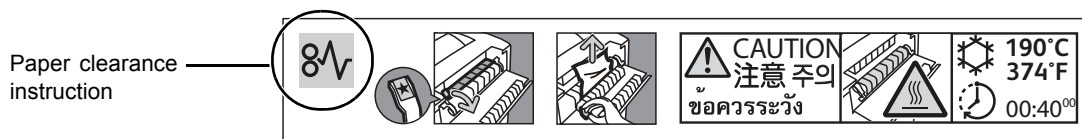
Paper Jam in the Bypass Tray

When a paper jam occurs, the following message is displayed.
Paper Jam
In this case, remove the paper according to the following instruction.

1. Remove the paper loaded into the bypass tray.
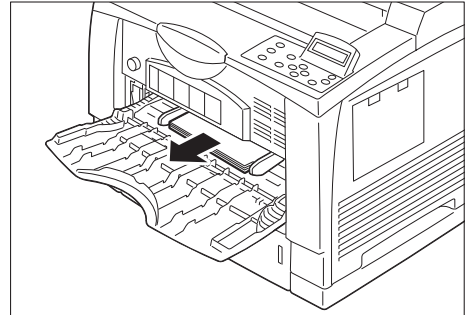
2. Grasping the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, pull out the tray up to the position where it stops.
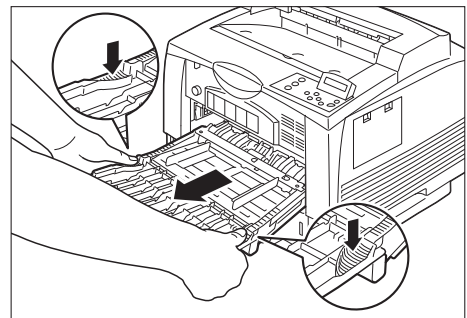
3. Reposition your hands as shown in the illustration and pull up the bypass tray at an angle.
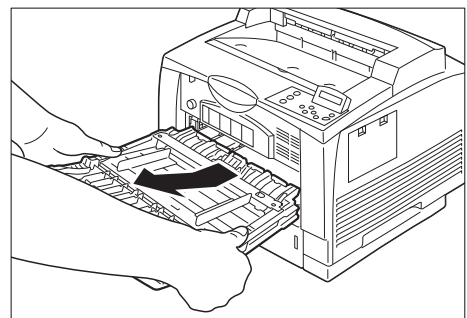
4. Remove the paper tray by pulling it from the printer.

Important
• Be sure to completely pull out the paper trays from the printer. Half pulling out the paper trays and then setting them back may damage the paper they hold.
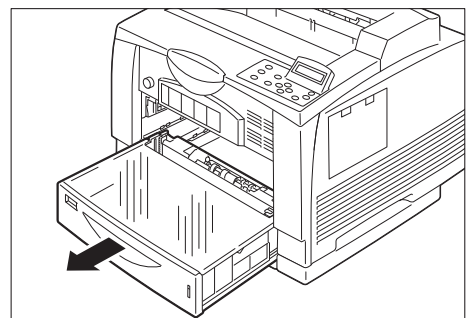
5. Check all the way inside the printer, and if you detect any jammed paper there, remove it.
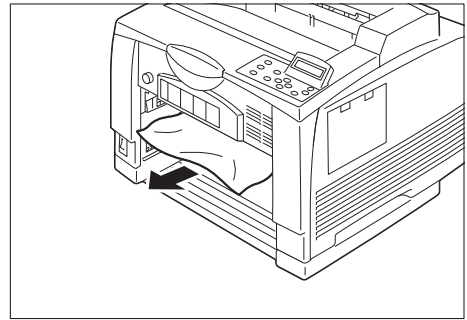
6. Firmly push the paper trays all the way back into the printer.
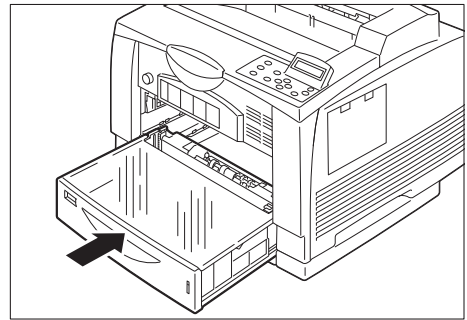
7. Hold the bypass tray and insert it back into the printer.
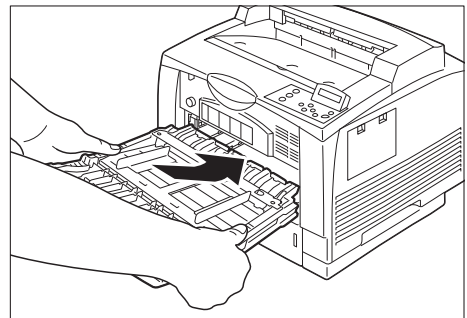
8. Repositioning your hands to grasp the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, firmly push the tray all the way back into the printer.
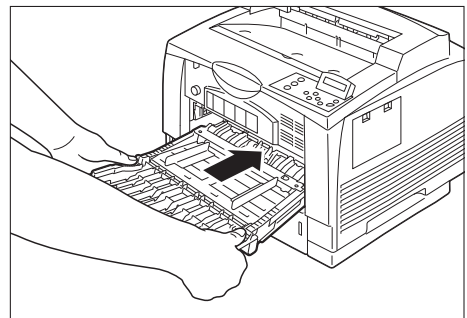
9. Load the paper that was removed from the tray. Neatly align the edges of the paper sheets and insert them print side facing up into the inlet slot until you feel them bump lightly.
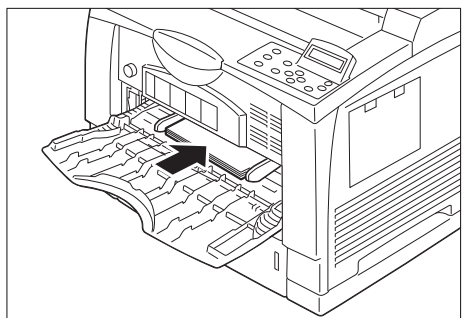
10. Adjust the paper guides to the size of the loaded paper.

Important
- Correctly adjust the paper guides to the width of the loaded paper. If the paper guides are incorrectly positioned, the paper may not be fed properly or paper jams may occur.
- Do not set an amount of paper that exceeds the maximum fill-line, as this may cause paper jams.
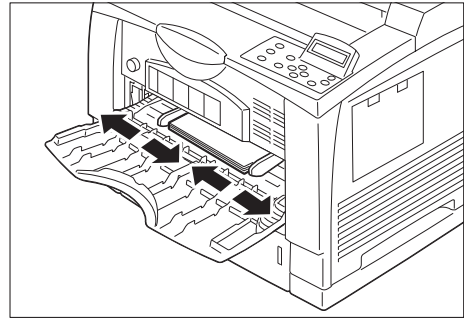
Paper Jam in Trays 1 - 3

The following describes how to clear paper jams occurring in Trays 1-2 or Trays 1-3 when Tray 2 (1 tray module, optional) or Trays 2-3 (2 trays module, optional) is installed.

Important
- Pulling out a tray without confirming the location of the paper jam can tear paper and cause pieces of paper to be left in the machine. This can cause a malfunction. Be sure to check the location of the paper jam on the left side of the control panel before clearing the jam.

The following procedure uses tray 1 as an example.

1. Pull out the paper tray from the printer.

Important
- Be sure to completely pull out the paper tray from the printer.Half pulling out the paper tray and then setting it back may damage the paper it holds.
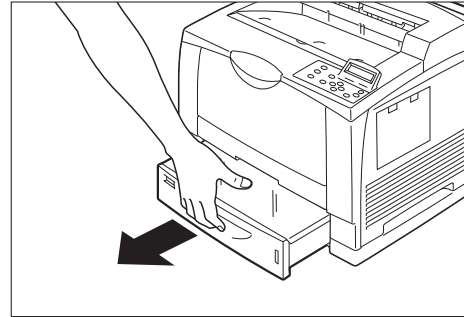
2. If the bypass tray is closed, open the bypass tray.
   If the tray contains paper, remove the paper.
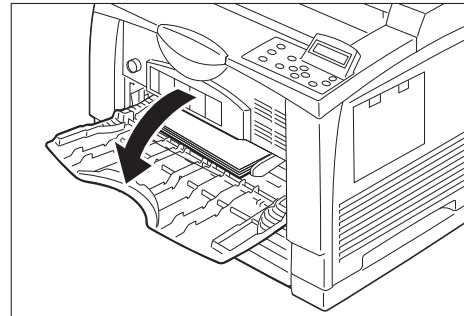
3. Remove the paper loaded in the bypass tray.
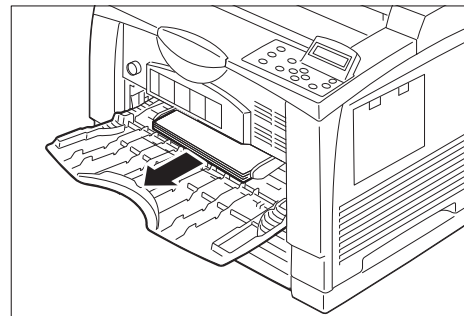
4. Grasping the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, pull out the tray up to the position where it stops.
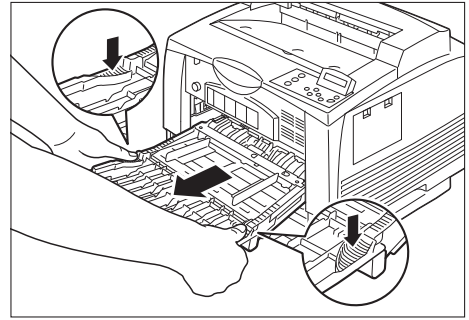
5. Reposition your hands as shown in the illustration and pull up the bypass tray at an angle.
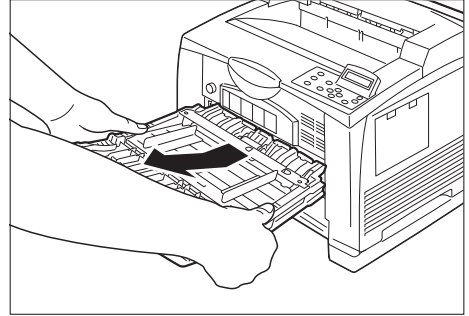
6. Check all the way inside the printer, and if you detect any jammed paper there, remove it.
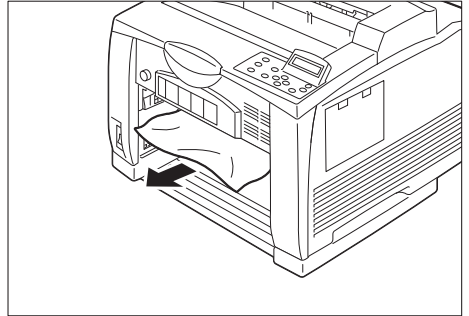
Note
- If optional paper trays are installed, check all the way inside the printer from each tray port.
- If the two optional paper trays are installed, and A5 landscape size (148.5 mm length) paper is jammed at the back of the tray, grasp the left and right edges of the paper with both hands and pull it out of the printer.

7. Remove the cover of the paper tray.
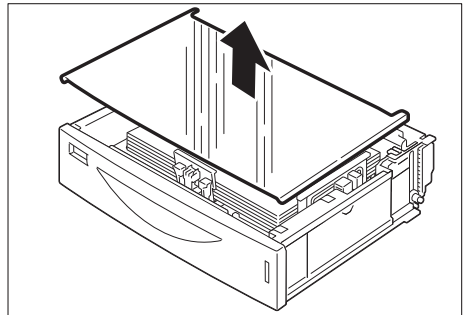
8. Check inside the paper tray, and if it contains any wrinkled paper, remove it.
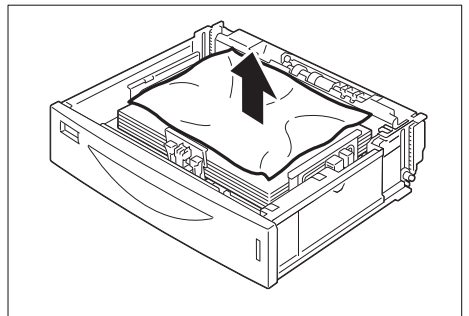
9. Close the cover of the paper tray.
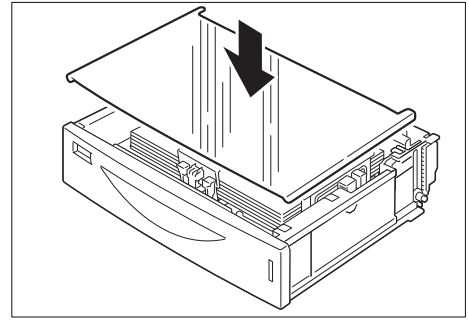
10. Firmly push back the paper tray all the way back into the printer.

Note
• If optional paper trays are installed, set all the paper trays.
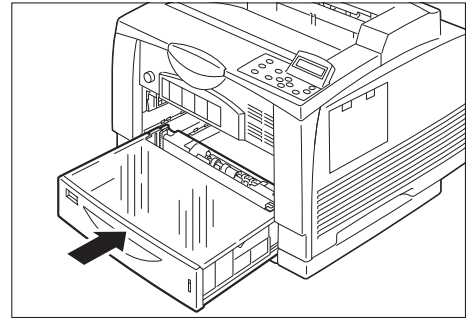
11. Holding the bypass tray, insert it into the printer.
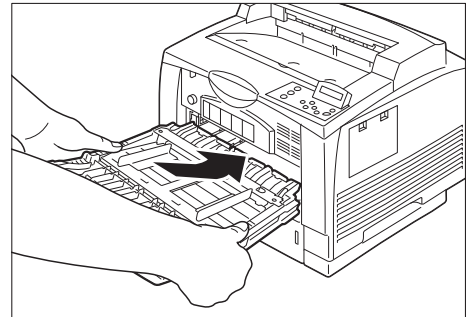
12. Repositioning your hands to grasp the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, firmly push the tray all the way back into the printer.
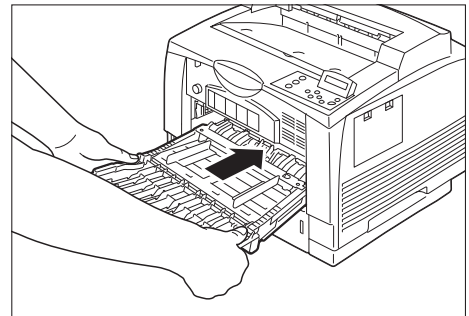
13. If paper was removed from the tray, load the paper back into the tray.
    Adjust the paper guides to the size of the paper.
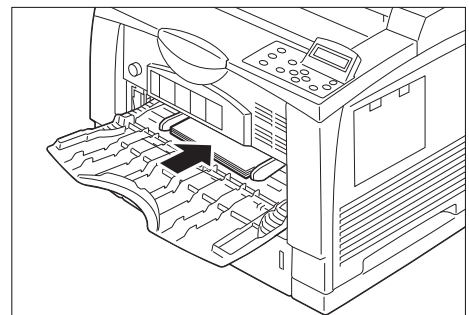
14. Adjust the paper guides to the size of the loaded paper.

Note
- Correctly adjust the paper guides to the width of the loaded paper. If the paper guides are incorrectly positioned, the paper may not be fed properly or paper jams may occur.
- Do not set an amount of paper that exceeds the maximum fill-line, as this may cause paper jams.
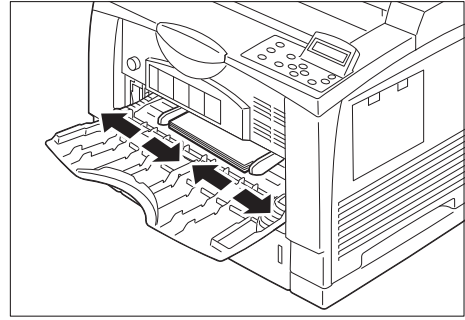
Paper jams in the fuser unit area

Note
- The following procedure is for when the Duplex unit (optional) is not installed.

1. If there is paper in the paper output slot or the center tray, remove it.
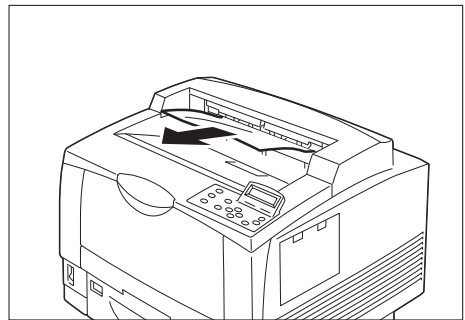
2. Lift the lever at the left end of the printer (1) and open cover B (2).
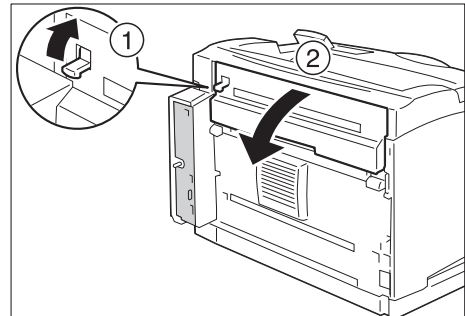
3. Lift the green levers on the left and right of the cover of the fuser unit.

Important
- Be sure to Lift both the left and right levers. Lowering only one of these levers may tear the paper and cause pieces of paper to be left inside the printer.
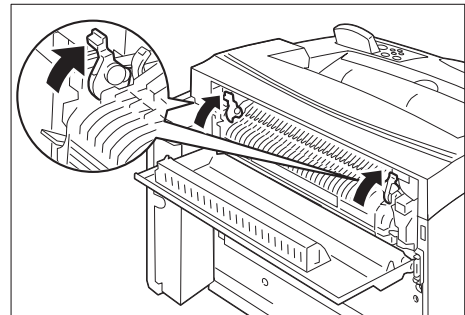
4. Lower the lever with the ★ mark on the fuser unit, pull open the inside cover, and if there is jammed paper, remove it.
If the jammed paper was torn, make sure that there are no pieces left inside the printer.

Important
• Do not touch the fuser unit as it is extremely hot and may cause burns.

Note
• If released, the cover of the fuser unit will return to its original position.

5. Lower the green levers on the left and right sides of the fuser unit.

6. Close cover B.
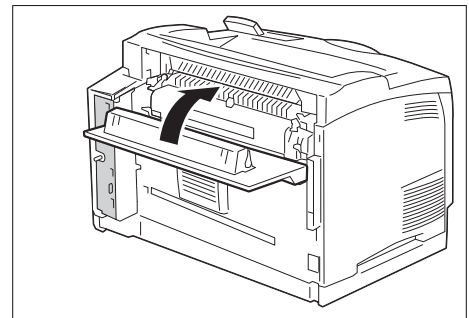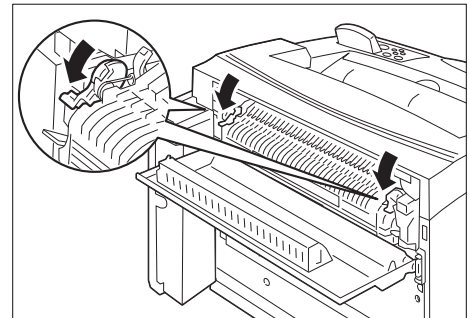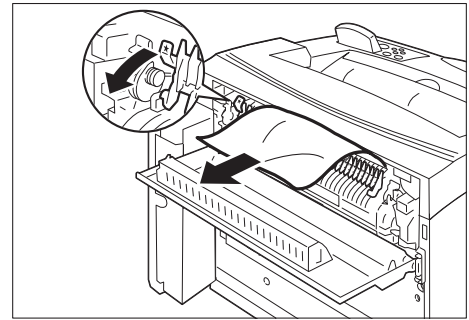
Paper jams in the Print cartridge area

1. If there is paper in the center tray, remove it.
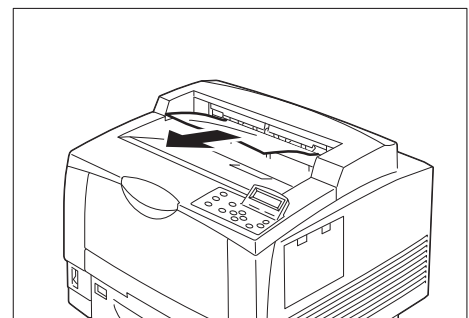
2. Open cover A.

Important
• Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
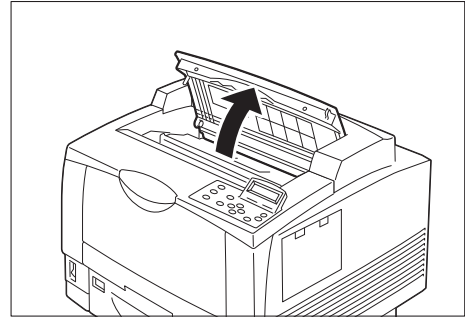
3. Grasping the print cartridge by its handle, slowly lift it off the printer and place it on a flat surface.

Note
• Before placing the removed drummer/toner cartridge on the floor or a table, place a few sheets of paper to catch any toner that may spill.
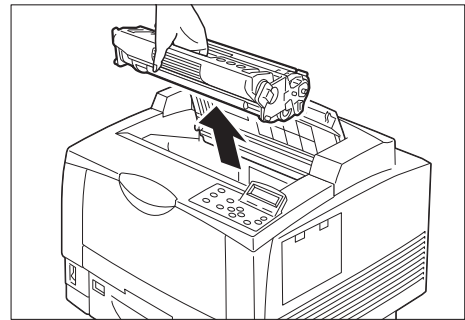
4. Check the rear of the area from which the print cartridge was removed, and if there is jammed paper, remove it. Rotate the rollers shown in the illustration on the right toward you to loosen the jammed paper and make it easy to pull it out.
    If the paper is torn, check that no pieces are left in the printer.

Important
• The inside of the printer is very hot. Do not touch those parts indicated in red on the label attached to the rear side of cover A.
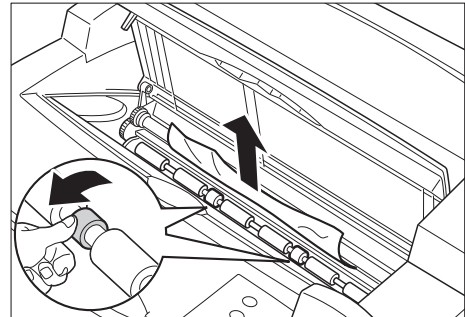
5. Holding the print cartridge by its handle, insert the cartridge in the housing inside the printer.

Important
• Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
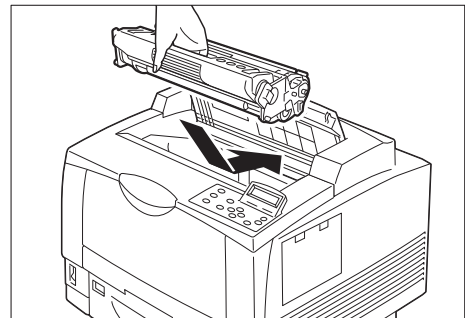
6. Close cover A.
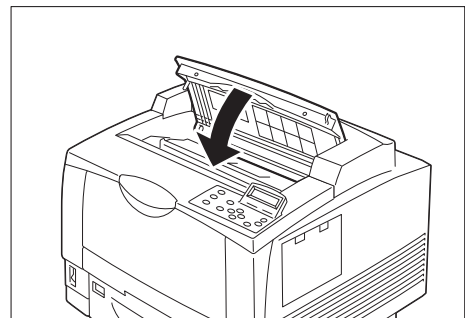
Paper jams in the Duplex unit

1. Check the paper outlet slot and remove any jammed paper. If the jammed paper was torn, make sure that there are no pieces left inside the printer.
   If the jammed paper is difficult to remove or if the jammed paper display does not disappear, proceed to step 2.
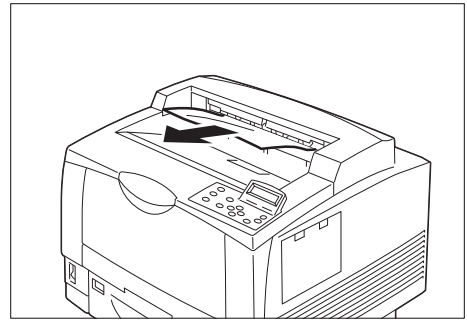
2. Release the lever at the top left of the Duplex unit (1) and open cover C (2).
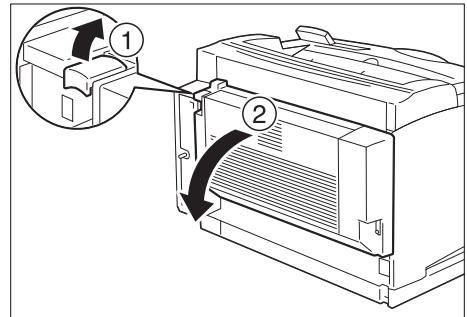
3. Check behind cover C, and if there is jammed paper, remove it.
   If the jammed paper was torn, make sure that there are no pieces left inside the printer.
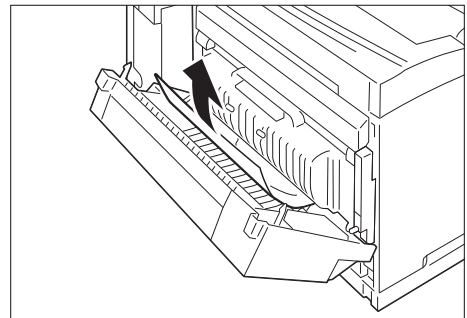
4. Close cover C of the Duplex unit.

   Important
   • When closing cover C, do so by pushing the center part of the cover.
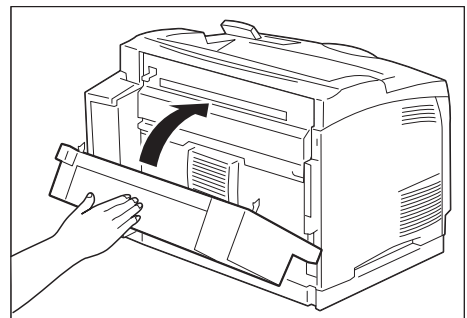
6.2 Hardware Problems (Power Failure, Abnormal Noise, etc.)

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
The printer is not on.	Is the power switch or power switch off? Switch the main power on. Then, switch the power on by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
	Is the power cord firmly plugged into the power outlet? Switch the power and the main power off, and then disconnect and reconnect the power cord from the power outlet and the printer. Next, switch the main power and the power on.
	Is the printer plugged into a power outlet that supplies the proper voltage? Connect the printer to a power outlet that supplies the proper rated voltage or current. Do not share the power outlet with other devices.
The display is blank.	The printer may be in Energy Saver mode. Press the <Energy Saver> button on the control panel to exit Energy Saver mode. If this does not remedy the problem, check if the power cord is firmly plugged into the power outlet, and reboot the printer. If the problem still persists, there may be a problem with the printer. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
The printer makes odd noise.	Is the printer installed on a level surface? Install the printer on a level and sturdy surface.
	Are the paper trays pushed in completely? Push the trays firmly into the printer.
	Is there a foreign object inside the printer? Switch the main power and the power off, and then remove the object. If the object cannot be removed without dismantling the printer, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
Condensation has formed in the printer.	On the control panel, set the Sleep mode trigger time to more than 60 minutes, and let the printer stand with its power on. After about an hour, the heat inside the printer causes the condensation to evaporate. **Refer to** • Sleep mode:"[System Settings]" (P. 155)
The printer does not switch to Sleep mode.	The printer does not enter Low Power mode or Sleep mode in the following cases to inform users on what is happening to the printer and provide its performance. • When the user is operating the control panel • When a message calling for the replacement of any of the consumables, such as the print cartridge, is displayed • When a message calling for the replacement of a regular replacement part, is displayed • When the printer requires user operation for paper jams or open covers • When an error occurs due to print failure
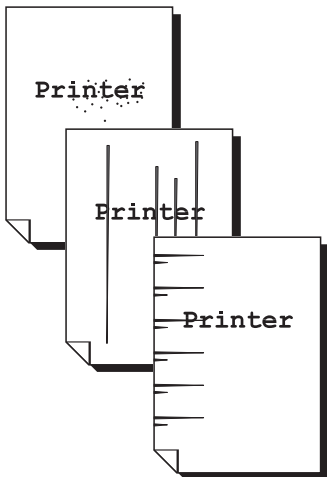
6.3 Printing Problems
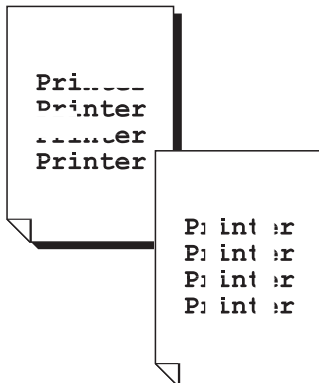
Symptom	Cause/Remedy
The <Error> lamp is blinking.	An error occurred that cannot be resolved by the user. Make a note of the error message or error code displayed on the control panel, switch the power off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer. **Note** • "Error Messages (in Alphabetical Order)" (P. 209) • "Error Codes" (P. 215)
The <Error> lamp is lit.	Is an error message displayed on the control panel? Follow the instructions in the message and clear the error. **Note** • "Error Messages (in Alphabetical Order)" (P. 209) • "Error Codes" (P. 215)
A print instruction was issued, but the <Ready> lamp does not light or blink.	Is the interface cable firmly plugged in? Switch the power off, and check if the interface cable is firmly plugged in.
	Is the printer in the offline or menu state? If the printer is offline, press the <Online> button to put it online. If the menu screen is displayed, press the <Print Menu> button to exit the menu screen.
	Are protocols set correctly? Confirm that the port being used is enabled. Also, use CentreWare Internet Services to confirm that the protocol settings are configured correctly. **Refer to** • "[Network / Port]" (P. 132) • Online help for CentreWare Internet Services
	Is the operating environment of your computer configured correctly? Check the operating environment of your computer including the print driver.
The <Ready> lamp is lit or blinking, but the printer does not print.	There is data remaining in the print buffer. Cancel or force-eject the job. After pressing the <Online> button to take the printer offline, press the <Delete Job> button to cancel the print job or the <OK> button to force-eject the job. After cancellation or force-ejection is complete, press the <Online> button again to put the printer online. **Note** • When using the parallel/USB port, pressing the <Online> button can cause reception of job data to stop part way through. When this happens, pressing the <OK> button causes the remaining print data to be recognized as a new job. This job is printed separately after you put the printer back online. As a result, the printout may not be normal.
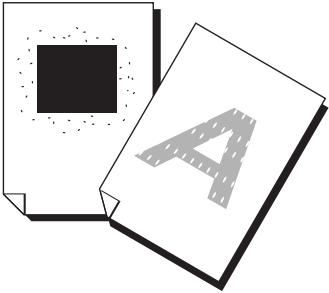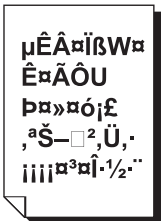
Symptom	Cause/Remedy
The printer does not print.	If your computer is connected to the printer via a parallel cable, does your computer support bi-directional communication? The printer's bi-directional communication is enabled by default. If bi-directional communication is not supported by your computer, the printer will not print your job. If this is the case, disable the bi-directional communication on the control panel and try printing again. **Refer to** • "[Parallel]" (P. 132)
	If the printer is connected to a network, is the IP address of the printer set correctly? Or, is the data-reception control setting set correctly? Check the above settings and re-configure them if necessary. **Refer to** • "Setting an IP Address (IPv4)" (P. 33) • "Setting an IP Address (IPv6)" (P. 36) • "Controlling Data Reception by IP Address" (P. 278)
	The size of the print data of a single print job may exceed the buffer capacity. This may occur when memory spooling is selected for the buffer setting. If a single print file exceeds the memory capacity, divide the print file into jobs that are smaller than the memory capacity. If there are multiple data files to print, decrease the number of files to be printed at one time.
Printing is slow.	The buffer capacity may be too low. If you are printing a high-resolution document, use [Allocate Memory] on the control panel to reduce the memory capacity of unused items, which increases the capacity of the print page buffer. Increasing the buffer capacity can speed up printing. Adjust buffer capacity in accordance with the size of the print data. Also, it is recommended to disable ports that are not being used and allocate memory for other purposes. **Refer to** • "[Allocate Memory]" (P. 184)
	Is [High Resolution] selected for the [Image Quality] setting on the [Color Options] tab of your print driver? Changing the [Image Quality] setting to [Standard] may improve print speed. **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.
	Printing may be slow depending on the printing method for TrueType® fonts. Change the printing method under [Specify Font] on the [Advanced] tab of your print driver. **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.
[Printing...] is displayed even though there is no print job when the parallel/USB interface is being used.	Did you turn on your computer after switching on the printer? Press the <Cancel Job> button to cancel printing. **Note** • Check to make sure that your computer is turned on before switching on the printer.
Image loss occurs in the upper portion of the page. Printing does not start from the desired position on the page.	Are the paper guides adjusted properly? Adjust the paper guides properly. **Refer to** • "4.2 Loading Paper" (P. 107)
	Check whether the margins are set correctly on your print driver. **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Only one side is printed although "2 Sided Printing" is displayed	The Duplex unit (option) may not have been installed correctly. **Refer to** • "Installing the Duplex Unit" (P.349)

6.4　Print and Image Quality Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Output is too light. (Faded or unclear)	The paper is damp. Load fresh paper.
	The paper is not appropriate for the printer. Load appropriate media. **Refer to** • "Supported Paper" (P. 102)
	The print cartridge is reaching the end of its life. Remove the print cartridge and shake it up and down 2 or 3 times. **Refer to** • " Output is too light" (P. 240)
	A print cartridge or the fuser unit is damaged or has deteriorated. Depending on its condition, the print cartridge or fuser unit may need replacement. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
	Is the toner save feature enabled? Select [Off] for [Toner Saver] in the [Image Options] tab on your print driver. **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.
	On the [Image Options] tab of your print driver, change the print density settings under [Image Settings] or [Color Balance] and then try printing again. **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.
	Change the [Paper Type] setting and try printing again. For example, if [Paper Type] is set to [Plain], try changing it to [Recycled]. If it is set to [Heavyweight], try changing it to [Extra Heavyweight]].
Color spots or color lines appear on output. Equally spaced smears appear on output.	The paper path may not be clean. Print a couple of sheets or so to remove dirt from the paper path.
	A print cartridge or the fuser unit is damaged or has deteriorated. Depending on its condition, the print cartridge or the fuser unit may need replacement. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
	The printer's interior(LED Printheads) may not be clean. Clean the interior of the printer. **Refer to** • Cleaning the Interior (LED Printheads)

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Printing can be rubbed off with a finger. Toner is not fused to the paper. Output is smudged with toner.	The paper type of the selected paper tray is not appropriate. Change the [Paper Type] setting and try printing again. For example, if [Paper Type] is set to [Plain], try changing it to [Recycled]. If it is set to [Heavyweight], try changing it to [Extra HW].
	The paper is damp. Load fresh paper.
	The paper is not appropriate for the printer. Load appropriate media. **Refer to** • "Supported Paper" (P. 102)
	The fuser unit is damaged or has deteriorated. Depending on its condition, the fuser unit may need replacement. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
The whole page is printed black.	A print cartridge is damaged or has deteriorated. Depending on its condition, the print cartridge may need replacement. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
	There may be something wrong with the high-voltage power supply. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
Output is blank.	Multiple sheets were fed at once. Fan the paper and reload it in the tray.
	A print cartridge is damaged or has deteriorated. Depending on its condition, the print cartridge may need replacement. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
	There may be something wrong with the high-voltage power supply. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
Output is partially blanked-out. Vertical white streaks appear on output.	The paper is not appropriate for the printer. Load appropriate media. **Refer to** • "Supported Paper" (P. 102)
	The paper is damp. Load fresh paper.
	A print cartridge is not installed correctly. Correctly install the print cartridge.
	The interior (LED Printheads) of the printer may not be clean. Clean the interior of the printer.
	Condensation may have formed in the printer. On the control panel, set the Sleep mode trigger time to more than 60 minutes, and let the printer stand with its power on. After about an hour, the heat inside the printer causes the condensation to evaporate. **Refer to** • Sleep mode: " [Sleep Mode Timer]" (P. 157)
	A print cartridge or the fuser unit is damaged or has deteriorated. Depending on its condition, the print cartridge or fuser unit may need replacement. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
White patches appear on output. Toner is scattered around images. Images are bluish.	Change the paper type setting and try printing again. For example, if Plain was set, change the setting to Recycled, or if Heavyweight was set, change the setting to Extra Heavyweight, and try printing again.
Text is smeared.	The paper is not appropriate for the printer. Load appropriate media. **Refer to** • "Supported Paper" (P. 102)
	The paper is damp. Load fresh paper.
	Condensation may have formed in the printer. On the control panel, set the Sleep mode trigger time to more than 60 minutes and let the printer stand with its power on. After about an hour, the heat inside the printer causes the condensation to evaporate. **Refer to** • Sleep mode: "[Printer Settings]" (P. 174)
Text is garbled. Printed output is not the same as the original data displayed on the computer screen.	Is the printer set to substitute TrueType fonts with the built-in fonts? Change the printing method of TrueType fonts to set [Always Use TrueType Fonts] under [Specify Font] on the [Advanced] tab of your print driver. **Refer to** Online help for the print driver.
Images are skewed.	The paper guides are not adjusted properly. Adjust the paper guides properly. **Refer to** • "4.2 Loading Paper" (P. 107)
	The paper rollers are degraded or damaged. Depending on their condition, they may need to be replaced. Notify our Printer Support Center or your dealer. The feed rollers may be soiled. Clean them. **Refer to** • "Cleaning the Feed Rollers" (P.310)

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Print quality on transparencies or envelopes is poor.	Unsupported transparencies or envelopes are loaded in the printer. Load appropriate media. **Refer to** • "Supported Paper" (P. 102)
	Check if the paper type setting on the print driver or control panel is set correctly. **Refer to** • "[Paper Type]" (P. 175) • Online help for the print driver.
	The toner save feature is enabled or the resolution is set low on your print driver. Change these settings on the [Image Options] tab or [Advanced] tab on your print driver. **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.

6.5　Paper Feed Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Paper does not feed properly. Paper jams occur. Multiple sheets feed at once. Paper feeds skewed. Output is wrinkled.	Is the paper loaded correctly? Reload the paper correctly. Before loading labels, transparencies, or envelopes, fan them to make sure that they are separated.
	Is the paper damp? Load fresh paper.
	Is the paper appropriate for the printer? Load appropriate paper. Paper may still wrinkle depending on its type or condition. **Refer to** • "Supported Paper" (P. 102)
	Feeding illustrated postcards or paper with a lot of paper dust may cause image transfer prevention powder or dust to adhere to the paper feed rolls and make paper feed impossible. Clean the paper feed rolls. **Refer to** • "Cleaning the Feed Rollers" (P. 310)
	Are the paper trays pushed in completely? Push the trays firmly into the printer.
	Is the printer installed on a level surface? Install the printer on a level and sturdy surface.
	Are the paper guides adjusted properly? Adjust the paper guides properly. **Refer to** • "4.2 Loading Paper" (P. 107)
	Was paper added on top of paper in a paper tray? Adding paper to a paper tray that still contains paper can cause these types of problems. Fan the paper loaded in the tray and reload it into the tray. Add paper to the tray only when the tray is out of paper.
The printer does not correctly select a paper tray from the trays 1 to 3	Are the paper guides adjusted properly? If the paper guides are not positioned correctly, the printer may not correctly detect the size of the paper loaded. Adjust the paper guides properly.
	Check whether the paper size and paper type settings on the print driver and control panel are configured correctly. **Refer to** • "[Printer Settings]" (P. 174) • Online help for the print driver.
The printer does not feed paper from the bypass tray.	Is [Automatically Select] selected for the [Select By Tray] setting on the [Paper/Output] tab of the print driver? Auto Tray Selection is not set for Tray 5 (bypass tray). **Refer to** • Online help for the print driver.

6.6 Error Messages and Error Codes

Error Messages (in Alphabetical Order)

The following table lists the error messages that appear on the control panel.

Note
• If the message text cannot fit on a single screen, use the <▼> and <▲> buttons to change screens.

Message	Symptom/Cause/Remedy
Automatically select available paper type Press OK to print Or, use Cancel Job	The type of paper specified in the print driver is not loaded in the paper tray. Press the <OK> button on the control panel to print on a different type of paper, or press the <Cancel Job> button to cancel printing.
🛈Check the bypass tray guides • Check if the paper guides or the size of the loaded paper are correct. (Return with the 🛈 button.)	The bypass tray guides have been set incorrectly or the incorrect paper has been loaded into the tray. Referring to the message, set the bypass tray guides correctly or load the correct paper.
🛈Check the bypass tray <size + orientation> <paper quality> • Check the dial of the bypass tray for paper size/orientation, and make the appropriate setting. (Return with the 🛈 button.)	The correct paper is not loaded into the bypass tray. Load the correct paper into the bypass tray according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality. **Note** • Press the 🛈 button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray" (P. 107)
🛈Check the bypass tray <size + orientation> <paper quality> • Return to the previous screen, check if the paper displayed on the screen has been loaded into the bypass tray, and if so, press [OK]. (Return with the 🛈 button.)	The paper is not loaded correctly into the bypass tray. Load the correct paper into the bypass tray according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality. **Note** • Press the 🛈 button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray" (P. 107)
Check the bypass tray paper size.	The paper size of the bypass tray is incorrect. Check the paper size and load the correct paper.
🛈Check the guides of tray N • Check if the paper guides or the size of the loaded paper are correct.(Return with the 🛈 button.) (N: any of 1 to 3)	Check paper tray N. Check if the positions of the paper guides and the paper size are correct.
🛈Check the paper in the bypass tray. • Paper of a type different than that set has been loaded. (Return with the 🛈 button.)	A different type of paper has been loaded into the bypass tray. After checking that the correct paper type has been set, load the paper.

Message	Symptom/Cause/Remedy
i Check the paper in tray N <size + orientation> • Check if paper of a different size or orientation to the paper guides has been loaded. (Return with the **i** button.) (N: any of 1 to 3)	The correct paper is not loaded into paper tray N. Load the correct paper into the paper tray N according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality. If this message is displayed although the correct paper has been set, it is possible that the paper size is not correctly recognized. Check the positions of the paper guides. **Note** • Press the **i** button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Loading paper into Trays 1 through 3" (P. 110)
i Check the paper type of tray N. • Paper of a different type than that loaded. Load the correct paper. (**i** key to Return) (N: any of 1 to 3)	Paper of a different type has been loaded into tray N. After checking that the correct paper type has been loaded, fully close tray N.
i Check the positions of the paper guides and paper of tray N • Check if the paper and paper guides positions are correct. (**i** key to Return) (N: any of 1 to 3)	Paper tray N is open. After checking that paper has been correctly loaded, fully close tray N. **Note** • Press the **i** button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Close cover A of the center tray.	The cover of the center tray is open. Fully close cover A.
Close Cover X (X: A, B or C)	Cover X is open. Securely close the displayed cover.
Close the bypass tray.	The bypass tray is open. Fully close the bypass tray.
i Incorrect print cartridge type	Set the correct print cartridge for this printer. **Note** • Press the **i** button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Types of Consumables" (P. 236)
i Load paper into the bypass tray according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality.	The paper is not loaded correctly into the bypass tray. Load the correct paper into the bypass tray according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality.
Paper jam Pull out all the trays, including the bypass tray, remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, and open/close cover A.	A paper jam occurred in paper trays 1 to 3 or the bypass tray. Referring to the message, remove the jammed paper.
Paper jam Open cover A, remove the cartridge, and remove the jammed paper.	A paper jam occurred at the rear of the print cartridge. Referring to the message, remove the jammed paper.
Paper jam Open covers C and B in this order and remove the jammed paper. If the jammed paper cannot be removed, open cover A, remove the cartridge, and remove the jammed paper.	A paper jam occurred in the paper output slot or fuser unit area. Referring to the message, remove the jammed paper.[1]

*1: The number of pages that can be printed is greatly affected by printing conditions and document content. For details, refer to "A.3 Life of Consumables and Regular Replacement Parts" (P. 327).

Message	Symptom/Cause/Remedy
Paper jam Open cover C and remove the jammed paper.	A paper jam occurred in the Duplex module. Referring to the message, remove the jammed paper.[*1]
Paper jam Open cover C and remove the jammed paper. If the jammed paper cannot be removed, pull out all the trays and remove the jammed paper from inside the printer.	A paper jam occurred in the Duplex module. Referring to the message, remove the jammed paper.[*1]
Paper jam Pull out tray N, remove the jammed paper, and check the positions of the paper guides. (N: any of 1 to 3).	A paper jam occurred in tray N. Referring to the message, remove the jammed paper and check the positions of the paper guides.
Paper size of tray Check the position of the paper guides	The paper size of the tray cannot be detected. Set the positions of the paper guides again.
Ready 🛈 Replace Bypass Feed Roller	The Bypass Feed Roller needs to be replaced soon. Press the button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Replacement Procedure (Bypass Feed Roller Unit)" (P. 246)
Ready 🛈 Replace Fuser Assembly soon	After Replacing the Fuser Unit, reset the counter from the control panel. **Refer to** • "Replacement Procedure (Fuser Unit 110V)" (P. 242) **Note** • Press the 🛈 button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Ready 🛈 Replace Transfer Roll	The Transfer Roll needs to be replaced. Press the button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** "Replacement Procedure (Transfer Roll)" (P. 257) **Note** • Press the 🛈 button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Ready 🛈 Replace Tray Feed Roll	The Tray Feed Roller needs to be replaced. Press the button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** "Replacement Procedure (Tray Feed Roller Unit)" (P. 252) **Note** • Press the 🛈 button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Ready to print ***-***	A fault occurred in the printer. Switch off the power, and after the control panel's display has gone dark, switch the power back on. If an error code is displayed again, check the error code(***-***) shown on the display and take the appropriate action. **Refer to** • "Error Codes" (P. 215)

*1: The number of pages that can be printed is greatly affected by printing conditions and document content. For details, refer to "A.3 Life of Consumables and Regular Replacement Parts" (P. 327).

Message	Symptom/Cause/Remedy
Ready to print ∎Replace Cartridge	The print cartridge needs to be replaced soon. Have a new print cartridge ready. There is enough capacity to print approximately 100[*2] pages. **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Ready to print ∎Check USB port	The maximum number of USB devices that can be simultaneously connected has been exceeded. Disconnect the USB devices that are not currently being used. **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Ready to print ∎Feed roller replacement time • Replace the paper feed roller (bypass). (∎ key to Return)	Replace the paper feed roller (bypass). **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel.
Ready to print IPvx duplicate addresses (vx: v4 or v6)	There are duplicate IP addresses. Change the IP address. **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Controlling Data Reception by IP Address" (P. 278)
Ready to print ∎Replace cartridge	Toner has run out. Open cover A and replace the print cartridge inside. **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Replacing Print cartridges" (P.238)
Ready to print ∎ Replace Fuser unit • The Fuser unit needs to be replaced.	The Fuser unit needs to be replaced.
∎Refill the bypass tray with paper <size + orientation> <paper quality>	The bypass tray is out of paper. Load paper into the bypass tray according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality. **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • " Loading paper into Trays 1 through 3" (P. 110)
∎Refill tray N with paper <size + orientation> <paper quality • If printing is not possible even though paper has been loaded, check if the paper and the positions of the paper guides are correctt. (∎ key to Return) (N: any of 1 to 3)	Paper tray N is out of paper. Load paper into paper tray N according to the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality. If this message is displayed although the correct paper has been loaded, it is possible that the paper size is not correctly recognized. Check the positions of the paper guides. **Note** • Press the ∎ button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • " Loading paper into Trays 1 through 3" (P. 110)
Remove the paper from the center tray.	The center tray has become full of output paper.Remove the paper from the center tray.

*2: The actual number of printable pages can vary greatly based on the printing conditions, document contents, frequency of power-ups, etc.

Message	Symptom/Cause/Remedy
ⓘReplace the print cartridge.	The print cartridge is out of toner or there is something wrong with the print cartridge. Replace the print cartridge with a new one. **Note** • Press the ⓘ button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Replacing Print cartridges" (P. 238)
ⓘReplace the paper in tray N with paper of the correct paper quality. • Press [OK] button to start printing • Press [Cancel Job] to cancel.	The type of paper specified on the control panel or in the printer driver differs from the type of paper loaded into the tray. Use paper of the specified paper quality.
ⓘSet for Tray N (priority)<size + orientation> <paper quality> • If printing is not possible even though paper has been loaded, check if the paper and the positions of the paper guides are correct. (ⓘ key to Return) (N: any of 1 to 3)	The tray for the paper specified for printing (size or paper quality) is out of paper. Load paper into the tray in question. This message is displayed even if the tray for the paper specified for printing (size or paper quality) does not exist on this printer. In this case, change the paper in one of the trays of the printer to the paper of the displayed size, orientation, and paper quality. If this message is displayed although the correct paper has been loaded, it is possible that the paper size is not correctly recognized. Check the positions of the paper guides. **Note** • Press the ⓘ button to display detailed information on the control panel. **Refer to** • "Loading paper into Trays 1 through 3" (P. 110)
Set paper into the bypass tray	Set paper into the bypass tray.
Set paper into the bypass tray ⓘ Set paper into the bypass tray • If printing is not possible even though paper has been loaded, check if the paper and the positions of the paper guides are correct. (ⓘ key to Return)	Set paper into the bypass tray. If you cannot print even when paper is loaded, check whether the paper and paper guides are in the correct positions. **Note** • Press the ⓘ button to display detailed information on the control panel.
ⓘSet paper into tray N. • If printing is not possible even though paper has been loaded, check if the paper and the positions of the paper guides are correct. (ⓘ key to Return) (N: any of 1 to 3)	Paper is not correctly loaded into tray N. Referring to the message, check the paper and the positions of the paper guides, and correct load the paper tray with paper.
Specified paper type is not available, so will print with paper of tray N. • Press [OK] button to start printing • Press [Cancel Job] to cancel.	The paper type specified in the printer driver is not loaded in the paper tray. Press the <OK> button on the control panel to print using a different type of paper, or press the <Cancel Job> button to cancel the print job.
Switch the power OFF/ON ***-***	A fault has occurred in the printer. Switch off the power, and after the control panel's display has gone dark, switch the power back on. If an error code is displayed again, check the error code (***-***) shown on the display, and contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer. **Refer to** • " Error Codes" (P. 215)

Message	Symptom/Cause/Remedy
🛈Load collectly tray N. • Tray N had not been correctly loaded.Check the paper and the paper guides positions, and correctly load the tray. (🛈 key to Return) (N: any of 1 to 3)	Tray N had not been correctly loaded. Referring to the message. check the paper and the paper guides positions, and correctly load the tray.

Error Codes

Error codes are six-digit numbers that appear on the control panel when errors occur. Such errors include abnormal print jobs and printer malfunctions.

Error codes provide important information that identifies the causes of errors. Please have the applicable error codes on hand when calling our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

The following table lists the error codes that can be resolved by users. When an error code is displayed, see if it is listed in the following table.

The following error codes are listed in ascending order.

Note
• XPS stands for XML Paper Specification.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-210	This feature cannot be used because the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is not installed. Install the HDD Extension Kit (optional) to use this feature. The feature enhance Kit feature could not be enabled.
016-211	This feature cannot be used because the Extension System Memory (optional) is not installed. Install the Extension System Memory to use this feature.
016-212 016-215 016-217 016-219	An error occurred in the software. Switch the printer's power off, swich it back on after the control panel display has gone dark, and then try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-400	The 802.1x user name and password are wrong. Check the user name and password and enter them correctly. If this does not solve the problem, check for problems with your network environment.
016-401	802.1x authentication protocol cannot be processed. Reconfigure the printer's authentication protocol so it matches that of the authentication protocol of the authentication server.
016-402	The authentication connection timed out. Check the switch setting of the authentication device connecting the printer and physical network, and/or the network connection.
016-403	The root certificate does not match. Check the authentication server and store the root certificate of the authentication server's certificate on the printer. If you are unable to obtain the root certificate of the server certificate, Set [Verify SrvrCert] under [IEEE 802.1x] to [Disabled].
016-404	An internal error occurred. Re-try the same operation. If this does not correct the situation, it could indicate a mechanical problem. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-405	A fault has been detected in the certificate database file when activating the system. Initialize the certificate. **Refer to** • " [Init/Delete Data]" (P. 186)
016-406	[EAP-TLS] is selected for the 802.1x authentication method, but the SSL client certificate is either deleted or not configured.Resolve this by one of the following: • Store an SSL client certificate in the printer and configure it as the SSL client certificate. • If the SSL client certificate cannot be configured, select an authentication method other than [EAP-TLS]. **Refer to** • CentreWare Internet Services online help

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-500 016-502	An internal error occurred. Try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, the printer may be at fault. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-503	The SMTP server name could not be resolved when sending e-mail. Check the [Properties] of CentreWare Internet Services to see if the SMTP server settings are configured correctly. Also check the DNS server settings. **Refer to** • CentreWare Internet Services online help
016-504	The POP3 server name could not be resolved when sending e-mail. Check the [Properties] of CentreWare Internet Services to see if the POP server settings are configured correctly. Also check the DNS server settings. **Refer to** • CentreWare Internet Services online help
016-505	Log in to the POP3 server failed when sending e-mail. Check the [Properties] of CentreWare Internet Services to see if the user name and password used by POP3 are correct. **Refer to** • CentreWare Internet Services online help
016-506	Image log writing failed because the printer's image log storage area is too small. Re-execute the job. If the same error occurs, perform either of the following steps. • Delete unneeded image logs. • On the control panel change the [Assurance Level] setting to [Low]. In this case, the contents of created image logs are not guaranteed.
016-507	Image log transfer to the server failed while using image log control. Check the status of the server and network.
016-508	Image log transfer to the server failed while using image log control. Configure rules for transferring image logs from the server to the printer.
016-509	Image log transfer to the server failed while using image log control because rules for transferring image logs from the server to the printer are not configured. Configure rules for transferring image logs from the server to the printer or change the [Log Transfer] setting of the [Image Log Transfer] control panel item to [Disabled].
016-510 016-511 016-512	Image log transfer to the server failed while using image log control because no rules for transferring image logs from the server to the printer are configured. Configure rules for transferring image logs from the server to the printer.
016-513	An error occurred with the SMTP server connection. The SMTP server or network is overloaded. Wait for a while and then try again.
016-514	An error occurred during processing of an XPS document. Print from XPS viewer using some other print driver other than this printer's driver.
016-515	There was insufficient memory for processing of an XPS document. If the [Print Mode] setting is [High Quality], change it to [Normal] and try printing again. If this does not solve the problem, change the setting to [High Speed] and try again. If the problem persists, install optional Extension System Memory.
016-516	An error occurred during processing of a Print Ticket. Check the application sending the print job for operational problems and problems with the print job content. If there are no such problems, contact the manufacturer of the application about its operation. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer. **Note** • A Print Ticket is information related to print settings included with an XPS file.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-517	An error occurred during booklet printing with PostScript. Rewrite the PostScript file taking care not to switch ProcessColorModel, HWResolution, and DeviceRenderingInfo page devices part way through.
016-518	An error occurred during booklet printing with PostScript. PostScript booklet printing cannot be performed at the same time WaterMark/UUID is specified. Perform the operations separately.
016-519	The maximum allowable number of printable pages has been reached. To print more, contact your administrator.
016-522	An SSL authentication error occurred with the LDAP server. An SSL client certificate cannot be retrieved. An SSL client certificate is being requested from the LDAP server, so configure it on the printer.
016-527	An SSL authentication error occurred with the LDAP server. This is an SSL authentication internal error. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-529	An error occurred during communication with the Remote Download server. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • Whether the Remote Download server is correctly configured on the network.
016-535	The firmware update file (download image file) specified on the Remote Download server does not exist. Make sure that the firmware update file exists on the Remote Download server.
016-536	The Remote Download server name could not be resolved when connecting to the server. Check the following: • Whether the printer is properly connected to DNS. • Whether the Remote Download server name is registered on DNS.
016-537	The port on the Remote Download server to be connected is not open. Check if the port on the Remote Download server is open.
016-538	The firware update file retrieved from the Remote Download server was not successfully written to the HDD Extension Kit (optional). Check the free space available on the HDD Extension Kit (optional), and either delete unnecessary files or replace the HDD Extension Kit (optional).
016-543	The information or domain for the specified server to be authenticated has been deleted from ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. Add a domain to ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent.
016-545	The authentication on ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent failed. Match the time of the computer where ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent is installed with that of the computer where ActiveDirectory is installed. Also enable the Windows Time service on the computer where ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent is installed, if it is not enabled. For instructions, refer to the manuals for ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent.
016-546	The authentication on ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent failed. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-548	The printer is not registered on ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. Register the printer on ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. For instructions, refer to the manuals for ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent.
016-553	ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent is not supported by the printer. Update ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent to the version that is supported by the printer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-554	The login name or password for querying the domain user for ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent is not correct. Use the correct login name and password.
016-555	The connection with ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent cannot be established (ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent cannot connect to the database or Active Directory). Make sure that ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent can be connected to the database or Active Directory. For instructions, refer to the manuals for ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent.
016-556	An error occurred communicating with ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent (a timeout has occurred while processing the database). Wait for a while and try the authentication again. If this does not resolve the problem, check ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. For instructions, refer to the manuals for ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent.
016-557	An error occurred authenticating ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. Check ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. For instructions, refer to the manuals for ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent.
016-558	An error occurred authenticating ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-559	The settings for Remote Download are not correct. Check the settings for Remote Download.
016-560	An error occurred communicating with ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • The settings for the Authentication Agent feature on the printer. • Whether DNS is enabled when the DNS address is set for the server name/address of ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent (This can be checked by printing out the Configuration Report). After the configuration, register the printer on ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent again.
016-564	An authentication error occurred with the Remothe Download server. Use the correct user name and password.
016-569	An error such as data failure or no server response occurred while communicating with ApeosWare Authentication Management or ApeosWare Authentication Agent. Check the state of the server or network, and restart the server or device.
016-570	Could not print because the job ticket memory is insuffucient. Increase the capacity of [Job Ticket Memory] on the control panel, swich the printer's power off and then on, and then try printing again. **Refer to** • " [Allocate Memory]" (P. 184)
016-571	Could not print because the contents of the job ticket are not correct. Make sure that there is no problem with the print settings, correct the settings if necessary, and then try printing again.
016-572	Could not print because the paper attribute on the job ticket specifies paper (size, type, and color) that is not supported by the printer. Check if the paper specified for printing is paper that can be used with the printer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-573	Could not print because the contents of the job ticket are not correct. Make sure that the print driver on the computer to which the print job is sent is properly installed, meets the operating conditions, or is the print driver for this printer.
016-598	The size of one-page worth of e-mail data after splitting exceeds the maximum message size allowed. Increase the value of under [Properties] > [Network Settings] > [Protocol Settings] > [SMTP] on CentreWare Internet Services. **Refer to** • CentreWare Internet Services online help
016-700	The process was terminated because the Secure Print password set with the print driver has fewer characters than the minimum number of password characters specified for the printer. Set the print driver password so it has more characters that the minimum number of password characters specified for the printer.
016-701	The print data of ART EX could not be processed due to insufficient memory. Try printing again by lowering the resolution and not using two-sided printing or N up.
016-702	PCL or PostScript print data could not be processed because of insufficient print page buffer size. Perform one of the following steps. • If the [Image Quality] setting is [High Resolution], change it to [Standard] (PCL print driver) or [High Speed] (PostScript print driver). • On the [Advanced Settings] tab, change the [Print Page Mode] setting to [On]. (PCL only) • Increase the size of the page print buffer. • Install Extension System Memory (optional) to increase memory capacity. **Refer to** • [Image Quality]/[Print Page Mode]: Online help for the print driver • Print page buffer: "[Allocate Memory]" (P. 184)
016-705	A Secure Print document could not be registered because the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is not installed. HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed in order to use Secure Print.
016-706	The maximum allowable number of security/sample set users has been exceeded. Delete unneeded documents accumulated on the printer and Secure Print registered users, before trying to print again.
016-707	A sample set could not be printed because the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is not installed, or because there is some problem with the HDD Extension Kit (optional). HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed in order to use the sample set function.
016-708	Printing is not possible because of insufficient the HDD Extension Kit (optional) space. Delete unneeded data from the HDD Extension Kit (optional) to free up space.
016-709	An error occurred during ART EX processing. Delete the print job and try printing again.
016-710	Delayed printing could not be performed because the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is not installed, or because there is some problem with the HDD Extension Kit (optional). HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed in order to use the delayed print function.
016-711	The specified e-mail size exceeds the maximum allowable value. Reduce the data size of the attached file by lowering the resolution or magnification factor, or divide the file into multiple parts.
016-716	A TIFF file could not be spooled because of insufficient the HDD Extension Kit (optional) capacity. Delete unneeded data from the HDD Extension Kit (optional) to free up space.
016-718	PCL print data could not be processed because of insufficient memory. Reduce the resolution and try printing again without 2-Sided printing and multiple-up.
016-719	PCL print data could not be processed because of insufficient print page buffer size. Increase the size of the page print buffer.
016-720	A command that cannot be processed is included in the PCL print data. Check the print data and try printing again.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-721	An error occurred while processing a print job. This may be caused by the following. 1 Printing with auto tray selection is specified while [Not Selected] is set for all paper on [PaperTypePriority] under [Printer Settings] setting the control panel. 2 ESC/P command error For 1 above, when printing with auto tray selection, select any paper setting other than [Not Selected] for [PaperTypePriority]. Also note selecting a user-defined paper causes [Not Selected] to be set for [PaperTypePriority] automatically. For 2 above, check the print data. **Refer to** • Paper Type Priority setting: " [PaperTypePriority]" (P. 176)
016-726	The print language could not be selected automatically though [Auto] is selected under [Print Mode] setting on the control panel. Select the printer language using the control panel or command.
016-727	The print job turned out to be zero (0) page, so the printer could not save it on the HDD Extension Kit (optional). Try printing again after disabling [Blank paper economy] on the [Advanced Settings] tab of the print driver. Also check if the document is not blank, and if it is blank, print it again after including text in it.
016-728	The TIFF file included an unsupported tag. Check the print data.
016-729	Printing could not be performed because the number of colors and resolution of the TIFF data exceeded the allowable range. Change the number of colors and resolution of the TIFF file and try printing again.
016-731	The TIFF data was cut off part way and could not be printed. Try printing again.
016-732	The form specified by emulation is not registered. Re-register the form and try printing again.
016-733	This error code may be caused by one of the following. 1 When sending e-mail, the IP address cannot be obtained from the character string to the right of the @ mark in the addressee e-mail address . 2 When sending e-mail, the Internet address to the right of the @ mark cannot be resolved by DNS. For 1 above, check if the addressee e-mail address is entered correctly. For 2 above, configure the DNS server address correctly.
016-738	Booklet was specified with PostScript, but a paper size that cannot be output is specified. Specify a paper size that is supported for booklets and try printing again.
016-739	Booklet was specified with PostScript, but the document size/paper size combination is not supported. Specify a document size and paper size combination that supports booklets and try printing again.
016-740	Booklet was specified with PostScript, but a paper tray cannot be used for booklets is specified. Specify a paper tray that can be used for booklets and try printing again.
016-741	The transition to the download mode failed. If you are operating the control panel, try again one minute after completion. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-742 016-743	The download data is not suitable for the printer. Try again with the correct download data.
016-744	The cables connected to the printer may not be connected properly. Check whether the cables are properly connected, and try again.
016-745	Some error occurred during the download. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-746	Printing could not be performed because the PDF file contains a function that is not compatible with the printer. Use Adobe Reader to open the PDF file, and then print by selecting the [Print] command on the [File] menu.
016-748	Printing is not possible because of insufficient HDD Extension Kit (optional) space. Reduce the amount of print data by dividing the print data into multiple parts for individual printing. You can also, delete unneeded data from the HDD Extension Kit (optional) to free up space.
016-749	A JCL command syntax error occurred. Check the print settings and correct the JCL command.
016-750	Though a print instruction was issued by ContentsBridge Utility or another application that directly sends PDF or XPS data, the print job ticket sent along with the data included grammar or print instructions that are not supported by this printer. Check ContentsBridge or the other application sending the print job for operational problems and problems with the print instruction content. If there are no such problems, contact the manufacturer of the application. If this does not resolve the problem, obtain the function setting list, assemble the configuration, job history, and the print data connected to the print job ticked being sent, and contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-751	A PDF file could not be printed using PDF Bridge. Use Adobe Reader to open the PDF file, and then print by selecting the [Print] command on the [File] menu.
016-752	A PDF file could not be printed using PDF Bridge because of insufficient memory. If ContentsBridge Utility is being used, display the [Print Settings] dialog box to change the [Print Mode] as described below. • If [High Quality] is selected, change to [Standard]. • If [Standard] is selected, change to [High Speed]. **Note** • To print a PDF directly without using ContentsBridge Utility, refer to "[PDF]" (P. 126) for information about how to change the control panel setting to [PDF].
016-753	The PDF file password does not match the password set on the printer or the password set with ContentsBridge Utility. Specify the correct password on the printer or with ContentsBridge Utility and then try printing again. **Note** • To print a PDF directly without using ContentsBridge Utility, refer to "[PDF]" (P. 126) for information about how to change the control panel setting to [PDF].
016-755	PDF files that are prohibited from being printed cannot be printed on the printer. Use Adobe Acrobat to remove the PDF file's print prohibition and then try printing again. **Refer to** • Manual provided with Adobe Acrobat
016-756	Auditron Administration is enabled and you are not authorized to print on the printer. Contact your administrator.
016-757	The password you entered is incorrect. Enter the correct password.
016-759	Auditron Administration is enabled and the maximum allowable number of print pages has been reached. Contact your administrator.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-760	An error occurred during PostScript processing. Perform either of the two following steps. • If [High Resolution] is selected under [Image Quality] on the PostScript Print Driver, change it to [Standard]. • Increase PS memory. **Note** • Extension system memory (optional) is required when using PostScript (optional). **Refer to** • [Image Quality]: Online help for the print driver • PS memory: "[Allocate Memory]" (P. 184)
016-761	An error occurred while processing an image. If the [Image Quality] setting on the [Image Options] tab is [High Resolution], change it to [Standard] and try printing again. If this does not solve the problem, change the [Print Page Mode] setting on the [Advanced Settings] tab to [On] and try printing again. **Refer to** • [Image Quality]/[Print Page Mode]: Online help for the print driver
016-762	The specified language emulation is not installed. Under standard configuration, this printer can process the following types of data: ESC/P, PCL, TIFF, and PDF.
016-764	Could not connect to the SMTP server. Contact the server's administrator.
016-765	E-mail could not be sent because the SMTP server's the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is full. Contact the server's administrator.
016-766	An error occurred on the SMTP server. Contact the server's administrator.
016-767	E-mail could not be sent because an invalid e-mail address was specified for the addressee and the SMTP server returned response codes 550, 551, or 553. Check the address of the addressee and try sending again. If an error occurs again, contact your system administrator.
016-768	Could not connect to the SMTP server because the printer's e-mail address is not correct. Check the printer's e-mail address.
016-769	The SMTP server does not respond to delivery confirmation (DSN). Send the e-mail without delivery confirmation (DSN).
016-781	Could not connect to the SMTP server when transferring a file. Check the network cable connection.
016-790	The e-mail exceeded the maximum number of splits allowed when split-sending it, and therefore it was not sent. Increase the value of [Split count] under [Properties] > [Network Settings] > [Protocol Settings] > [SMTP] on CentreWare Internet Services. **Refer to** • CentreWare Internet Services online help
016-792	The job history could not be obtained when printing the printer's Meter Report. The job history does not exist.
016-798	The specified print job cannot be performed because there is a problem with the HDD Extension Kit (optional). Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
016-799	The print data includes incorrect parameters. Check the print data and print options and try printing again.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
016-981	Could not perform Secure Print, Sample Set, or Delayed Print because the HDD Extension Kit (optional) capacity is insufficient. Resolve this by one of the following: • Print again with lower resolution. • Reduce the number of print pages by splitting the print data. • Delete unnecessary pages from the Secure Print, Sample Set, or Delayed Print document.
016-982	This error occurred due to insufficient the HDD Extension Kit (optional) capacity. Delete no longer needed documents on this printer.
017-700	The connection to ThinPrint.print Engine has timed out. Check the connection to ThinPrint.print Engine.
017-701	An error occurred connecting to ThinPrint.print Engine. Check the connection to ThinPrint.print Engine.
017-702	The data sent from ThinPrint.print Engine is illegal. ThinPrint.print Engine may be in an error state. The print job may be processed sucecssfully if you try again.
017-703	The size of the data sent from ThinPrint .print Engine exceeds the maximum data size supported by the printer. Split the job and try printing again.
017-704	An internal error occurred. Switch the printer's power off, swich it back on after the control panel display has gone dark, and then try the same operation again.
017-705 017-706 017-707 017-708	An SSL authentication error occurred with ThinPrint .print Engine. Check the contents of the server certificate (including validation period and address) registered on ThinPrint .print Engine.
017-709	An SSL communication error occurred with ThinPrint .print Engine. Check the printer settings.
017-713	The SMTP server does not support [STARTTLS]. Change the SSL/TLS communication setting to an option other than [STARTTLS].
017-714	The SSL connection to the SMTP server failed. Check if SSL connection is supported by the SMTP server. If it is supported, check the port number of the SMTP server. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
017-715	An SSL server authentication error occurred with the SMTP server. The server certificate data is illegal. Th printer cannot trust the SSL certificate of the SMTP server. Register the root certificate of the SMTP server's SSL certificate on the printer.
017-716	An SSL authentication error occurred with the SMTP server. The server certificate is about to expire. Change the SSL certificate of the SMTP server to a valid certificate. This error can be prevented by setting [SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication] under [SSL/TLS Settings] to [Disabled], but note that the validity of the SMTP server to be connected will not be guaranteed.
017-717	An SSL authentication error occurred with the SMTP server. The server certificate is expired. Change the SSL certificate of the SMTP server to a valid certificate. This error can be prevented by setting [SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication] under [SSL/TLS Settings] to [Disabled], but note that the validity of the SMTP server to be connected will not be guaranteed.
017-718	An SSL authentication error occurred with the SMTP server. The server name and the certificate do not match. Change the SSL certificate of the SMTP server to a valid certificate. This error can be prevented by setting [SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication] under [SSL/TLS Settings] to [Disabled], but note that the validity of the SMTP server to be connected will not be guaranteed.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
017-719	An SSL authentication error occurred with the SMTP server. This is an SSL certificate internal error. Try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
017-723	A font that is not supported by DocuWorks Direct Print is being used. Use a font supprted by DocuWorks.
018-400	The printer's IPsec setting is incorrect. When the authentication method is set to [Preshared Key], change the password. If it is set to [Digital Signature], change the IPsec certificate.
018-405	The authentication failed due to an LDAP authentication error. The account is set to disabled in the active directory to be authenticated, or the access is prohibited on the server-side. Contact the server administrator.
018-572	An internal error occurred. Check if the specified context name is correct.
018-573	An internal error occurred. Check if the specified connection name is correct.
018-574	An internal error occurred. Check if the specified volume name is correct.
018-575	An internal error occurred. Check if the specified user name and password are correct.
018-576	An internal error occurred. Check if the specified path name is correct.
018-577	An internal error occurred. Check if the specified file name is correct.
018-578	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected. • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. • The server name and tree name. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-579	The communication with the NetWare server failed.Check the following: • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. • The capacity of the server where data is stored. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-580	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. • The volume name. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-581	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. • The directory path name. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-582	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. • The user rights. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-583	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: • The status of the HDD Extension Kit (optional) of the NetWare server. • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
018-584	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check if the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-585	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: • Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer • The status of usage by other users (in use, write-locked) Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-586	The communication with the NetWare server failed. Check the following: Whether the NetWare server can be accessed from the computer • The login user name. • The login password. • The volume name. • The server name and tree name. • The context name. Also run DSREPAIR on the NetWare server to repair the database.
018-595	Multiple entries with the same information as the currently used Smart card have been found on the LDAP server database. Edit Smart card information so they do not match the user entries in the LDAP server database.
018-596	An error occurred with LDAP server authentication. Re-try the same operation. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-210	The USB IC card reader is improperly connected. Reconnect it properly.
021-211	The USB IC card reader is defective. Connect a working USB IC card reader.
021-212	The USB IC card reader failed to start. Re-start the USB IC card reader one more time.
021-213	There is a problem with the settings of the unit-price table of the EP system that uses the Internet. Have the printer administrator read the unit-price table and correct it using the CentreWare Internet Services.The administrator can write the table by specifying values within the range between 1 and 9,999,999.
021-215	The charge counting device connected to the printer and that configured on the printer are not the same. Either correct the printer settings, or connect the device that matches with the printer settings, swich the power off, and then it back on after the control panel display has gone dark.
021-501	The communication with the EP system that uses the Internet failed. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-502	An error occurred communicating with the EP system that uses the Internet. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • Whether the subnet mask setting, DNS server address setting, default gateway setting on the printer are correct. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-503	The resolution of the address of the EP server name failed. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • Whether the subnet mask setting, DNS server address setting, default gateway setting on the printer are correct. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-504	The connection to the EP server or EP proxy server failed. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • Whether the subnet mask setting, DNS server address setting, default gateway setting on the printer are correct. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
021-505	The SSL/TLS communication with the EP server failed. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-506	The SSL certificate of the EP server is not correct. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-507	The authentication of the EP proxy server failed. Check the login name and password set for the printer's EP proxy server setting.
021-508	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • Whether the subnet mask setting, DNS server address setting, default gateway setting on the printer are correct. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-509	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-510 021-511 021-512 021-513 021-514	The printer is already configured on the EP server. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-515 021-516	The printer settings on the EP server are not correct. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-517 021-518 021-519	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Wait for a while and try again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-520 021-521 021-522	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Check the following: • Whether the network cable is connected properly. • Whether the subnet mask setting, DNS server address setting, default gateway setting on the printer are correct. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-523	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Enable the SOAP port, switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-524 021-525 021-526 021-527 021-528	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-529	On the software update server, all pieces of the printer's software are configured as the latest. If the software versions are not the latest, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-530 021-531	An error occurred communicating with the software update server. Wait for a while and try again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
021-532 021-533 021-534 021-535	The printer's software cannot be updated on the software update server. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer. Use the download tool to update the software.
024-700	The watermark function cannot be used because of HDD Extension Kit (optional) or memory problem. Switch the power off and then back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
024-702	This message is displayed when [Delete Job] is set to [When Jam Occurs] on the printer. A paper jam occurred during printing. Clear the paper jam, and try printing again.
024-742	The number of prints of a job for which booklet printing is specified using the print options exceeds the number of prints allowed for a booklet. Use the print options to change the number of prints to that is allowed, or cancel booklet printing.
024-746	A function (paper size, paper tray, or duplex printing) has been specified that cannot be used in combination with the specified paper quality. Check the print data.
024-747	Print parameter combinations are incorrect. For example: specifying a custom size and specifying [Auto Paper Select] for [Paper Tray]. Check the print data.
024-775	The number of prints of a job for which booklet is specified with print options exceeds the number of booklets that can be printed. Use print options to divide the job so the number of prints is within the allowable range for booklet or cancel booklets.
025-596 025-597	An error occurred in the HDD Extension Kit (optional). Replace the HDD Extension Kit (optional).
026-400	More than two devices are connected to the USB port. Only up to two devices are allowed to be connected to the USB port, so disconnect extra devices. If this does not resolve the problem, switch the power off, and then switch it back on after the control panel display has gone dark.
026-704	The DocuWorks file contains features that are not supported by the printer, and therefore the file could not be printed. Open the DocuWorks file using DocuWorks or DocuWorks Viewer, and print the file from [Print] under the [File] menu using the print driver.
026-705	DocuWorks file could not be printed using ContentsBridge Utility due to insuffucient memory. Resolve this by one of the following methods.Change the [Image quality] setting in the [Image Option] dialog box of ContentsBridge Utility as follows: • Check the [Image quality] setting in the [Image Option] dialog box of ContentsBridge Utility, and change it to [Standard] if [High Resolution] is selected, or to [Fineness] if [Generation (Standard)] is selected. • Install additional system memory (optional) to add on memory. • Open the DocuWorks file using DocuWorks or DocuWorks Viewer, and print the file from [Print] under the [File] menu using the print driver.
026-706	The DocuWorks file could not be printed because it is prohibited from printing. Clear the DocuWorks file's print prohibition using DocuWorks, and try printing again. **Refer to** • Manual provided with DocuWorks
026-707	The password of the DocuWorks file does not match the password set on the printer or ContentsBridgeUtility. Set the correct password on the printer or ContentsBridgeUtility, and try printing again. **Note** • If printing the DocuWorks file without using ContentsBridge Utility, see " [XDW (DocuWorks)]" (P. 129) to change the [XDW (DocuWorks)] setting on the control panel.
026-718	The combination of print features (document size, paper size, paper tray, 2-sided printing, output tray) you specified is not allowed. Check the print data, and try printing again.
026-724 026-725	An error occurred communicating with the EP server. Switch the power off and back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
026-726	The printer configurtion specified when the print job was requested does not match the actual printer configuration. Make sure that the printer configuration specified on the print driver screen matches the actual printer configuration.
026-730	The paper is not loaded correctly. Check the following: • Whether the paper is loaded correctly. • Whether the number of sheets is within the limit • Whether the tray is extended.
027-400	Communication with the printer failed. If another message is displayed, check its contents. If a panel operation is in progress, exit it. If remote access is in progress, wait until the access is complete. If this does not resolve the problem, switch the power off and then back on again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
027-442	IPv6 IP addresses are duplicated. Change the printer's IPv6 "Auto Stateless Address 1" or the network device IPv6 address to eliminate the IP address duplication.
027-443	IPv6 IP addresses are duplicated. Change the printer's IPv6 "Auto Stateless Address 2" or the network device IPv6 address to eliminate the IP address duplication.
027-444	IPv6 IP addresses are duplicated. Change the printer's IPv6 "Auto Stateless Address 3" or the network device IPv6 address to eliminate the IP address duplication.
027-445	A manually set IPv6 IP address is wrong. Re-configure the IPv6 address correctly.
027-446	The IPv6 address specified manually is duplicated. Fix the duplication by changing [Manually Configured IPv6 Address] for IPv6 on the printer or the IPv6 address of the device on the network.
027-447	IPv6 addresses are duplicated. Change the printer's IPv6 Link Local Address or the network device IPv6 address to eliminate the IP address duplication.
027-452	The IP address is duplicated. Check the IP address set on the printer.
027-500	The SMTP server name could not be resolved when sending response e-mail. Check if SMTP server settings are correct from CentreWare Internet Services.
027-501	The POP3 server name could not be resolved when using POP3 protocol. Check if POP3 server settings are correct from CentreWare Internet Services, check if POP3 server settings are correct from.
027-502	Login to the POP3 server failed when using POP3 protocol. Check if the user name and password for using the POP3 server are configured correctly from CentreWare Internet Services.
027-503	An error occurred on the POP server. Re-try the same operation. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
027-504	An error occurred on the SMTP server. Re-try the same operation. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
027-549	An SMB protocol error occurred. Try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
027-564	An SMB protocol error occurred. The SMB server was not found. Check the following to see if the network communication between the authentication server and the printer is possible. • The connection of the network cable. • The TCP/IP setting. • The communication using the 137 port (UDP), 138 port (UDP), 139 port (TCP)
027-565	An SMB protocol error occurred. Try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
027-566	SMB (TCP/IP) is not enabled. Make sure that SMP (TCP/IP) is enbaled in the [Port Settings] screen under the [Properties] tab of CentreWare Internet Service.
027-572 027-573 027-574 027-576 027-578	An SMB protocol error occurred. Try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
027-584	An SMB protocol error occurred. The SMB server is running in the shared security mode. The SMB server may be configured on the Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows Me OS. Configure the SMB server on an OS other than Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows Me.
027-701	The network cable is unplugged. Plug the network cable into the printer.
027-735	Data transfer using SSL has been specified, but the SSL setting is disabled on the printer. Enable the printer's SSL setting or specify HTTP as the transfer protocol.
027-736	The verification of a server certificate has been specified, but the server certificate verification is disabled on the printer. Enable the printer's server certificate verification setting or disable the server cerificate verification for data transfer.
027-763	The verification of an external accounting server against the user information failed. Resolve this by one of the following: • Check if the external accounting server is running properly. • Check that there is no fault in the network. • EConnect the network cable properly. • Check the printer's settings.
027-796	While the printer was configured only to print documents attached to e-mail, an e-mail message without an attachment was received and that mail was discarded. To also print the message body text and header of an e-mail, change the settings on the [Properties] tab of CentreWare Internet Services.
027-797	The output destination for received e-mail is wrong. Specify the correct output destination and send the e-mail again.
050-453	A paper jam occurred in the top cover. Open the cover and remove the jammed paper.
050-454	A paper jam occurred in the rear cover area. Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
050-455	A paper jam occurred in the paper tray. Pull out the paper tray and remove the jammed paper.
050-456	A paper jam occurred in the Duplex unit area. Open the Duplex unit and remove the jammed paper.
116-220	Transition to the download mode failed. Contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
116-701	2-Sided printing cannot be performed because of insufficient memory. Installation of Extension System Memory (optional) is recommended.

Error Code	Cause/Remedy
116-702	Printing was performed using PostScript fonts in place of TrueType fonts inside the document. Because of this, unintended new line operations and hyphens may cause unexpected printing results. If this happens, use the PostScript print driver to change the settings of the [Font Substitution Table] under [Device Settings].
116-703	An error occurred with PostScript. Check the print data or clear the bi-directional check box for the spooling setting on the [Advanced] tab of the PostScript print driver.
116-710	If the received data exceeds the size of the HP-GL, HP-GL/2 spool, the printer may no be able to determine the document size correctly. Increasing memory allocated to HP-GL, HP-GL/2 auto layout memory or installation of HDD Extension Kit (optional) is recommended.
116-713	The job was divided into parts for printing because the HDD Extension Kit (optional) became full. Delete unneeded data from the HDD Extension Kit (optional) to free up space.
116-714	An HP-GL, HP-GL/2 command error occurred. Check the print data.
116-720	The job cannot be printed due to insufficient PCL memory. Disable ports that are not needed or adjust the buffer size of each type of memory. Installation of Extension System Memory (optional) is recommended.
116-725	The writing of the image log failed since the capacity of the image log storage is insufficient. Try running the job again. If the error continues, resolve it by one of the following methods: • Delete unnecessary image logs. • Change the [Assurance Level] setting of image logs to [Low].In this case, the contents of image logs generated will not be assured.
116-740	An arithmetic operation error occurred because a value that exceeds the limit for printer print data is used. Check the print data.
116-747	The paper margin value is too large for the HP-GL, HP-GL/2 effective coordinate area. Decrease the paper margin values and try printing again.
116-748	There is no drawing data in the HP-GL, HP-GL/2 print data. Check the print data.
116-749	The job was canceled because the specified font does not exist on the printer. Install the font or use the print driver to specify font conversion.
116-750	There is a fault with the paper tray used for printing banner sheets. Fix the fault, or change the paper tray setting for banner sheets.
116-752	Thre is a problem with the description contents of the PDF, XML Paper Specification (XPS), or DocuWorks file's print job ticket. Try the same operation again. If this does not resolve the problem, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
116-771 116-772 116-773 116-774 116-775 116-776 116-777 116-778	The JBIC data had an illegal parameter, and it was fixed automatically. If the job did not compelete successfully, try running it again.
116-780	There is a problem with the document attached to an e-mail received by the printer. Check the attached document. **Refer to** • "3.12 Printing Using E-mail - E-mail Print -" (P. 94)

6.7 Network-related Problems

For information on how to resolve network-related printing problems, refer to the "CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)" on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.

The following are the problems you may encounter when using CentreWare Internet Services, Mail Print, or E-mail Notification Service, or when connected to IPv6. When an error message or error code is displayed, refer to "6.6 Error Messages and Error Codes" (P. 209) to remedy the error.

CentreWare Internet Services Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Cannot access CentreWare Internet Services.	Is the printer running normally? Check if the printer is switched on.
	Is Internet Services activated? Print out the [Configuration Report] to see if Internet Services is activated.
	Is the URL entered correctly? Check the URL. If you still cannot access the service, enter the printer's IP address instead of the URL.
	Is the HTTP port number correct? Check the HTTP port number again. If you changed the port number, you must enter a ":" (colon) and then the port number after the address when accessing CentreWare Internet Services. Example) http://printer1.example.com:80/
	If SSL/TLS server communication is enabled, did you enter the address correctly in the address field? If SSL/TLS server communication is enabled, start the address with "https" instead of "http". Also, if you changed the SSL/TLS port number, enter a ":" (colon) before the port number. Example) https://printer1.example.com:80/
	Is your web browser using a proxy server? CentreWare Internet Services cannot be accessed depending on the proxy server being used. Trying accessing the service without using a proxy server. **Refer to** • Online help for your web browser
The [Please wait...] message is displayed on the web browser and does not disappear.	Wait for a while as instructed. If nothing happens, refresh the web browser. If this does not help, check if the printer is running normally.
The latest information is not displayed.	Click [Refresh].
The [Refresh] button does not work. The contents in the right frame do not change even when a different topic is selected in the left frame. The service is slow.	Is your operating system or web browser supported by CentreWare Internet Services? Refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38) to see if your operating system or web browser is supported by the service.
	If your browser is using a proxy server, the window may not refresh properly or may become slow. Trying accessing the service without using a proxy server.
	Old information may be cached on your web browser. Clear all the information cached on the web browser.

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Clicking [Apply] does not reflect the new settings.	Did you enter the values correctly? If the values are not valid, an error message will be displayed. Check if the values are entered correctly.
The password input screen is displayed.	The default user ID and password of the CentreWare Internet Services administrator are: • User ID: 11111 • Password: x-admin

Mail Print/E-mail Notification Service Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
E-mail printing cannot be performed.	Is the e-mail address of the printer configured? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Is the [Receive E-mail] setting on? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Are the SMTP server IP address and POP3 server IP address (when POP3 is selected as the receive protocol) configured correctly? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Are the POP user name and password configured correctly? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Are permitted e-mail domains configured? Use CentreWare Internet Services to confirm that your domain is included as a permitted e-mail domain.
	Are the SMTP server and POP server running normally? Contact your network administrator.
A PDF file attached with Mail Print does not print.	Printing may not be possible when memory capacity is insufficient. If you need to print large attached files frequently, installation of Extension System Memory (optional) is recommended.
Printer status mail is not sent with the e-mail notification service.	Is the e-mail address of the printer configured? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Is the [E-mail Notification Service] setting on? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Are the SMTP server IP address and POP3 server IP address (when POP3 is selected as the receive protocol) configured correctly? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Are the POP user name and password configured correctly? Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure the settings.
	Are the items or events for notification set correctly? Use the CentreWare Internet Services properties screen to configure the settings.
	Are the e-mail addresses of recipients entered correctly? Use the CentreWare Internet Services properties screen to enter addressees.
	Are the SMTP server and POP server running normally? Contact your network administrator.

IPv6 Connection Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
When SSL is enabled with CentreWare Internet Services, specifying http://[IPv6 address] does not result in a re-direct to the https://[IPv6 address] site.	When SSL is enabled, specify https://[IPv6 address].
Secure watermark does not operate correctly when printing over an IPv6 network.	Run under an IPv4 environment. Secure watermark does no operate correctly under an IPv6 environment.
The printer cannot communicate with Windows operating systems supporting IPv6.	Use some Windows operating system supporting IPv6 to speciy a fixed address. Register the fixed IPv6 address on the printer as a communication-enabled host address.
The printer cannot be accessed when specifying a link-local address.	Add a scope ID to the link-local address. When using Internet Explorer 7 with Windows Vista, Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2 to specify fe80::203:baff:fe48:9010 for access, for example, add Ethernet adapter local area connection number (8, for example) of Windows Vista, Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2 as the scope ID, and enter: fe80::203:baff:fe48:9010%8.
Searches do not operate properly when they pass through a router.	When performing a search with SMB through a router, enter the addressee address directly. Multicast responses are limited to multicasts within the local link (FF02::1).

IPv6 Environment Printing Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
A Windows shared printer cannot be used by Windows operating systems for IPv6 in an IPv6 network environment that has no DNS servers.	Register the printer's host name in the hosts file on the Windows operating systems for IPx6. Example Path: Register in this file: C:\Windows\system32\driver\etc\hosts
Cannot perform IPv6 communication under NetWare.	Run under IPv4.

Other IPv6 Problems

Symptom	Cause/Remedy
Operation is improper when an IPv6 address is specified as the connection destination URL with DocuShare or some other external access connection service. Example: http://[ipv6:2001:db8::1]	In the IPv6 environment, enable the DNS server and specify the destination URL using an FQDN.
In an IPv6 network environment that does not have a DNS server, authentication fails when the computer name is specified in the SMB authentication SMB server setting.	Directly specify the IPv6 address for the computer name of the authentication server.
Cannot find an IPv6 device under UPnP.	In an IPv6 environment, use Web Services on Devices (WSD) discovery function.
The IPv6 is not entered correctly in a job log that was output.	Run under IPv4.

6.8   Extending the life of the Print cartridge

Under the factory default setting for this printer, printing will not stop immediately even when it becomes time to replace the print cartridge.

However, if the [PrintcartridgeLifeEnd] setting is changed to [Cancel Printing] in [System Settings] under [Admin Menu], the printer will stop when it becomes time to replace the print cartridge.

When the printer stops, even if you need to continue printing, you cannot display [Admin Menu] from the menu screen. In this case, display [Consumables Menu] with the following procedure, and set [PrintcartridgeLifeEnd] to [Continue to Print] and resume printing.

1. Press simultaneously the <▼> and <OK> button on the control panel.
    The Consumables Menu is displayed.

```
Consumables Menu
 Serial Number
```

2. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current setting is displayed.

```
Consumables Menu
PrintcartridgeLifeEnd
```

3. Press the<▼> button to display [Continue to Print].

```
PrintcartridgeLifeEnd
Continue to Print
```

4. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to set [Continue to Print].

```
PrintcartridgeLifeEnd
·Continue to Print
```

5. Press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the print screen.
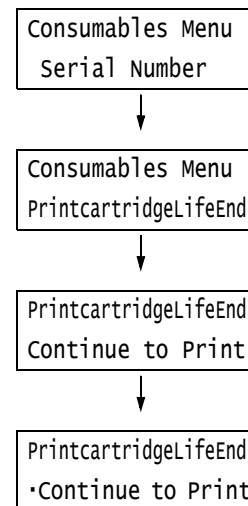
You will be able to continue printing some more.

7 Maintenance

7.1 Replacing Consumables

Types of Consumables

This printer uses the consumables listed below. To order them, contact the dealer where you purchased the printer.

Important
- This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with genuine consumables. If you use consumables with specifications different from those of the genuine consumables, printer performance may not be at its optimum. If the printer breaks due to the use of non-genuine consumables, you may incur the repair charges. Should the printer experience trouble while using genuine consumables, you will be able to receive full support. Use of genuine consumables is recommended in order to ensure peak performance of your printer.
- The page yield of each consumable varies depending on print requests, documents printed, and how often the power is switched on/off. For more information, refer to "A.3 Life of Consumables and Regular Replacement Parts" (P. 327).

Product Name	Product Code	Page Yield (Reference Value)
Print cartridge (15K)	CT350936	Approx. 15,000 pages
Print cartridge (15K) (for China only)	CT350937	Approx. 15,000 pages
100k Maintenance Kit 110V[1][2]	E3300187	Approx. 100,000 pages
100k Maintenance Kit 220V[1][2]	E3300188	Approx. 100,000 pages
200k Maintenance Kit[2][3]	E3300190	Approx. 200,000 pages

[1]: 100k Maintenance Kit: This is repacing kit for Bypass Feed Roller. A kit consisting of the Fuser Unit and Bypass Feed Roller Unit (Bypass Feed Roller and Bypass Retard Roller).

[2]: 100k Maintenance Kit is available with two specifications G110V and 220V. Check printer specification before ordering.

[3]: 200k Maintenance Kit: This is repacing kit for Tray Feed Roller. A kit consisting of the Tray Feed Roller Unit (Nudger roller, Tray Feed Roller, and Tray Retard Roller) and Transfer Roll.

⚠ **WARNING**
- Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on its package or container.
- Never throw a print cartridge into an open flame. Remaining print in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.
  If you have a used print cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.
- Use the specified battery. Replacing the battery with a battery other than the specified one may cause explosion. Dispose of the used battery as directed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Keep print cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows print, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.
- When replacing print cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.
- When replacing the print cartridge, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes, and mouth, also avoid inhaling it.
  - If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.
  - If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.
  - If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.
  - If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

Handling Consumables

- Do not store consumables upright.

- Do not unpack consumables/maintenance parts until they are ready to be used. Avoid storing consumables/maintenance parts in the following locations:
  - in high temperature and humidity
  - near heat sources
  - in direct sun light
  - in dusty places

- When using consumables, make sure to follow the precautions stated on their packaging.

- We recommend you keep backup supplies of consumables.

Recycling Used Consumables

Proper disposal is required for print cartridges no longer needed. Do not open drum /toner cartridges and waste toner bottle. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Replacing Print cartridges

When it becomes time to replace the print cartridge, a message such as those shown below appears on the display of the control panel.

Replace the cartridge by following the procedure described below.

Message	Action
Ready to print ⓘReplace Print Cartridge	The print cartridge will need to be replaced. Ready to the new Print Cartridge. The print cartridge needs to be replaced. Referring to " Replacement Procedure" (P. 238), replace the print cartridge.
ⓘReplace the print cartridge.	The print cartridge will need to be replaced soon. The number of remaining printable pages is approximately 100 pages[*]. Refer to " Replacement Procedure" (P. 238), replace the print cartridge.

*: The actual number of printable pages can vary greatly based on the printing conditions, document contents, frequency of power-ups, etc.

Important
- Make sure that the power is on when replacing the print cartridges.
- When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not reuse old print cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.
- Do not shake or strike used print cartridges. Doing so can cause the remaining toner to spill.
- Toner is not harmful to the human body. If it gets on your hands or clothes, wash it off immediately.
- We recommend you to use up the print cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.

Replacement Procedure

1. Switch off the power of the printer by pressing the<⏻> side of the power switch.
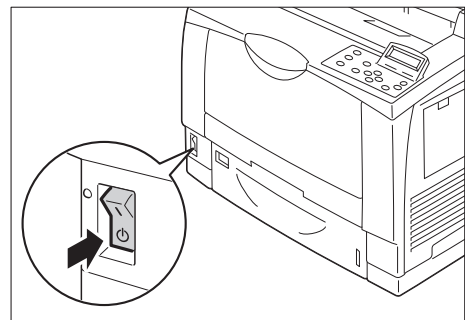
2. If there is paper in the center tray, remove it.
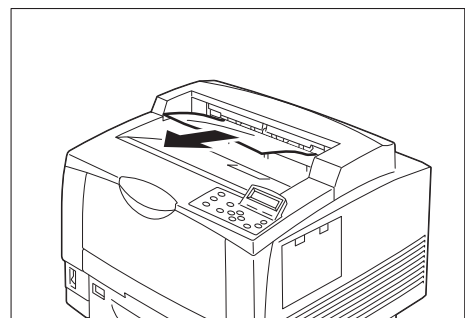
3. Open cover A.

Important
• Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
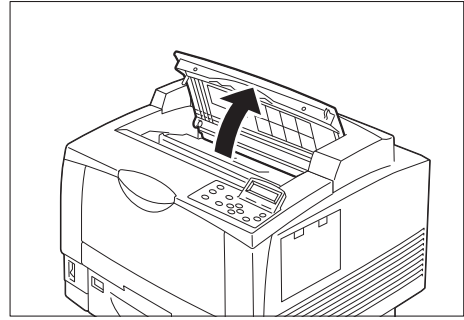
4. Grasping the print cartridge by its handle, slowly lift it off the printer.

Important
• Before placing the removed drummer/toner cartridge on the floor or a table, place a few sheets of paper to catch any toner that may spill.
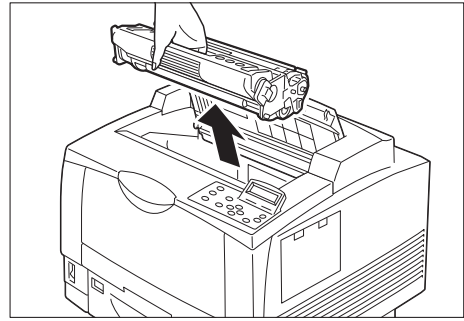
5. Take the new print cartridge out of the box and shake it 7 or 8 times as shown in the illustration.

Important
• Place the used print cartridge in the bag that contained the new print cartridge and set the bag in its box.
• Uneven distribution of the toner inside the cartridge may lower the print quality. Failure to shake the cartridge well may cause also an abnormal noise when the printer starts or damage inside the print cartridge.
• Never touch the photoreceptor (drum) surface with your hands.
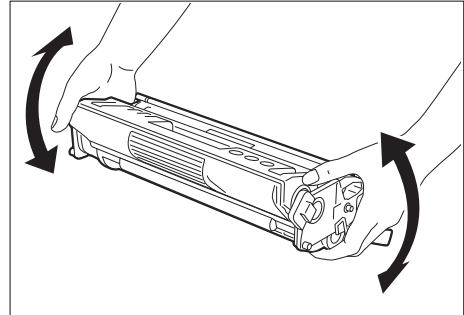
6. Place the print cartridge on a flat surface and peel off the toner sealing strip.

Important
• When peeling off the toner sealing strip, pull it straight in a direction parallel with the ground. Pulling the toner sealing strip at an angle may cause it to break off.
• After peeling off the toner sealing strip, shake the print cartridge, being careful not to bump the cartridge into objects.
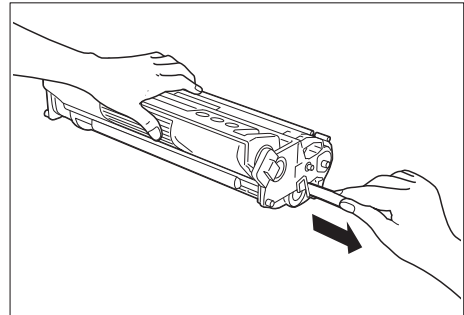
7. Grasping the print cartridge by its handle, insert it into its housing in the printer.

Important
• Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
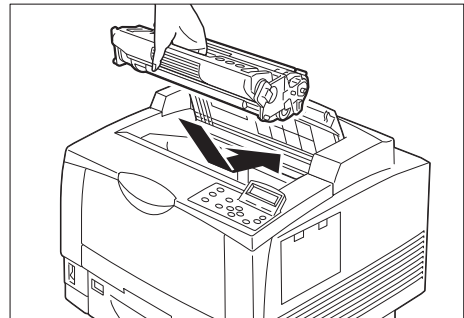
8. Fully close cover A.
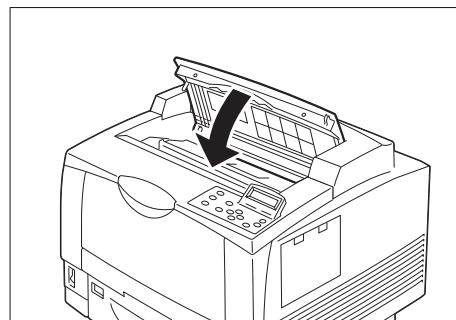
9. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
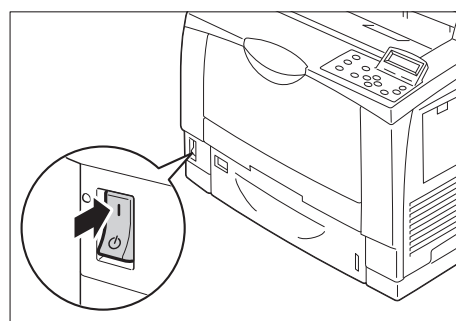
Output is too light

If printing is continued even after the message "Replace the print cartridge" is displayed, the toner may run out during printing, resulting in output that is too light.

In this case, shake the cartridge with the procedure described below. This may allow you to continue printing until the toner runs out completely.

Important
- Toner can easily spill out from the print cartridge. Before placing the removed drummer/toner cartridge on the floor or a table, place a few sheets of paper to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not shake or bump the removed print cartridge, as this may cause toner to spill out.

1. Switch off the power of the printer by pressing the<(¹)> side of the power switch.

2. If there is paper in the center tray, remove it before opening cover A.

Important
- Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
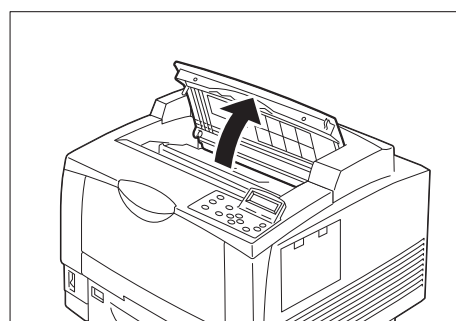
3. Grasping the print cartridge by its handle, slowly lift it off the printer.
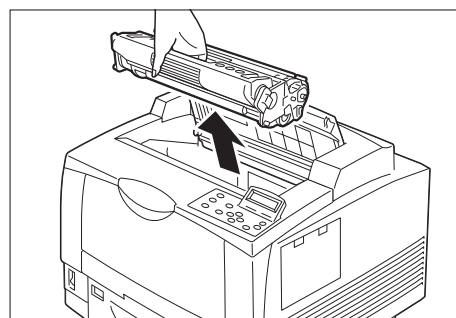
4. Gently place the removed print cartridge on a flat surface.
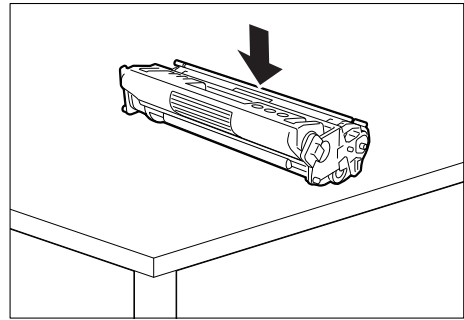
5. Gently lift the print cartridge with both hands and shake it 2 or 3 times as shown in the illustration.

Important
• Never touch the photoreceptor (drum) surface with your hands.
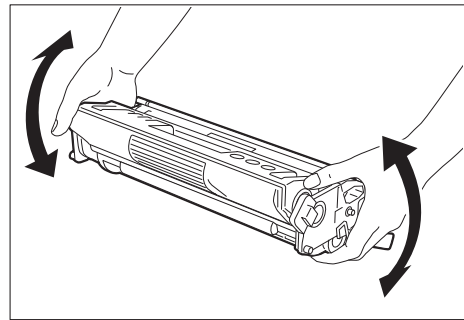
6. Gently place the print cartridge on a flat surface. Grasp the cartridge by its handle.
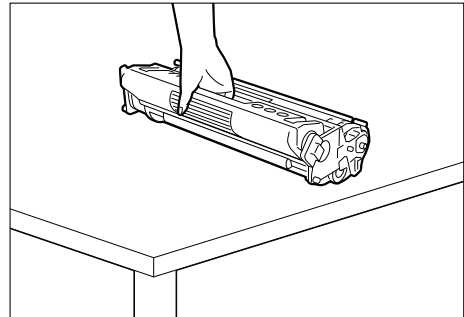
7. Insert the print cartridge into its housing in the printer.

Important
• Do not touch the parts inside the printer.

8. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
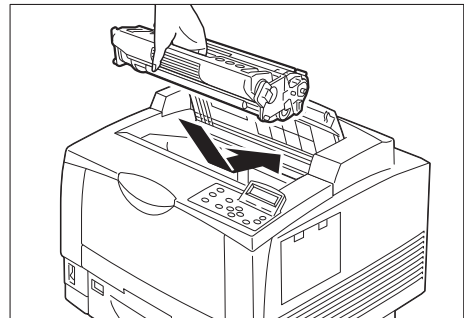
If the printing output is too light even if the print cartridge was shaken, replace the cartridge with a new one.

Replacing the 100k Maintenance Kit 110V

When the 100k Maintenance Kit[*] replacement time approaches, the following message is displayed on the control panel display. Purchase the 100k Maintenance Kit, and install it on the printer by following the installation procedure.

*: 100k Maintenance Kit consists of the Fuser Unit and Bypass Feed Roller Unit (Bypass Feed Roller, Bypass Retard Roller. And 100k Maintenance Kit is available with two specifications; 110 and 220.

Message	Action
Ready 🛈 Replace Fuser Assembly soon	The Fuser Unit needs to be replaced soon. Refer to " Replacement Procedure (Fuser Unit 110V)" (P. 242) to replace the Fuser Unit.
Ready 🛈 Replace Bypass FeedRoller	The bypass feed roller unit needs to be replaced. Refer to " Replacement Procedure (Bypass Feed Roller Unit)" (P. 251) to replace the bypass feed roller.

⚠ CAUTION
• Fuser Unit Safety
   When removing the Fuser Unit, always switch off first and wait for 40 minutes until it cools off.

Replacement Procedure (Fuser Unit 110V)

■ Fuser Unit

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Important
• The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.


2. Release the lever at the top left of the Duplex unit (1) and open cover C (2).
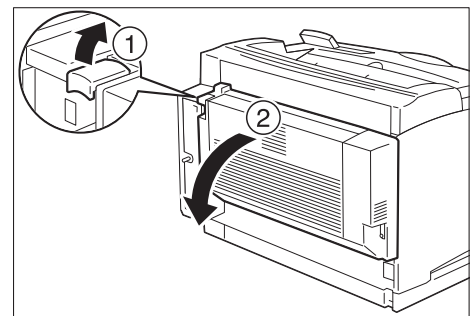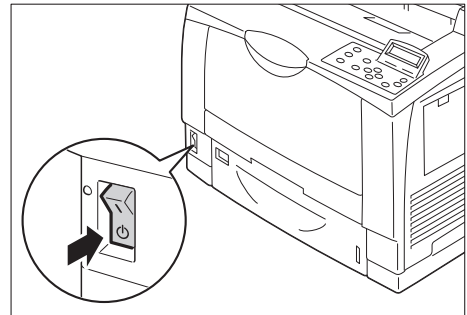
3. Lift the lever at the left end of the printer (1) and open cover B (2).
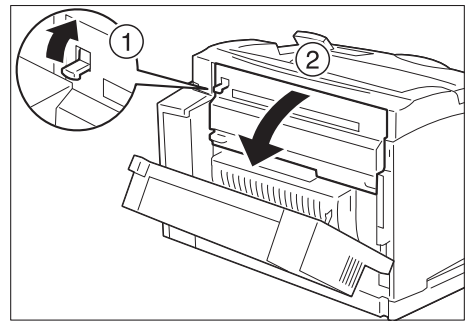
4. Lower the orange lever slowly.
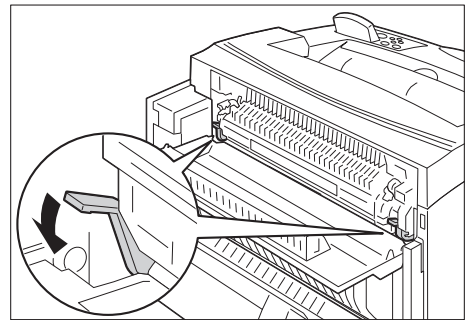
5. Hold both ends of the Fuser Unit (parts indicated by amber gold) and pull it straight out horizontally with the ground.

Note
• Do not touch the Fuser Unit as it is extremely hot and may cause burns.
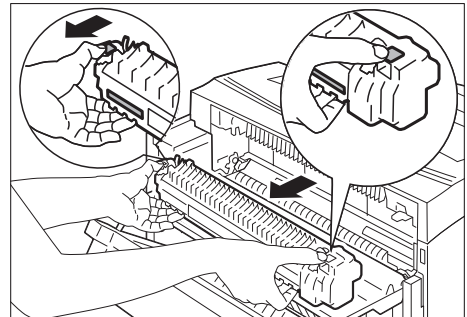
6. Take the new Fuser Unit out of the box (1), and detach the spacers (2).
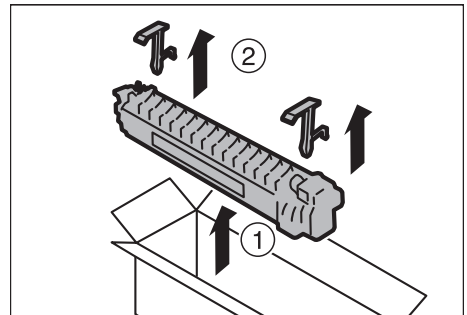
7. A warning labes for this side, insert the new Fuser Unit in the printer.
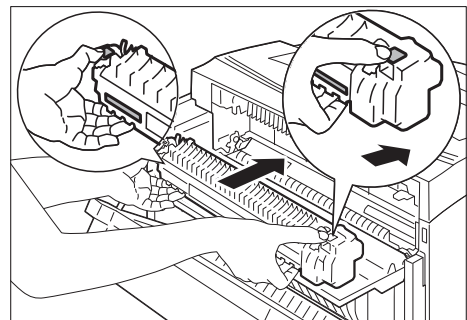
8. Lift the orange lever.
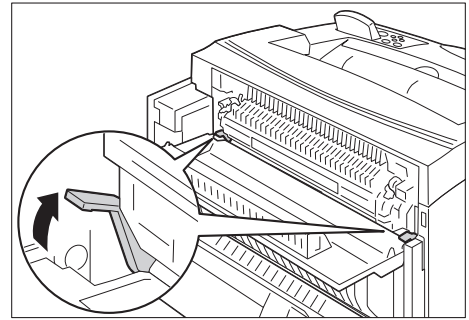
9. Close cover B.
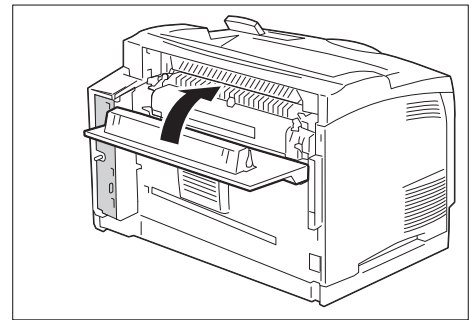
10. Close cover C.

    Note
    • When closing cover C, do so by pressing the center area of the cover.
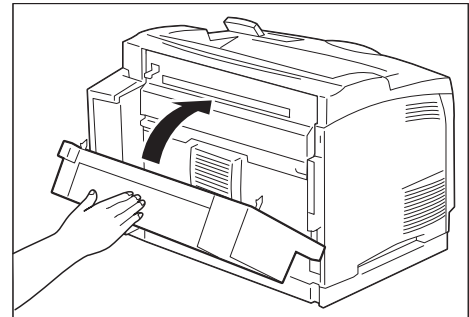
11. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
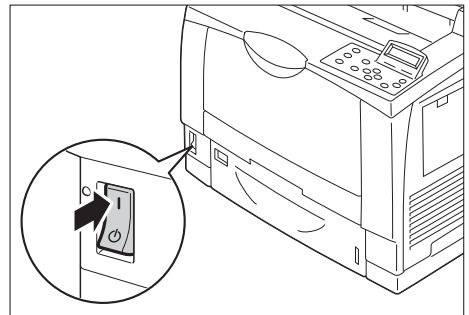
■ Resetting the Counter

After replacing the fuser unit, perform the required control panel operations to reset their respective counters.

When replacing the fusing unit, be sure to reset the counter on the control panel.

1. On the control panel, press the <▼> and <OK> buttons at the same time.
   This displays the [Consumables Menu].

```
Consumables Menu
 Serial number...
```

2. Press the <▼> until [Reset Counter] appears.

```
Consumables Menu
 Reset Counter
```

3. Press either the <▶> or <OK> button to select so [Fuser Assembly] is displayed.

```
Reset Counter
 Fuser Assembly
```

4. Press either the <▶> or <OK> button to select.

```
Press OK to reset
Fuser Assembly
```

5. Press the <OK> button.

```
Resetting Fuser
Assembly...
```

6. This resets the counter for the fusing unit.

```
Reset completed for
Fuser Assembly
```

7. Press the <Settings> button to close themenu.

Replacement Procedure (Bypass Feed Roller Unit)

■ Bypass Feed Roller and Bypass Retard Roller

Use the following procedure to replace the Bypass Feed Roller Unit

1. Open the bypass tray.

2. Grasping the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, pull out the tray up to the position where it stops.
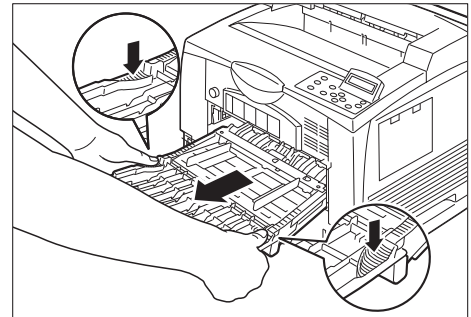
3. Reposition your hands as shown in the illustration and pull up the bypass tray at an angle.
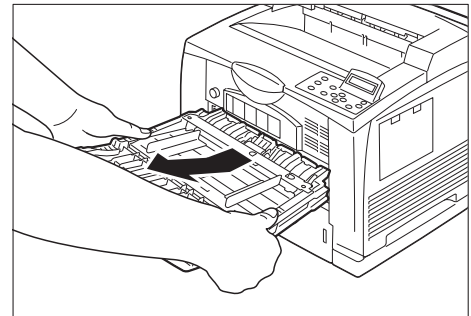
4. While lightly pinching the edges of the Bypass Retard Roller, remove it from its holder.
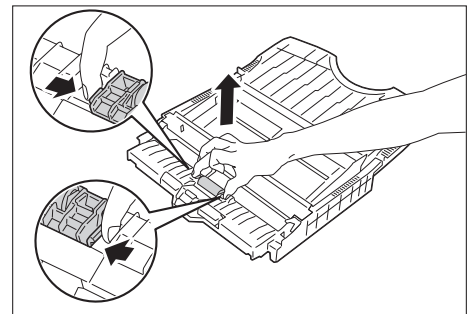
5. Take the new Bypass Retard Roller out of the box.
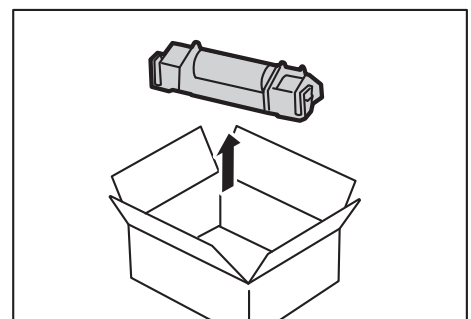
6. While lightly pinching the edges of the new Bypass Retard Roller, push it until it clicks into its holder.
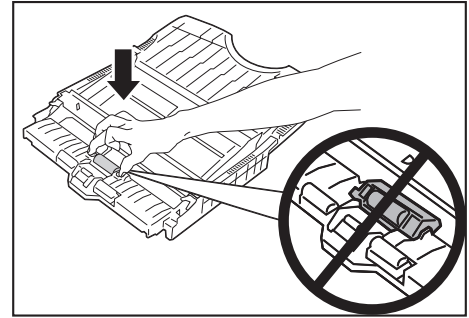
7. Pull out the paper tray.
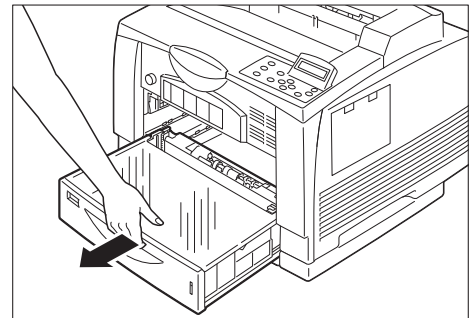
8. Check the bypass feed roller inside the printer.
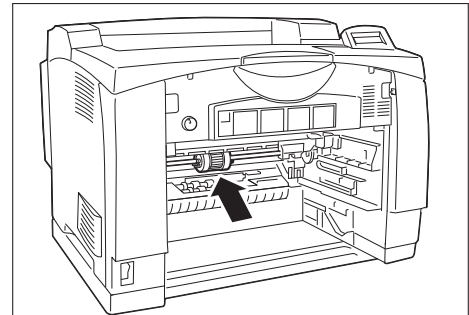
9. While lightly pinching the hook on the left end (1), slide only the white part until it stops. When sliding the white part, rotate it if it is stuck in the plastic portion of the interior.
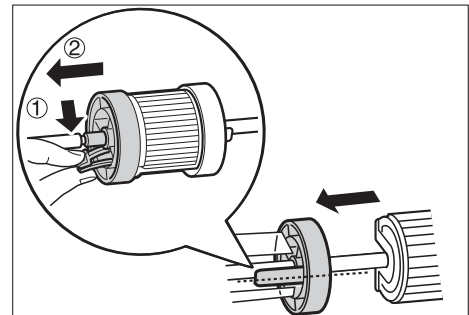
10. Slide the bypass feed roller to the left up to the white part (1). Rotate the roller 90 degrees toward you (2), and remove it (3).
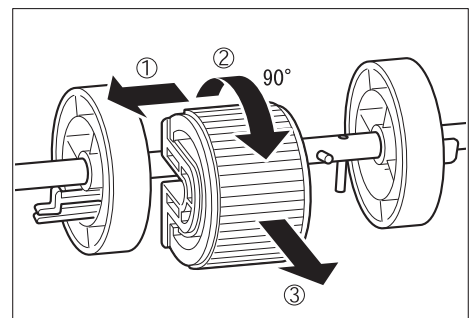
11. Take bypass feed roller out of the box.
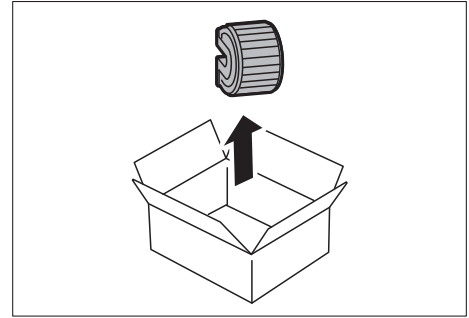
12. After cleaning the roller, place it back to the orignal position. Push the horizonal groove of the roller onto the shaft in the orientation parallel to the ground (1). Rotate the roller 90 degrees towards back so that the pin on the shaft fits into the indentation on the roller (2), and slide the roller to the right (3).
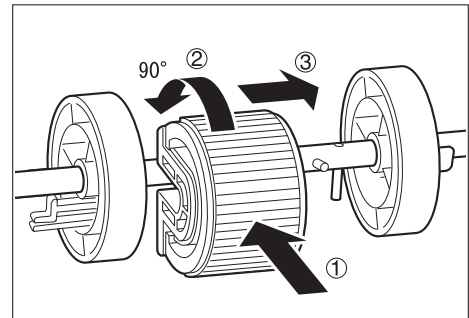
Note
• One side of the roller is flat while the other is grooved. When pushing the roller onto the shaft, be careful about the orientation of the roller.

13. Slide the white part on the left up toward the roller. Slide it to the right until the left end hook fits securely into the groove of the shaft.
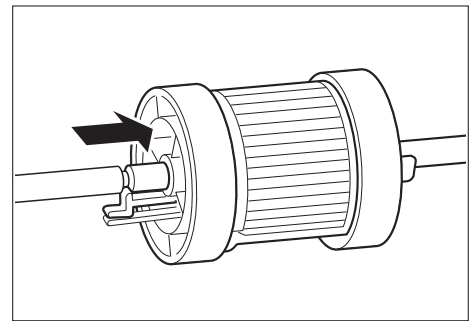
14. Place the paper tray back into the printer.
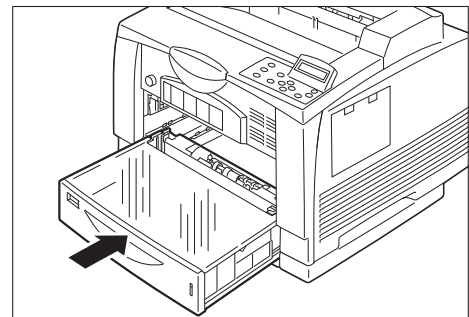
15. Return the paper tray inside the printer.
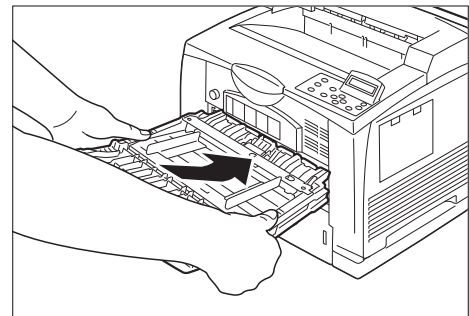
16. Repositioning your hands to grasp the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, push the bypass tray all the way back into the printer.
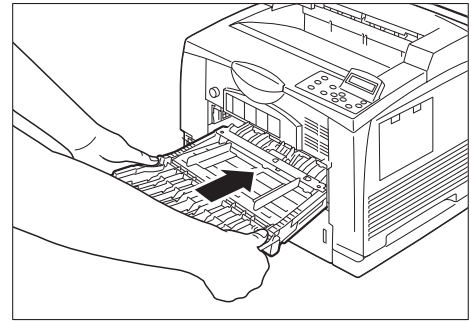
17. Close the bypass tray.
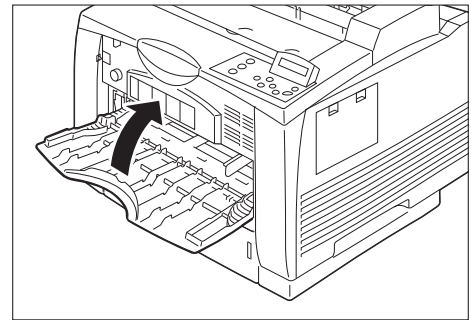
18. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
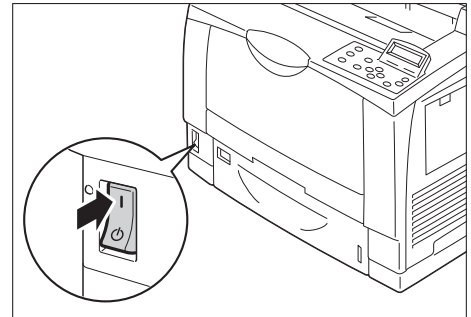
■ Resetting the Counter

After replacing the Bypass Feed Roller unit, perform the required control panel operations to reset their respective counters.

When replacing the Bypass Feed Roller unit, be sure to reset the counter on the control panel.

1. On the control panel, press the <▼> and <OK> buttons at the same time.
   This displays the [Consumables Menu].

```
Consumables Menu
  Serial number...
```
↓

2. Press the <▼> until [Reset Counter] appears.

```
Consumables Menu
  Reset Counter
```
↓

3. Press either the <►> or <OK> button to select so [Fuser Assembly] is displayed.

```
Reset Counter
  Fuser Assembly
```
↓

4. Press the <▼> until [Bypass FeedRoller] appears.

```
Reset Counter
  Bypass Feed Roller
```
↓
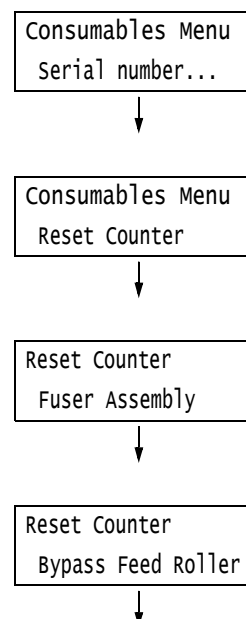
5. Press either the <▶> or <OK> button to select.

```
Press OK to reset
Bypass Feed Roller
```

6. Press the <OK> button.

```
Resetting Bypass
Feed Roller...
```

7. This resets the counter for the Bypass Feed Roller.

```
Resetcompleted for
Bypass Feed Roller
```

8. Press the <Settings> button to close the menu.

Replacing the 100k Maintenance Kit[*1] 220V

When the 100k Maintenance Kit[*] replacement time approaches, the following message is displayed on the control panel display. Purchase the 100k Maintenance Kit, and install it on the printer by following the installation procedure.

*: 100k Maintenance Kit consists of the Fuser Unit nad Bypass Feed Roller Unit (Bypass Feed Roller, Bypass Retard Roller.And 100k Maintenance Kit is available with two specifications; 110 and 220.

Message	Action
Ready ℹ Replace Fuser Assembly soon	The Fuser Unit needs to be replaced soon. Refer to " Replacement Procedure (Fuser Unit 110V)" (P. 242) to replace the Fuser Unit.
Ready ℹ Replace Bypass Feed Roller	The bypass feed roller unit needs to be replaced. Refer to " Replacement Procedure (Tray Feed Roller Unit)" (P. 252) to replace the bypass feed roller.

⚠ **CAUTION**
- Fuser Unit Safety
  When removing the Fuser unit, always switch off first and wait for 40 minutes until it cools off.

Replacement Procedure (Fuser Unit 220V)

■ Fuser Unit

Refer to Replacement Procedure of "Fuser Unit" (P. 242) in Replacing the 100k Maintenance Kit 110V

■ Resetting the Counter

Refer to Replacement Procedure of "Resetting the Counter" (P. 245) in Replacing the 100k Maintenance Kit 110V

Replacement Procedure (Bypass Feed Roller Unit)

■ Bypass Feed Roller and Bypass Retard Roller

Refer to Replacement Procedure of "Bypass Feed Roller and Bypass Retard Roller" (P. 246) in Replacing the 100k Maintenance Kit 110V

■ Resetting the Counter

Refer to Replacement Procedure of "Resetting the Counter" (P. 249) in Replacing the 100k Maintenance Kit 110V

Replacing the 200k Maintenance Kit

When the 200k Maintenance Kit[*] replacement time approaches, the following message is displayed on the control panel display. Purchase the 200k Maintenance Kit, and install it on the printer by following the installation procedure.

*: 200k Maintenance Kit consists of the Nudger Rollers, Tray feed Rollers, Tray Retard Rollers, and Transfer Roll.

Message	Action
Ready ⓘ Replace Tray Feed Roller	The Tray Feed Roller needs to be replaced. Refer to " Replacement Procedure (Tray Feed Roller Unit)" (P. 252) to replace the Tray Feed Roller.
Ready ⓘ Replace Transfer Roll[*1]	The Transfer Roll needs to be replaced. Refer to " Replacement Procedure (Transfer Roll)" (P. 257) to replace the Transfer Roll.

Replacement Procedure (Tray Feed Roller Unit)

■ Tray Retard Roller

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <(ᵟ)> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Important
- The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Pull out the paper tray from the printer. Check the retard roller.
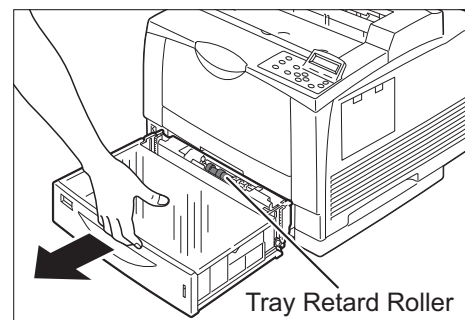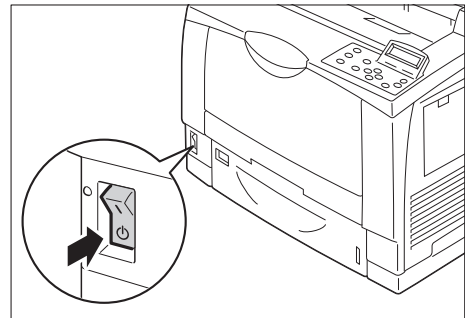
Tray Retard Roller

3. While pressing down the retard portion (right illustration) with your left hand (1) and lightly pulling up the hook on the roller with your right index finger (2), slide the tray retard roller to the side from the shaft of the paper tray, and then slowly remove it (3).
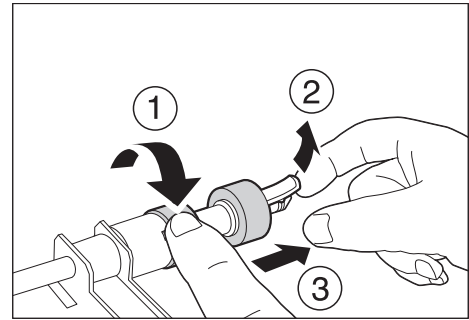
4. Take tray feed roller out of the box.
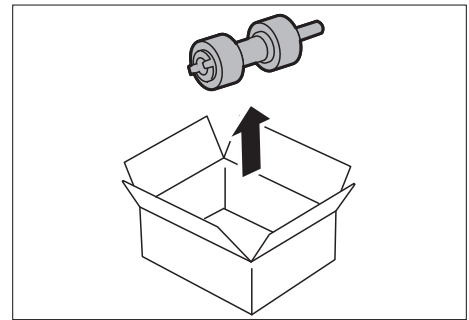
5. In the groove of the paper tray's shaft (1), slowly insert the hook of the new tray retard roller (2).
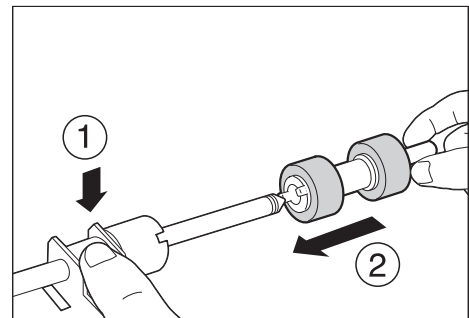
6. Align the groove of the tray retard roller with that of the shaft (1), and firmly insert the roller (2).
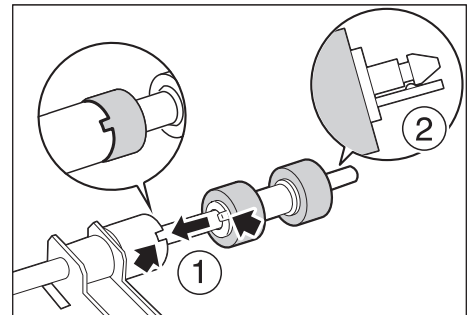
■ Nudger Roller and Tray Feed Roller

1. Open the bypass tray.

2. Grasping the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, pull out the tray up to the position where it stops.
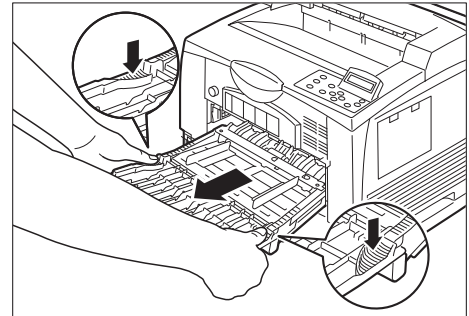
3. Reposition your hands as shown in the illustration and pull up the bypass tray at an angle.
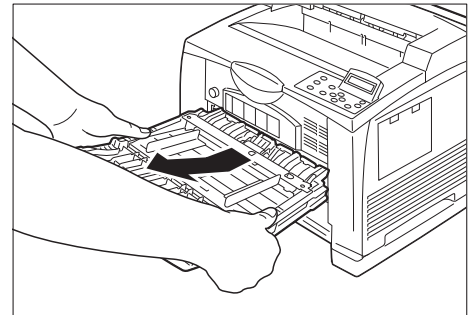
4. Check the Nudger Roller and Tray Feed Roller.
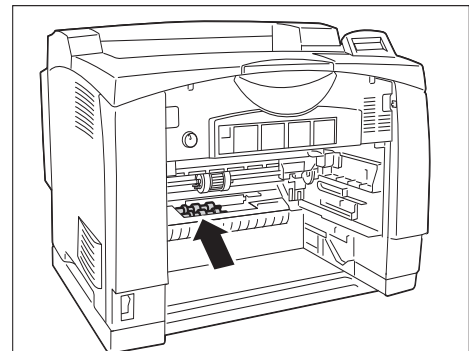
5. Pull out the paper tray from the printer and find the Nudger Roller and Tray Feed Roller inside of the main body.
   You can replace the Nudger Roller and Tray Feed Roller by referring to the Replacement Procedure (Retard Rollers) replacement procedure.
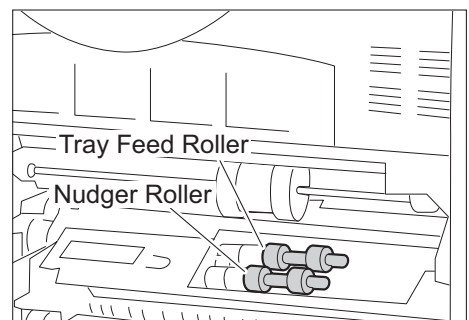
6. Place the paper tray back into the printer.
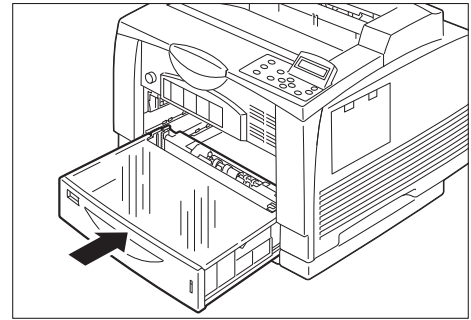
7. Return the paper tray inside the printer.
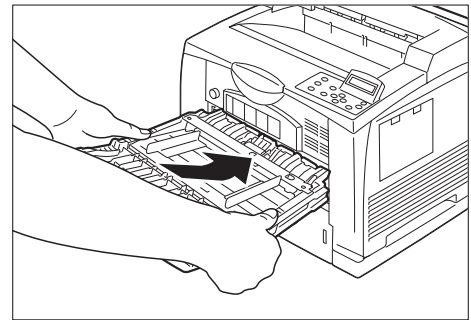
8. Close the bypass tray.
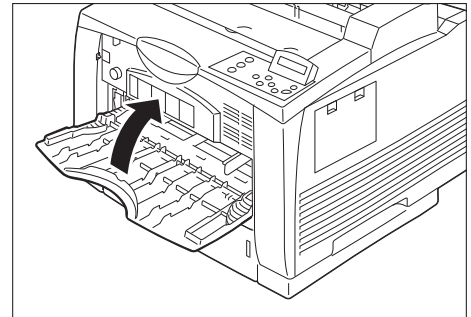
9. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
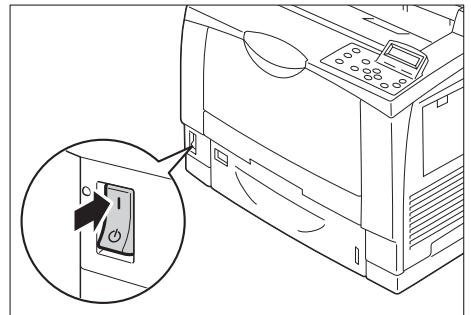
■ Resetting the Counter

After replacing the 200k Maintenance Kit, perform the required control panel operations to reset their respective counters.

When replacing the 200k Maintenance Kit, be sure to reset the counter on the control panel.

1. On the control panel, press the <▼> and <OK> buttons at the same time. This displays the [Consumables Menu].

```
Consumables Menu
 Serial number...
```
↓

2. Press the <▼> until [Reset Counter] appears.

```
Consumables Menu
 Reset Counter
```
↓

3. Press either the <►> or <OK> button to select so [Fuser Assembly] is displayed.

```
Reset Counter
Fuser Assembly
```
↓

4. Press either the <▼> so [Tray Feed Roller] is displayed.

```
Reset Counter
Tray Feed Roller
```
↓

5. Press either the <►> or <OK> button to select.

```
Press OK to reset
Tray Feed Roller
```
↓

6. Press the <OK> button.

```
Resetting Tray Feed
Roller...
```
↓

7. This resets the counter for the Tray Feed Roller.

```
Resset completed for
Tray Feed Roller
```

8. Press the <Settings> button to close themenu.

■ Transfer Roll

When the time to replace the transfer roll is near, the following message appears on the control panel display. Use the following procedure to replace the cartridge.

1. Press the ⟨⏻⟩ side of the power switch of the printer to switch off the power.
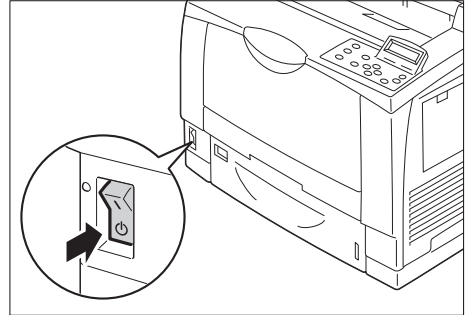
2. Open cover A.

Important
- Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
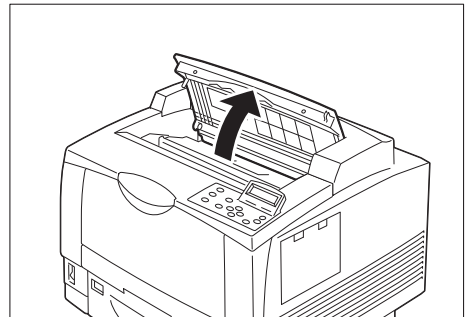
3. Grasping the print cartridge by its handle, slowly lift it off the printer.

Important
- Before placing the removed drummer / toner cartridge on the floor or a table, place a few sheets of paper to catch any toner that may spill.
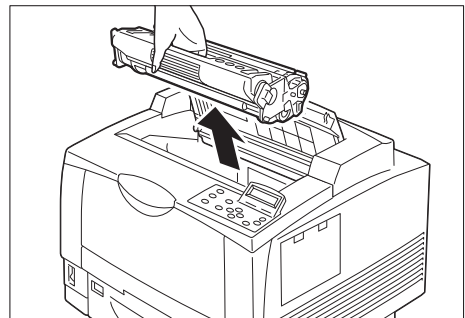
4. Grasping the levers at both ends of the Transfer roll cartridge, pull it out.
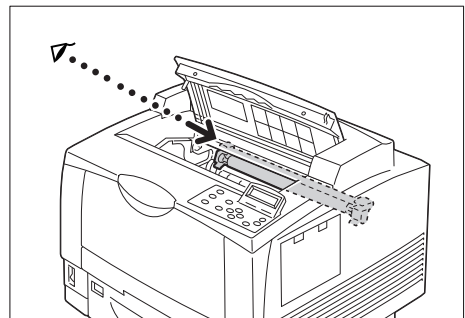
Important

• Slowly pull out the Transfer roll cartridge. Toner adhering to the Transfer roll cartridge may fall inside the printer.
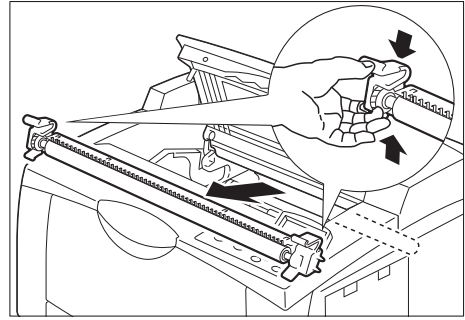
5. Take new Transfer roll out of the box.
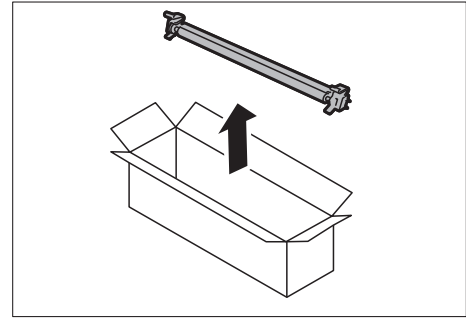
6. Take out the new Transfer roll cartridge and slowly insert it while holding both levers.
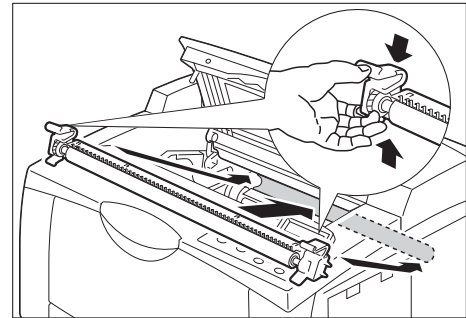
7. Holding the print cartridge by its handle, insert the cartridge in the housing inside the printer.

Important

• Do not touch the parts inside the printer.
• Check that the drum cartridge is securely set.
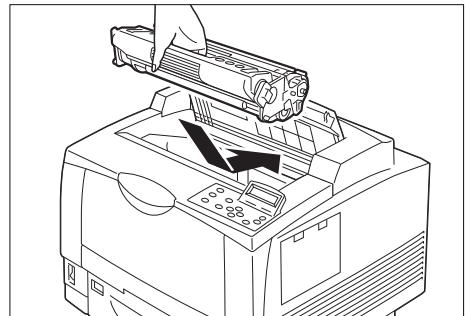
8. Fully close cover A.
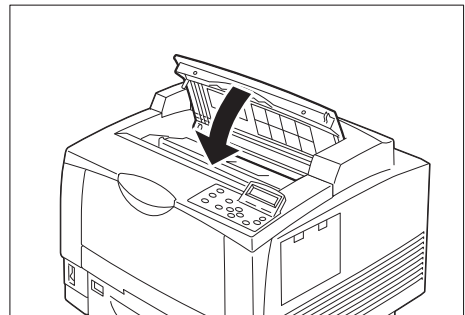
9. Press the 〈 | 〉 side of the power switch to power on the printer.
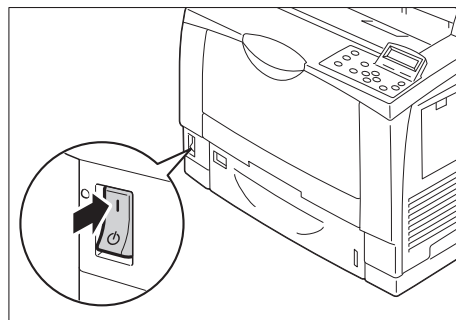
■ Resetting the Counter

After replacing the 200K Maintenance Kit, perform the required control panel operations to reset their respective counters.

When replacing the 200K Maintenance Kit, be sure to reset the counter on the control panel.

1. On the control panel, press the <▼> and <OK> buttons at the same time.
    This displays the [Consumables Menu].

```
Consumables Menu
  Serial number...
```
↓

2. Press the <▼> until [Reset Counter] appears.

```
Consumables Menu
  Reset Counter
```
↓

3. Press either the <►> or <OK> button to select so [Fuser Assembly] is displayed.

```
Reset Counter
Fuser Assembly
```
↓

4. Press either the <▼> so [Transer Roll] is displayed.

```
Reset Counter
Transfer Roll
```
↓

5. Press either the <►> or <OK> button to select.

```
Press OK to reset
Transfer Roll
```
↓

6. Press the <OK> button.

```
Resetting...
Transfer Roll
```
↓

7. This resets the counter for the Transfer Roll.

```
Resset completed for
Transfer Roll
```

8. Press the <Settings> button to close themenu.

7.2   Printing Reports/Lists

This section describes various reports/lists that can be printed from the printer.

Types of Reports/Lists

The printer can print the following reports/lists in addition to print jobs from its clients.

Note

- When the report name differs from the display name on the control panel, the name on the control panel is listed in parentheses below.

Report/List Name (Name on the Control Panel)	Required Optional Accessory	Description
Job History Report (Job History)	–	You can print this report to check whether print data sent from the computer has been printed normally. It lists the last 50 print jobs. You can program your printer to automatically print this report after every 50 jobs using the control panel. For more details, refer to "[Auto Job History]" (P. 157).
Error History Report (Error History)	–	Lists the errors that occurred on the printer.
Meter Report (Print Jobs) (Meter / Auditron)	–	Lists the total number of pages/sheets printed to date by computer (job owner). Separate printed page counts are maintained for color and monochrome. The count starts from the last time data was initialized. **Refer to** • "7.3 Checking the Meter Reading" (P. 263)
Auditron Report (Print Jobs) (Meter / Auditron)	–	This report is printed when you select [Meter / Auditron] while the Auditron Administration feature is enabled. This report lists the number of monochrome/color pages printed by each user and the number of sheets printed for each paper type. **Refer to** • For more information about the Auditron Administration feature, refer to "7.11 Control Access to Printer Features by Pre-registering Users" (P. 301).
Configuration Report (Configuration)	–	Lists the status of various printer settings, including hardware configuration and network information. Print this list to see if the options are correctly installed on the printer.
Font List (Font List)	–	Lists fonts that can be used with ESC/P, PDF Bridge, HP-GL/2 and DocuWorks Bridge.
PCL Font List (PCL Font List)	–	Lists the supported PCL fonts. You can also check bar-code samples supported by PCL.
PostScript® Font List (PS Font List)	–	Lists the supported PostScript fonts.

Report/List Name (Name on the Control Panel)	Required Optional Accessory	Description
PostScript® Logical Printers List (PS Logical) [1]	–	Lists settings of registered PostScript logical printers 1 through 20. **Note** • Logical printers can be created using CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.
ESC/P Settings List (ESCP Settings) [1]	–	Lists ESC/P print mode settings. For details, refer to the 'ESC/P Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM that comes with the printer.
ESC/P Logical Printers List (ESCP Logical) [1]	–	Lists settings of registered ESC/P logical printers 1 through 20. **Note** • Logical printer settings can be configured using memory registration from the control panel, or by using CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.
HP-GL/2® Settings List (HP-GL/2 Settings) [1]	–	Lists HP-GL, HP-GL/2 print mode settings. For details, refer to the 'HP-GL, HP-GL/2 Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM that comes with the printer.
HP-GL/2® Logical Printers List (HP-GL/2 Logical) [1]	–	Lists settings of registered HP-GL, HP-GL/2 logical printers 1 through 20. **Note** • Logical printer settings can be configured using memory registration from the control panel, or by using CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.
TIFF/JPEG Settings List (TIFF/JPEG Settings) [1]	–	Lists TIFF/JPEG print mode settings.
TIFF/JPEG Logical Printers List (TIFF/JPEG Logical) [1]	–	Lists settings of registered TIFF/JPEG logical printers 1 through 20. **Note** • Logical printers can be created using CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.
PDF Settings List (PDF Settings) [1]	–	Lists PDF direct print settings configured using the control panel.
PCL Setting List (PCL Settings) [1]	–	Lists PCL print mode settings. For details, refer to the 'PCL Emulation Setting Guide' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM that comes with the printer.
PCL Macro List (PCL Macro List) [1]	–	Lists registered macros, forms, etc.
DocuWorks Printer Settings List [1] (DocuWorksSettings)	–	Lists settings on the control panel of DucuWorks Direct Print.
Stored File List (Stored Hobs)	HDD Extension Kit (optional)	Lists the files stored in the printer via Secure Print, Sample Set, and Delayed Print. **Refer to** • "3.5 Printing confidential documents - Secure Print -" (P. 73) • "3.6 Printing after checking output - Sample Set -" (P. 77) • "3.7 Printing at a Specified Time - Delayed Print -" (P. 81)

Report/List Name (Name on the Control Panel)	Required Optional Accessory	Description
Domain Filter List (Domain Filter List)	HDD Extension Kit (optional)	Lists domains registered for the send and receive domain filter. **Note** • Set whether to allow or block domain in CentreWare Internet Services. Refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services for details.
Job Counter Report (Job Counter)	–	Lists the number of sheets output for each function or paper size.
Watermark Sample List (Watermark Sample)	Feature Enhance Kit HDD Extension Kit (optional)	Prints samples of watermarks created using the Watermark feature. **Refer to** • "Watermark" (P. 280)
Secure Watermark Sample List (Secure Watermark)	Feature Enhance Kit HDD Extension Kit (optional)	Prints samples of secure watermarks created using the Watermark feature. **Refer to** • "Secure Watermark" (P. 281)

Printing a Report/List

The reports/lists can be printed using the control panel. The procedure below shows how to print the [Configuration Report]. The same basic procedure can be used to print the other reports and lists.

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
 LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Print Reports] is displayed.

```
Settings
 Print Reports
```

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Job History] is displayed.

```
Print Reports
 Job History
```

4. Press the <▼> button until [Configuration] is displayed.

```
Print Reports
 Configuration
```

5. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. A print start confirmation screen appears.

```
Configuration
 Use OK to print
```

6. Press the <OK> button to print. The report is printed.

7. When you are finished printing, press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.
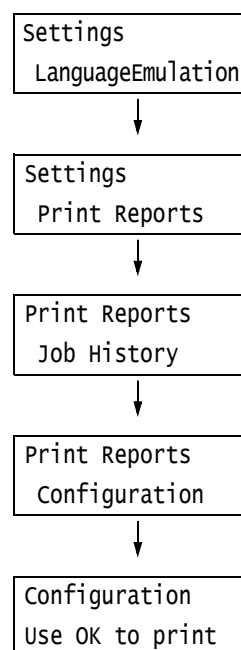
7.3 Checking the Meter Reading

The printer can count the number of sheets it prints by different categories such as output color and computer.

Checking the Meter Reading by Output Meter

The number of printed pages of each meter can be checked on the display of the control panel.

Meter 1	Black and white printing
Meter 2	Normally not used
Meter 3	Cannot be used on this printer

Note
• If you print a job that was color-converted using ICC profile or other tool when [Output Color] is set to [Color], the job will be printed in color even if it looks monochrome on your monitor.
  In this case, the job will be counted by the meter 1 (color prints).

Use the following procedure to check the meter reading on the control panel.

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Meter Reading] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Meter Reading
```

3. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Current Meter] is displayed.

```
Meter Reading
  Current Meter
```

4. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Total] is displayed.

```
Total
        1234567
```

5. When you are finished checking the meter, press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.
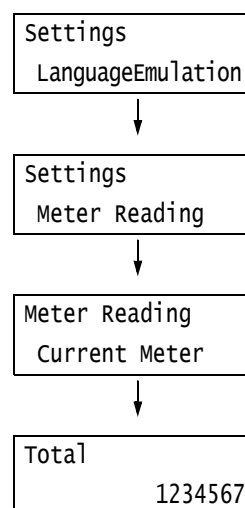
Checking the Meter Reading by Computer ([Meter Report (Print Jobs)])

The [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] shows the number of printed sheets and sheets of paper used to print color and monochrome print jobs for each computer (job owner). The counts start from the last time when data was initialized.

The [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] can be printed and data initialized using the control panel.

Note
- The [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] cannot be printed while the Auditron Administration feature is being used. The [Auditron Report (Print Jobs)] can be printed instead. Switching to [Auditron Report (Print Jobs)] initializes the printer totals accumulated up to that point.

Refer to
- Printing procedure: "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)

[Meter Report (Print Jobs)] Printout

The items described below are included in the [Meter Report (Print Jobs)].

Job Owner Name	Up to 50 owner names can be printed. If the job owner is not specified, or in the case of a print job of a user past the 50th user, the print count is displayed in the "Unknown User" column (second column from the last). The printing of this report/list is also counted in the "Report/List" column (last column).
Pages - Total	Total number of pages printed. Sheets are counted after every print job.
Sheets - Total	Total number of sheets printed. Sheets are counted after every print job.

Initializing [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] Data

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```

3. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
```

4. Press the <▼> button until [Init/Delete Data] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Init/Delete Data
```

5. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [NVM] is displayed.

```
Init/Delete Data
  NVM
```

6. Press the <▼> button until [Print Meter] is displayed.

```
Init/Delete Data
  Print Meter
```

7. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. A process start confirmation screen is displayed.

```
Print Meter
  Use OK to init
```

8. Press the <OK> button. Data is initialized.

9. After the process is finished, press the <Printer Meter> button to return to the [Ready to print] screen.
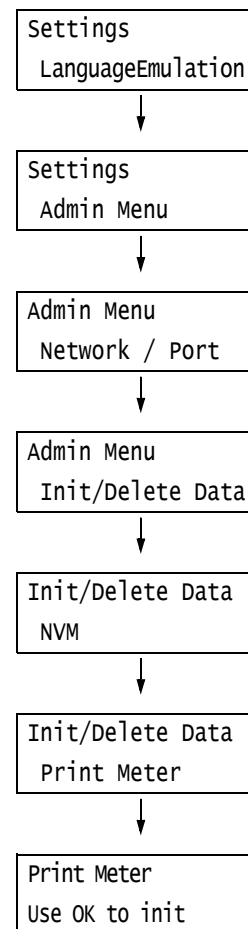
Checking the Meter Reading by Function ([Job Counter Report])

This report provides the number of print pages and sheets for jobs that use the 2 pages up and 2-Sided print features by each feature or paper size.

Refer to
• Printing procedure: "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)

DocuPrint 3105
Job Counter Report

Date & Time : 2010/11/22 5:47 PM
Page : 1(Last Page)

Total Runtime

Output Device Runtime	3 Minutes
Standby Time	1777 Minutes
Low Power Time	0 Minutes
Sleep Time	52183 Minutes
Warm-up Time	0 Minutes
Power Off Time	5177 Minutes

Total - All Counters

Total Impressions	
Total	26
Total Sheets	
Total	22
2 Sided Sheets	4
Printed Sheets for	
Reload Paper Type	0
Printed Sheets by Paper Size	
A4	22
Printed Impressions by Paper Tray	
Tray 1	26
Tray 2	0
Tray 3	0
Bypass Tray	0

Print Counter

Printed Impressions	
Total Impressions	26
Print Jobs	4
Report Jobs	22
1 Sided	
2 Pages	0
4 Pages	0
Other than 2 and 4 Pages	0
2 Sided	
2 Pages	0
4 Pages	0
Other than 2 and 4 Pages	0
Total Printed Sheets	
Total	22
Print Jobs	4
Report Jobs	18
2 Sided Sheets	
Total	4
Print Jobs	0
Report Jobs	4
Printed Sheets for	
Reload Paper Type	
Total	0
Print Jobs	0
Report Jobs	0
Number of Jobs by Printed Impressions	
1 Page	4
2 Pages	0
3 Pages	0
4 Pages	0
5 Pages	0

6 Pages	0
7 Pages	0
8 Pages	0
9 Pages	0
10 - 19 Pages	0
20 - 29 Pages	0
30 - 49 Pages	0
50 - 74 Pages	0
75 - 99 Pages	0
100 - 249 Pages	0
250 Pages and above	0
Number of Jobs by Printed Impressions	
(With Eco settings)	
1 Page	0
2 Pages	0
3 Pages	0
4 Pages	0
5 Pages	0
6 Pages	0
7 Pages	0
8 Pages	0
9 Pages	0
10 - 19 Pages	0
20 - 29 Pages	0
30 - 49 Pages	0
50 - 74 Pages	0
75 - 99 Pages	0
100 - 249 Pages	0
250 Pages and above	0
Total Pages Deleted From Folders	
Without Printing	0

7.4 Changing an IP Address

This section explains how to change the fixed IPv4 address of this printer manually.

Note
• Use CentreWare Internet Services to change the fixed IPv6 address of the printer. Use the IPv6 address to access CentreWare Internet Services, and change the IPv6 address by selecting [Properties] tab > [Connectivity] > [Protocols] > [TCP/IP].

Changing an IP Address

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```
↓

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```
↓

Note
• If you went past the desired item, return to the item by pressing the<▼> button.

3. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
```
↓

Note
• If you pressed the <▶> or <OK> button on the wrong item, return to the previous screen by pressing the <◀> or the <Back> button.
• To start over from the beginning, press the <Printer Settings> button.

4. Press the <▶> button to select. [LPD] is displayed.

```
Network/Port
  LPD
```
↓

Note
• [Parallel] appears only when the Parallel Port Kit (optional) is installed.

5. Press the <▼> button until [TCP/IP Settings] is displayed.

```
Network/Port
  TCP/IP Settings
```
↓

6. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [IP Mode] is displayed.

```
TCP/IP Settings
  IP Mode
```
↓

7. Press the <▼> button until [IPv4 Settings] is displayed.

```
TCP/IP Settings
  IPv4 Settings
```
↓

8. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Get IP Address] is displayed.

```
IPv4 Settings
  Get IP Address
```
↓

9. Press the <▼> button to display [IP Address].

```
IPv4 Settings
 IP Address
```

10. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current IP address is displayed.

```
IP Address
•000.000.000.000
```

11. Enter the value in the first field using the <▲> or <▼> button (Example: 192), and press the <▶> button.

```
IP Address
 192.000.000.000
```

Note
- If you do not need to change the setting, press the <▶> button to advance to the next field.
- Pressing the <▲> or <▼> buttons increments thevalue by 10.
- To return to the previous field, press the <◀> button.

12. Enter the rest of the fields in the same manner. After entering the last (4th) field (Example: 192.168.1.100), press the <OK> button to confirm your entry.

```
IP Address
•192.168.001.100
```

13. If you want to change a subnet mask and gateway address, press the <Back> button and proceed to Step 14.
If you want to finish configuring the settings, proceed to Step 21.
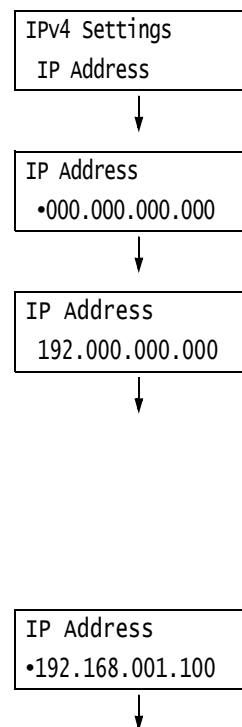
To change the Subnet Mask/Gateway Address

14. Press the <▼> button until [Subnet Mask] is displayed.

```
IPv4 Settings
 Subnet Mask
```

15. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current subnet mask is displayed.

```
Subnet Mask
•000.000.000.000
```

16. Enter the subnet mask in the same way you entered the IP address (Example: 255.255.255.000), and press the <OK> button to confirm your entry.

```
Subnet Mask
•255.255.255.000
```

17. Press the <Back> button to return to [Subnet Mask].

```
IPv4 Settings
 Subnet Mask
```

18. Press the <▼> button to display [Gateway Address].

```
IPv4 Settings
 Gateway Address
```

19. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The current gateway address is displayed.

```
Gateway Address
•000.000.000.000
```
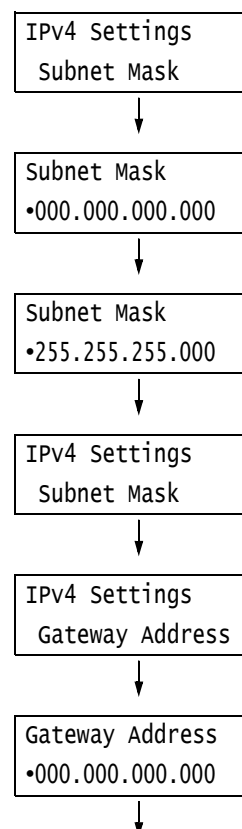
20. Enter the gateway address in the same way you entered the IP address (Example: 192.168.1.254), and press the <OK> button to confirm your entry.

```
Gateway Address
•192.168.001.254
```

21. The setup is now complete.
    Press the <Printer Settings> button to close the menu screen.
    The printer automatically restarts.

22. Print the [Configuration Report] to verify your settings.

7.5 Monitoring/Managing the Printer with a Web Browser

When your printer is in a TCP/IP environment, you can monitor or remotely configure it using a web browser on a networked computer.

This feature is called CentreWare Internet Services.

CentreWare Internet Services also can be used to check the status of consumables and the paper levels of the paper trays.

Note
- For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
- CentreWare Internet Services cannot be used when the printer is directly connected to the computer via the pararell cable or USB cable.
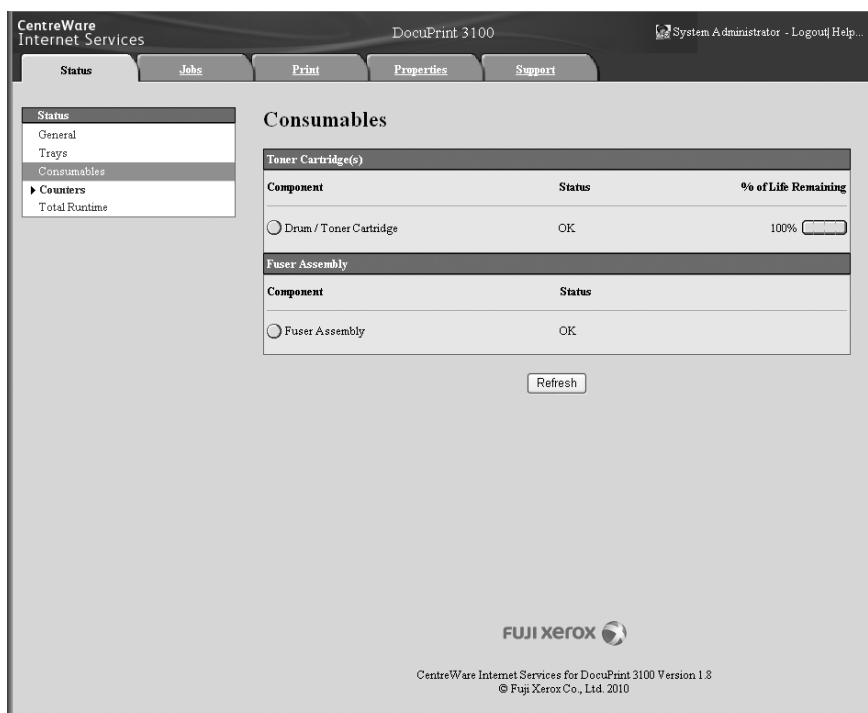
7.6 Checking Printer Status via E-mail

When the printer is on a network environment that supports e-mail, it can be configured to send e-mail to notify the computer that requests a print job that the job printing is finished. It also can be configured to send e-mail about the status of consumables, paper, and other items to a specified mail address.

This feature is called the "e-mail notification service."

Information Reported by the E-mail Notification Service

The e-mail notification service reports the following information.

Information Type	Description
Job completion notification	Reports the status (normal completion, canceled, confirmation required) when a print job is requested by a computer.
Consumable status notification	Sends notifications of preset items (consumable status, paper status, etc.) to a specified e-mail address. Toner and print cartridge status updates are sent periodically, to inform recipients when to replace them. The recipient of this notification should be the network administrator or a shared e-mail address.

Configuring the E-mail Notification Service

To use the e-mail notification service, you must configure the network and e-mail environments of the printer. Ask your network administrator to find out if the following settings have been configured.

Network Environment

• Create an e-mail account.

E-mail Environment (Printer)

Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure ports, an e-mail server, the TCP/IP environment, and the printer's e-mail address.

Configure the [Properties] below in accordance with your e-mail environment.

Note
• After configuring the settings, be sure to click [Apply], and then turn printer power off and then back on again.
• If [Alert Notification] does not appear, select the [Enabled] check box for [E-mail Notification Service] on the [Port Settings] and turn off the printer, and then turn it on.

Item	Setting	Description
Description	Administrator's E-mail Address (Recommended), Machine's E-mail Address	Refer to "Description" (P. 95) under "Configuring the Mail Print Environment" (P. 94).
General Setup > Alert Notification* > Notify Job Completion by E-mail (*: Displayed when [Enabled] is set under [E-mail Notification Service].)	Recipient's E-mail Address	Alphanumeric characters, at sign (@), dot (.), hyphen (-), and underline (_), up to 128 bytes
	Targeted Jobs	Set the targeted jobs for notification. • Print • Report
	When to Notify	Set conditions on notification. • Always • Error Only
	Message	Set the message of e-mail notification when the job completed.
General Setup > Alert Notification* > E-mail Notification for Machine Status (*: Displayed when [Enabled] is set under [E-mail Notification Service].)	Recipient's E-mail Address	Alphanumeric characters, at sign (@), dot (.), hyphen (-), and underline (_), up to 128 bytes
	Mail Notice Status Settings	Select the items to be included in notifications. • Consumables Status • Parts Status • Paper Tray Status • Output Tray Status • Jam Status • Interlock Status • Fault Notice
	Notice Frequency Settings	Mail notification interval and other settings (setting optional)
Connectivity > Port Settings	E-mail Notification Service	Select the [Enabled] check box.

Item	Setting	Description
Connectivity > Protocols > TCP/IP	Host Name, Domain Name, Obtain DNS Server Address Automatically, Obtain IPv6 DNS Server Address Automatically, Preferred DNS Server, Alternate DNS Server 1 - 2, Dynamic DNS Registration (IPv4/IPv6), Generate Domain Search List Automatically, Domain Name 1 - 3, Connection Time-Out, DNS Resolution via IPv6 First.	Refer to "Connectivity > Protocols > TCP/IP" (P. 96) under "Configuring the Mail Print Environment" (P. 94).
Connectivity > Protocols > SMTP Server	SMTP Server IP Address (Host Name), Port Number for sending E-mail, Port Number for receiving E-mail, SSL/TLS Communication, Machine's E-mail Address, Login Credentials for the Machine to access the SMTP Server to send automated e-mails, Login Name, Password	Refer to "Connectivity > Protocols > SMTP Server" (P. 98)" under "Configuring the Mail Print Environment" (P. 94) .

Registering the Login Information on the print driver (Computer)

To receive e-mail of requested print job results, use the procedure below to configure the PCL print driver properties. The procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

1. On the Windows [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] ([Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS).

2. Select the icon of the printer and then select [Properties] on the [File] menu.

3. On the [General] tab, click [Printing Preferences].
    The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Click the [Advanced] tab.

5. Specify [On] in [Notify Job Completion by E-mail].
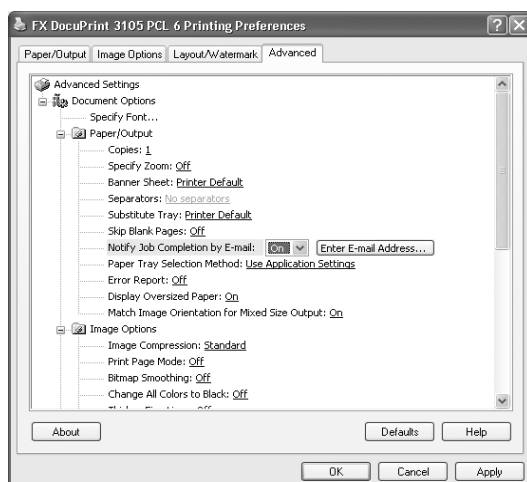
6. In [Enter E-mail Address], enter the notification mail address and then click [OK].

7. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.

7.7　　　Checking Machine Serial Number

The following describes how to check the serial number of the printer.

1. On the control panel, press the <▼> and
    <OK> buttons at the same time.
    This displays the [Consumables Menu].

2. Press <OK> button to select.
    Serial number of the printer is displayed.

3. Press the <Printer Settings> button to
    return to the [Ready to print] screen.

```
Consumables Menu
 Serial Number
```
↓
```
Serial Number
 123456
```
↓
```
Ready to print
 Toner Left ▉
```
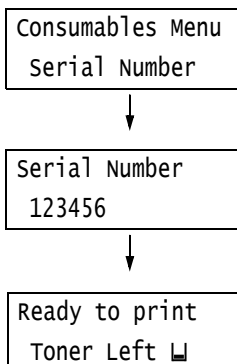
7.8 Enabling a RAM Disk

The following describes how to enable a RAM Disk.

If you enable a RAM Disk, Sample Set/Secure Print/Private Charge Print/Charge Print/
Delayed Print can be used without installing the HDD Extension Kit (optional).

Important
• When using a RAM Disk, if you turned on and off the machine, all the stored documents will be removed.

Note
• When printing a large amount of data using a RAM Disk, the data to be transferred is divided.

1. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
        |
        v
```

2. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
        |
        v
```

3. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
        |
        v
```

4. Press the <▼> button until [System Settings] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  System Settings
        |
        v
```

5. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [RAM Disk] is displayed.

```
System Settings
  RAM Disk
        |
        v
```

6. Press the <▼> button.

```
RAM Disk
  ·Disabled
        |
        v
```

7. Press the <►> or <OK> button to select. [Enabled] is displayed.

```
RAM Disk
  ·Enabled
```

8. Press the <OK> button.

Setting on the Print Driver's Property (Computer Side)

The following setting is required on the print driver's property page. You need to specify the [RAM Disk] to [Installed]. This explains the case when using Windows XP as an example.

Refer to
• Refer to the print driver's online help for more information on printerprint driver's each menu.

1. From the [Start] menu, select [Printer and FAX] ([Printer] or [Devices and printer] depending on the Operating System)].

2. Select the printer icon on this printer, and then click [Properties] from the [File] menu.

3. On the [Configuration] tab, click [Installable Options].
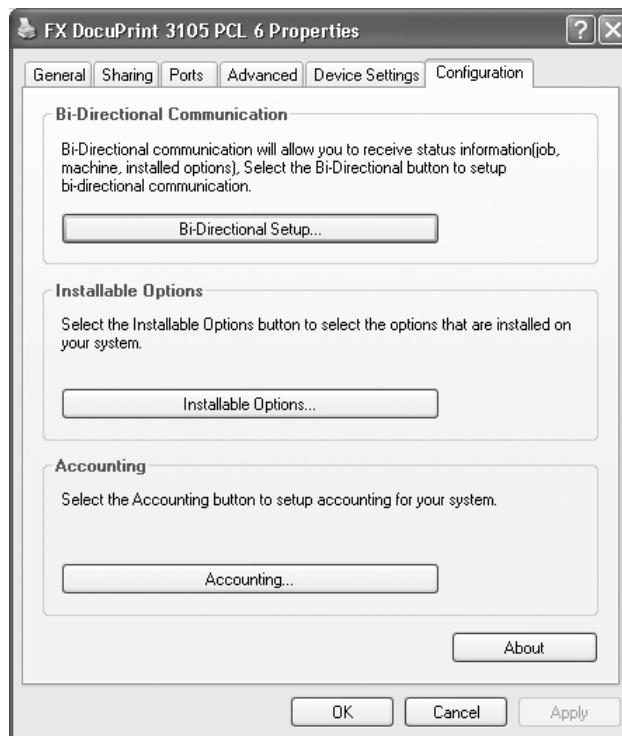
4. In the [Installable Options] dialog box, select [Installed] in the [RAM Disk].
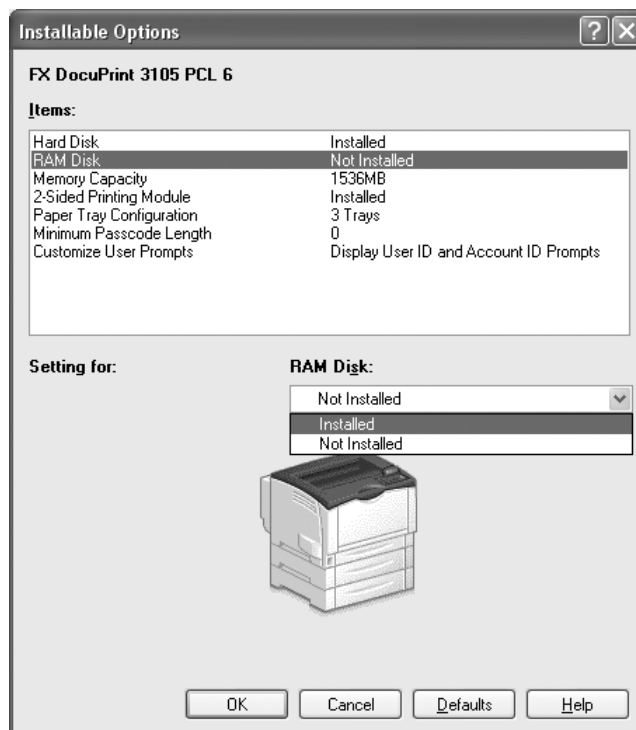
5. Click [OK].

6. Click [OK] in the Properties dialog box.

7.9 Security Features

Security Feature Overview

This section explains various security features of the printer and how to configure them. The information in this section is intended for the system administrator of the printer. For details on each feature, refer to the reference pages in the following table.

Feature	Description	Refer to
Secure Print	When printing a confidential document or document that you do not want third parties to see, you can temporarily store the document in the printer and print it after entering a password on the control panel. **Note** • The HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.	"3.5 Printing confidential documents - Secure Print -" (P. 73)
Overwrite HDD Extension Kit	Deletes data on an HDD Extension Kit (optional) by overwriting it. Overwriting can be performed multiple times to ensure that data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is completely deleted. **Note** • HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.	"[Overwrite HD]" (P. 163)
Initialize HDD Extension Kit	Initializes all data remains in the hard desk. You can also initialize all data in NV memory and the HDD Extension Kit (Delete All Data). **Note** HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.	"HDD Extension Kit" (P. 334)
Reception control by IP address	Data reception on the printer can be controlled by registering the IP address of computers that are permitted to send data.	"[IP Filter (IPv4)]" (P. 152) or "Controlling Data Reception by IP Address" (P. 278)
Control panel lock	Limit user access to the control panel using passwords.	"[Panel Settings]" (P. 155)
Limiting access by user registration	User information can be registered on the printer to limit access to CentreWare Internet Services and printing from a computer.	"7.11 Control Access to Printer Features by Pre-registering Users" (P. 301)
Image log	Jobs that are executed on the printer are saved as image data and accumulated and stored as logs along with job owner, printing time, number of copies, and other data. **Note** • The Feature Enhance Kit (optional) and the HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.	To use this feature, contact your dealer. " [Image Log Control]" (P. 171)
Watermark	Imprinting each page of a job with the date, a number, and a watermark control code (digital code) deters reproduction of confidential documents. **Note** • The Feature Enhance Kit (optional) and the HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.	"Using the Watermark Feature" (P. 279)

Feature	Description	Refer to
Force Annotation	Annotation is forcibly printed out according to the layout template associated with each job type. **Note** • The Feature Enhance Kit (optional) and the HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.	" Force Annotation Feature" (P. 285)
Audit Log	Records when, who, and how any operation is performed on the printer.	"Using the Audit Log" (P. 287)

Controlling Data Reception by IP Address

Data reception by the printer can be controlled by registering the IP address of computers that are permitted to send data. The following explains how to set this feature using CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• This setting also can be configured using the control panel in an IPv4 network environment. For information on how to configure settings on the control panel, refer to "[IP Filter (IPv4)]" (P. 152).

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• If you want to change the display language of CentreWare Internet Services, change the display language of your web browser. For information on how to change the display language of your web browser, refer the online help for the web browser.
• For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [IP Filtering].

4. Select the [Enabled] check box under [IP Filtering] for [IPv4 Filtering] or [IPv6 Filtering] and then click [Add].
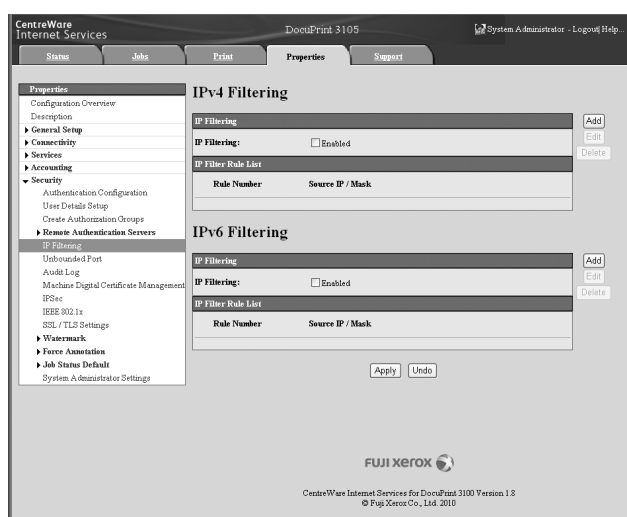
5. On the screen that appears, use [Source IP Address] to specify the IP addresses to be enabled for TCP/IP connection.

6. For [Source IP Mask], specify the address mask in prefix length format for the IP address you registered for [Source IP Address].
    Using configuration of IPv4 settings as an example, specifying 129.249.110.23 for [Source IP Address] and 24 for [Source IP Mask] allows receipt of print data from IP addresses 129.249.110.* (where * is a value from 1 through 254).

7. After all the settings are complete, click [Apply].

8. A window that prompts you to reboot the printer appears. On the window, click [Reboot Machine].
    The printer reboots and the settings you configured are reflected.

Using the Watermark Feature

The watermark feature performs hidden printing of the date and time, text, background, and digital hidden text on all pages of a print job, which deters copying of the document and can be used to trace its copy history. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Important
- Use of the watermark feature does not guarantee that all documents will be protected from copying. In accordance with document and setup conditions, the function may not work effectively. Contact your dealer for details.
- Fuji Xerox shall not be held liable for any damages due to use or inability to use the watermark feature.

Note
- The Feature Enhance Kit (optional) and HDD Extension Kit (optional) must be installed to use this feature.

This printer provides the watermark features listed below.

- Watermarking
  A pattern that is pre-registered on the printer is used to perform hidden printing of the date and background in documents. Copying the document will cause the background printing to appear, like void paper.

- Secure watermark
  By embedding a watermark control code (digital code) in addition to hidden text prohibits copying, scanning, or faxing of the output document, and facilitates tracking of its work history in the case of an information leak. Note that applicable devices and software are required to prohibit copying, scanning, and faxing of a document.

- UUID printing
UUID is an abbreviation for Universally Unique Identifier which is an assured unique128-bit value. UUID printing feature allows you to search print logs of the specific file by printing UUIDs on the document.

Watermark

This feature performs hidden printing of the date, time, and a background on all pages. Copying the printed document will cause the hidden text and background to appear.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
- If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Watermark] > [Watermark].
    The [Watermark] screen is displayed.

4. Configure the settings.

Setting	Description
Date Format	Specifies the pattern for the printing date. The format you specify here is used for all watermark features. • [20yy/mm/dd] • [dd/mm/20yy] • [mm/dd/20yy]

Default Watermark Effect	Specifies the text embedding method.
	• [Embossed]
	  Prints the text string hidden in the background as embossed text. The text string is the printed using the pattern specified by [Background Pattern].
	• [Outline]
	  Prints the text string hidden in the background as outline text. The outline text string is printed using the pattern specified by [Background Pattern].

Setting	Description
Font Size	Specifies the size of the text string printed as a watermark within the range of 24 to 80 points, in 1-point units.
Background Pattern	Specifies the background pattern to be used for the watermark hidden printing. • [Wave], [Circle], [Stripe], [Chain], [Beam], [Rhombic], [Sunflower], [Fan]
Density	Specifies the density of the text printed for the watermark. • [Lighten], [Normal], [Darken]
Watermark / Background Contrast	Specifies the contrast between the text and background for the watermark. Contrast can be set as a value from 1 to 9. **Note** • Text/background contrast can be checked by printing the [Watermark Sample List].
Client Print	Specifies whether or not watermarks are printed automatically when printing from a client computer. • [Off] • [On]
Force Print	If [Allow Device Settings to Override] is set, instruction from the client to perform Watermark or Secure Watermark features will be ignored, when [On] is specified in [Client Print] in the printer. You need TrustMarkingBasic (purchase separately) to instruct from the client to perform Watermark or Secure Watermark features. • [Allow Device Settings to Override] • [Allow Client Settings to Override] **Note** • The setting method applies to both the Watermark and Secure Watermark features.

5.   After all the settings are completed, click [Apply].

Secure Watermark

Important
• Secure Watermark does not operate correctly when printing over an IPv6 network.

This feature performs hidden printing of a watermark control code (digital code) on all pages. This feature protects the printed document by forcibly canceling any copy, scan, of fax job attempted on a watermark secure device. Should an information leak occur, a special application can be used to trace when, where, and by whom an output operation was performed.

Note
• For information about performing hidden printing of text strings, refer to "Watermark" (P. 280).
• The Fuji Xerox ApeosWare Secure Watermark Analyzer application (purchase separately) is required to analyze digital codes. Contact your dealer for details.

1.   Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.
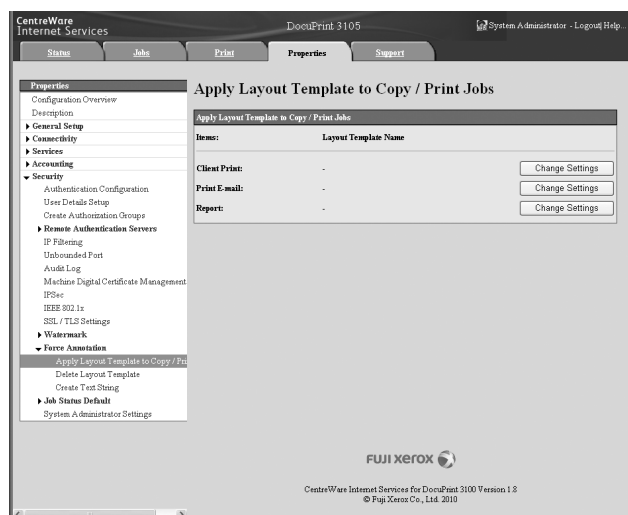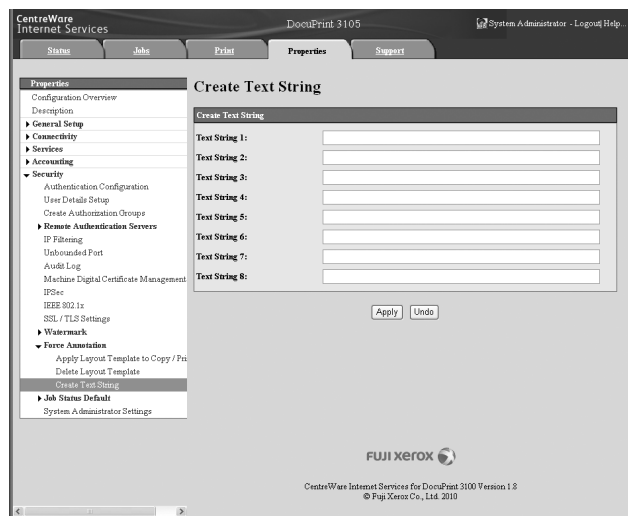
Note
• For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2.   Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Watermark] > [Secure Watermark]. The [Secure Watermark] dialog box appears.

4. Configure the settings.

Setting	Description
Decoding Passcode	Specifies a password, from 4 to 12 characters long, whose input is required to analyze document tracking information. **Note** • Tracking information cannot be analyzed on the printer. The Fuji Xerox ApeosWare Secure Watermark Analyzer application (purchase separately) is required. Contact your dealer for details.
Custom Digital Watermark	Specifies a hidden text string up to 32 characters long that can be embedded as tracking data.
Client Print	Specifies whether or not a hidden text string is automatically printed when printing from a client computer. • [Off] • [On]
Force Print	If [Allow Device Settings to Override] is set, instruction from the client to perform Watermark or Secure Watermark features will be ignored, when [On] is specified in [Client Print] in the printer. You need TrustMarkingBasic (purchase separately) to instruct from the client to perform Watermark or Secure Watermark features. • [Allow Device Settings to Override] • [Allow Client Settings to Override] **Note** • The setting method applies to both the Watermark and Secure Watermark features.
Report	Specifies whether or not a hidden text string is automatically printed when printing a list/report. • [Off] • [On]
Protection Code	Specifies whether secure watermark job execution protection is on or off. Specifying [Prevent Duplication] embeds a digital code. • [Off] • [Prevent Duplication]

Setting	Description
Default Secure Watermark	Specifies the character string embedded for hidden string printing. • [Off] • [Copy Prohibited] • [Copy] • [Duplicate] • [Custom Secure Watermark 1 - 3] **Note** • To specify your own character string, click [Create Watermark] and then enter the string you want into the dialog box that appears. Next, click [Apply].
Background Pattern	Specifies the background pattern to be used for hidden printing. • [Wave], [Circle], [Stripe], [Chain], [Beam], [Rhombic], [Sunflower], [Fan]
Secure Watermark / Background Contrast	Specifies the contrast between the text and background for the watermark. Contrast can be set as a value from 1 to 9. **Note** • Watermark/background contrast can be checked by printing the [Secure Watermark Sample List].

5.   After all the settings are completed, click [Apply].

Print Universal Unique ID

UUID is an abbreviation for Universally Unique Identifier which is an assured unique128-bit value. UUID printing feature prints UUIDs for each print job.

The printed UUIDs can be used as a search key to retrieve print job logs using an application, such as the ApeosWare Secure Watermark Analyzer application(purchase separately)

. Retrieving the image log with the UUID enables you to verify "when", "by whom", and "with what service" the document was processed. This prevents leakage of confidential information.

Note
• For information about the Image Log Control feature, refer to "Security Feature Overview" (P. 277).
• For details on hidden text printing, refer to " Watermark" (P. 280)
• UUID analysis requires a dedicated application. For details, contact your dealer.
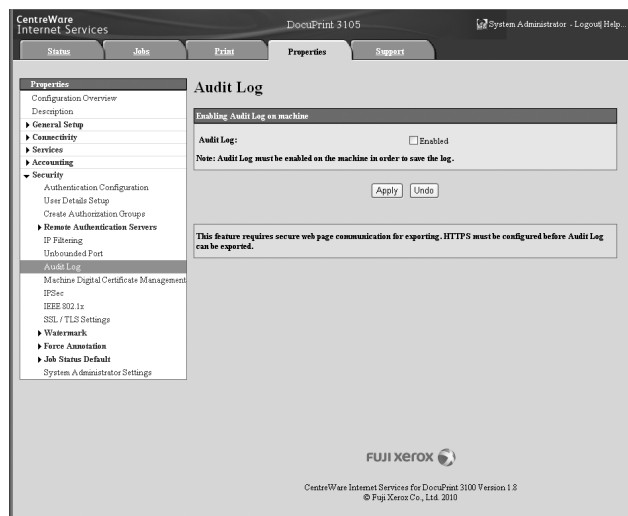
1.   Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
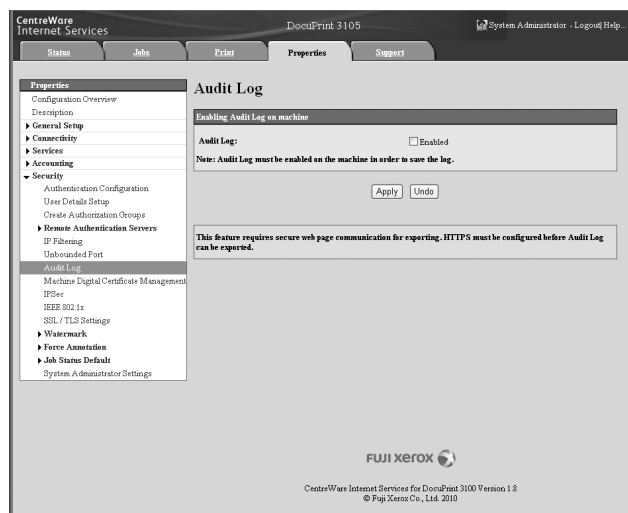• For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2.   Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Watermark] > [Universal Unique ID].
   The [Universal Unique ID] screen is displayed.

4. Configure the settings.

Setting	Description
Print Universal Unique ID	Specifies whether or not to print the UUID. • [No] • [Yes]
Print Position	Specifies the Universal Unique ID print position. • [Top Left], [Top Center], [Top Right], [Bottom Left], [Bottom Center], [Bottom Right].
Print Position Adjustment (Length Y)	Allows fine adjustment of the UUID vertical print position in the range of 0 to 100 mm.
Print Position Adjustment (Width X)	Allows fine adjustment of the UUID horizontal print position in the range of 0 to 200 mm. **Note** • With 0 mm as the edges of the paper, a larger fine adjustment value shifts the print position more towards the center of the paper. When [Top Center] or [Bottom Center] is selected as the print position, however, the horizontal fine adjustment value for the center of the paper is 100 mm. When [Top Center] or [Bottom Center] is selected as the print position, first set the fine adjustment value to 100 mm and then make fine adjustments.
Print Position (Side 2)	Specifies the reverse side UUID print position. • [Same as Side 1] • [Mirror Side 1]

5. After all the settings are completed, click [Apply].

Force Annotation Feature

Force annotation is a feature to forcibly print watermarks or user ID according to the layout template associated with each job type.

Refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services for details.

Note
- The annotation is superimposed over any printed text specified with Watermark, Secure Watermark or Print Universal Unique ID.
- The Feature Enhance Kit (optional) and HDD Extension Kit (optional) and must be installed to use this feature.

Apply Layout Template on Prints Jobs

Set the association with layout templates. You can associate layout templates with the following features.

- Client Print

- Print E-mail

- Report

Note
- Client Print is a print job sent from a computer.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
- If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Force Annotation] > [Apply Layout Template to Copy/Print Jobs].
The [Apply Layout Template to Copy/Print Jobs] screen is displayed.

4. Click [Change Settings] in [Client Print], [Print E-mail] or [Report].

5. Select [Enabled] check box for [Apply Layout Template] on the screen displayed.

6. Select Layout Template.

Note
- The layout templates, Preset 1 to Preset 4, are provided with the printer. These provided layout templates cannot be deleted.
- Some items may not be printed depending on the job type and performance conditions.
- Force annotation is not printed on a blank paper generated by the machine.
- Start time of the output job in the machine or actual start time of the print job may differ from the time you specified. The annotation is forcibly printed at start time of the output job.

Refer to
- For information about how to enter characters, refer to " Create Text String" (P. 286).

Preset1	Preset2	Preset3	Preset4
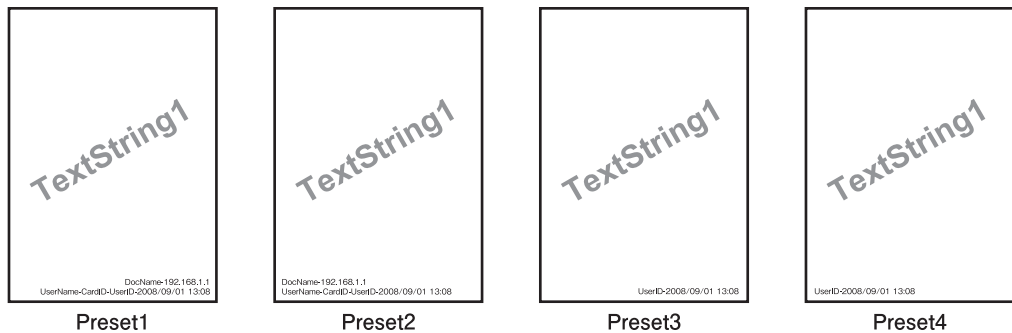
Layout Template	Items Printed
preset1 preset2	The string registered on [Create Text String] > [Text String1] is printed as watermark at an angle in the center of paper. The following items are printed at the bottom right for Preset 1 or bottom left for Preset 2 of paper. • first line: file name and the IP address of the computer that send a print job • second line: user name, card ID, user ID and date and time
preset3 preset4	The string registered on [Create Text String] > [Text String1] is printed as watermark at an angle in the center of paper. The following items are printed at the bottom right for Preset 3 or bottom left for Preset 4 of paper. • user ID and date and time

7. After all the settings are completed, click [Apply].

Delete Layout Template

This feature is not available with the printer.

Create Text String

Register text strings for the Force Annotation feature.

Important

- Text string available is only [Text String 1] for the printer. [Text String 2] to [Text String 8] are not available.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
- If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Force Annotation] > [Create Text String]. The [Create Text String] screen is displayed.

4. Enter text string to register.

Note
• You can enter up to 64 single-byte characters.

5. After all the settings are completed, click [Apply].

Using the Audit Log

The Audit Log makes it possible to track when, by whom, and what type of operations were performed on the printer. The Audit Log lets you monitor printer operations to detect unauthorized use or attempted unauthorized use.

Important
• Fuji Xerox shall not be held liable for any damages due to use or inability to use the Audit Log feature.

Note
• Up to 50 entries are maintained in the log. When an the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed, up to 15,000 entries can maintained in the log. When the maximum number of log entries is reached, each new entry causes the oldest entry to be deleted.
• The HTTPS setting must be configured in order to output the Audit Log. For details about the setting procedure, refer to "Configuring HTTP Communication Encryption Settings" (P. 293) or the online help for CentreWare Internet Services. This feature is not supported on the model available in China.

Enabling the Audit Log

In order to use the Audit Log, you first need to use the following procedure to enable it.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• If you do not know how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3.   On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Audit Log].
     The [Audit Log] screen is displayed.

4.   Select the [Enabled] check box for [Audit Log] under [Enabling Audit Log on machine]
     and then click [Apply].

Outputting the Audit Log

Audit Log data can be output as text data (auditfile.txt).

Note
• This feature is not supported on the model available in China.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Audit Log].
   The [Audit Log] screen is displayed.

4. For [Export Audit Log], click [Link to].
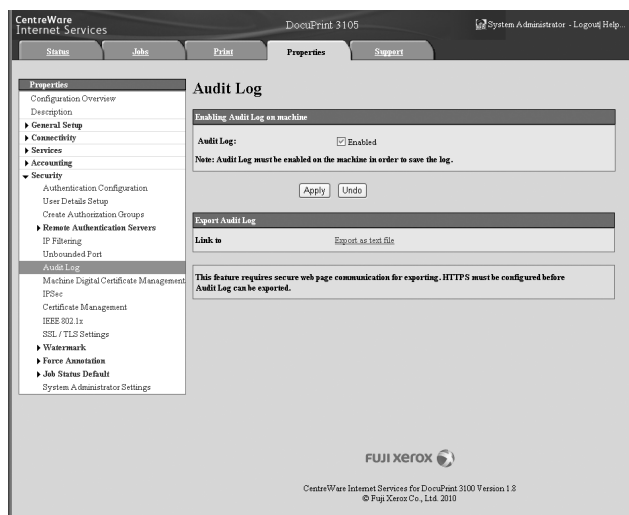
5. On the [File Download] screen that appears, click [Save] to save the Audit Log data (auditfile.txt).
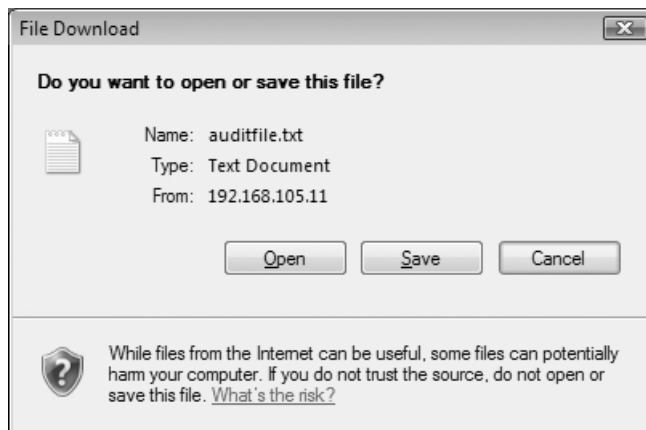
6. Check the Audit Log data.

```
auditfile[1] - Notepad
File   Edit   Format   View   Help
3        192.168.105.11    windows-1252    600      DD/MM/YYYY

Log ID   Date      Time      Audit Event ID   Logged Events   User Name        Description      Status    Optionally
Logged Items
1         16/12/2010          11:37:55 0x0301   Audit Policy     KO       Audit Log Enabled  -
2         16/12/2010          11:38:02 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
3         16/12/2010          11:38:57 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
4         16/12/2010          11:41:52 0x0101   System Status    -        Started normally (warm boot)-              -
5         16/12/2010          11:41:55 0x0401   Job Status       PS Initialize    -        Completed       a7800e4a-
08b5-11e0-8000-080037608479          Owned    -
6         16/12/2010          11:44:46 0x0201   Login/Logout     11111    Login    Failed    CWIS     192.168.105.10
Local    -
7         16/12/2010          11:45:07 0x0201   Login/Logout     KO       Login    Successful    CWIS
192.168.105.10    Local    System Administrator
8         16/12/2010          11:45:22 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
9         16/12/2010          11:46:27 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
10        16/12/2010          11:49:57 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
11        16/12/2010          11:50:53 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
12        16/12/2010          11:55:45 0x0501   Device Settings   KO       View Security Setting      Successful
CWIS     192.168.105.10
```

Stored Information in the Audit Log

The following information is stored in the audit log.

Stored information		Description
Start/End of Operating Device	Start	Information on when the device was powered on and became printable.
	End	Information on when the device was powered off.
User Authentication	Log in/Log out	Users' log-in/log-out Information while authentication system is activated; For example, a Smart Card authentication to perform Private Charge Print.
	KO authentication lock	Information that the system administrator user ID is locked after the consecutive failure of attempts to authenticate the ID up to limited times.
	Detected unauthorized access (invasion) to the computer system	Information on consecutive SNMP autentication failures
Activate/Deactivate Audit Log	Change of activate/ deactivate settings	Configuring (enabled/disabled) the audit log function on the CentreWare Internet Services
End Job	Print	Information on end of print job
	Report	Information that the reported is printed
Change/Reference of Device Settings	Change of time settings	Information that time setting has been changed within the control panel, time setting server or MIB
	User information	Informaiton that user information is registered, changed, or removed.
	Change of user authentication	Information on change of settings related to authentication
	Change of security settings/Reference	Information that users access to the menus relevant to security or change the settings using control panel or CentreWare Internet Services.
Access to Stored Device Data	Registering/ deleting a certification	Information that the certification being registered or removed
	Retrieving audit logs	Information on retrieving the audit logs
Change of Device Configuration	Detection of HDD Extension Kit (optional) replacement	Information that the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed or replaced.
	Change of ROM versions	Information on when the ROM version is modified, including the case of upgrading software such as firmware

7.10 Configuring Encryption Settings

Note
• This feature is not supported on the model available in China.

Types of Certificate

To use the Encryption feature on the printer, a certificate is required.

The following two types of device certificate can be used on the printer.

• A Self-signed certificate created by CentreWare Internet Services (valid for one year)

• A certificate issued by another CA

When you use a certificate issued by another CA, import the certificate using CentreWare Internet Services.

Refer to
• For more information on how to import a certificate, refer to the help of CentreWare Internet Services.

The following device certificates are available depending on types of certificate.

Types of Certificate	Self-Signed Certificate	Certificate Issued by Another CA
Encrypting HTTP communications from a client to the machine (SSL/TLS server)	O	O
Encrypting HTTP communications from the machine to a remote server (SSL/TLS client)	X	O
Encryption using IPSec	X	r*

O: Available r: Set as necessary X: Not available
*: Available when [IKE Authentication Method] is set to [Authenticate by Digital Signature].

About Encryption

Data can be encrypted for communication between the printer and computers over a network.

■ Encryption of client-to-printer HTTP communication (SSL/TLS server)

Enabling the SSL/TLS communication feature of the printer makes it possible to encrypt HTTP communication between the printer and computers over a network.

Ports that use the printer's HTTP server are the SOAP port, Internet service (HTTP) port, and IPP port.

SSL/TLS protocol is used for encryption of HTTP communication between a client and the printer.

To encrypt communication, you can use either a self-signed certificate or a certificate issued by another CA.

Note
• To use a previously created certificate, use CentreWare Internet Services to import it. For more information, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.
• Encrypting HTTP communication makes it possible to encrypt communication data (SSL encrypted communication) when printing with the IPP port.
• An issued certificate is valid for 1 year.

■ Encryption of printer-to-LDAP-server HTTP communication (SSL/ TLS client)

SSL/TLS protocol is used for encryption of HTTP communication between LDAP server and the printer.

Normally it is not necessary to configure certificate settings. However, if LDAP server is configured to request authentication of an SSL client, you will need to use CentreWare Internet Services to import the printer's existing SSL/TLS client certificate and configure its settings.

Also, to perform certificate validation and validate LDAP server, you need to validate LDAP server's SSL/TLS server certificate by registering its root certificate on the printer from CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• Refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services for information about how to use it to import a certificate issued by another CA.

■ Encryption Using IPSec

IPSec can be used to encrypt communications with the printer.

An IKE authentication pre-shared key or digital signature can be selected with the printer. A printer IPSec certificate is required in order to select a digital signature.

Use CentreWare Internet Services to import a certificate issued by another CA. In order to encrypt by using digital signature, a root certificate for IPSec server to accept is required. Self-signed certificate or a certificate issued by another CA cannot be used.

Note
• Refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services for information about how to use it to import a certificate.

Configuring HTTP Communication Encryption Settings

This section explains how to configure settings for encrypting HTTP communications.

Configuring Printer Settings

On the printer, configure settings for the certificate.

The example here shows how to use CentreWare Internet Services to create a self-signed certificate and enable SSL/TLS communication. For details about each setting, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• You also can use CentreWare Internet Services to import existing certificates. For details about importing existing certificates, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Important
• Internet Explorer cannot be used in the OS environment of MacOS X 10.2 when performing SSL communication using a self-signed certificate created on the printer or when the certificate character codes are written with UTF-8.
• This is because the certificate character code (UTF-8) cannot be recognized. When performing these communication in the OS environment of MacOS X 10.2, use Netscape 7 instead of Internet Explorer.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Machine Digital Certificate Management]. The [Machine Digital Certificate Management] screen is displayed.
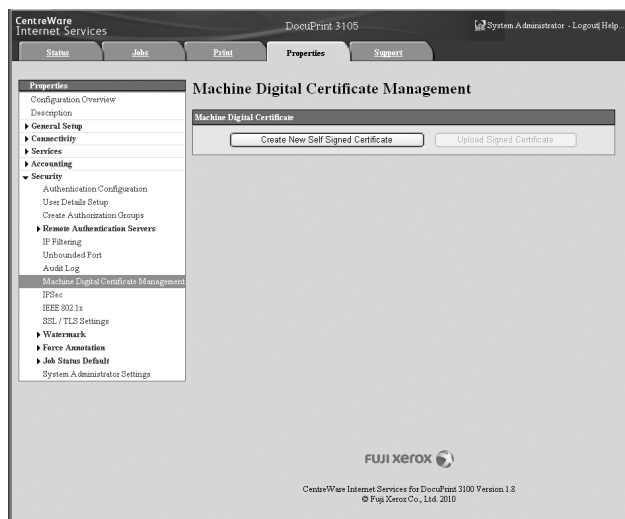
4. Create the certificate. Click [Create New Self Signed Certificate].

5. On the screen that appears, set [Public Key Size] and configure the [Issuer] and [Days of Validity] setting, and then click the [Apply] button.

Note
• If you do not want to apply your new settings and want to reset them to the original values, click [Undo].
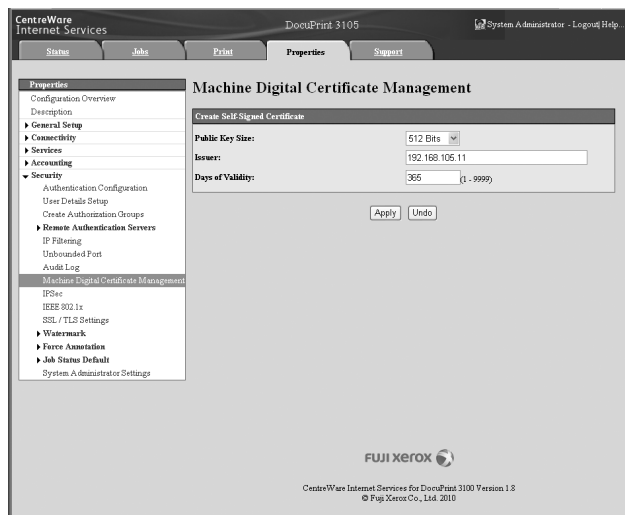
6. After updating the settings, refresh the web browser.

7. From the menu on the [Properties] tab, click [Security] > [SSL/TLS Settings].

8. Select the [Enabled] check box for [HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication], and then click [Apply].
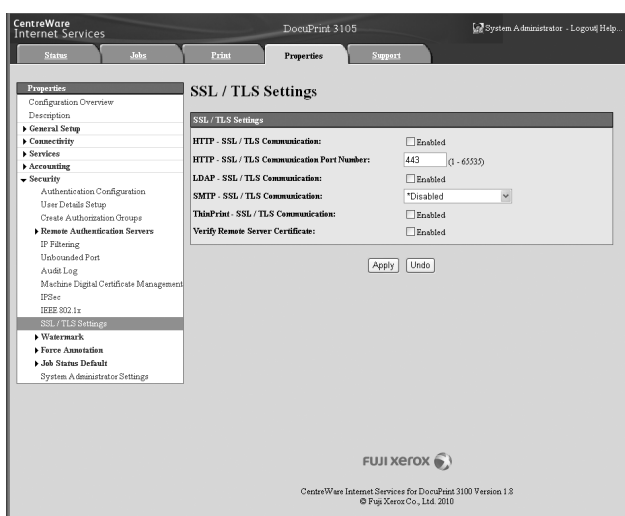
9. A window that prompts you to reboot the printer appears. On the window, click [Reboot Machine].
The printer reboots and the settings you configured are reflected.

Note
• If you reboot CentreWare Internet Services, [Certificate Management] will appear for [Security] on the [Properties] tab. [Certificate Management] can be used to view and select certificate data, and to export and delete certificates.

Accessing CentreWare Internet Services when Data Encryption is Enabled

When HTTP communication is encrypted, enter "https" instead of "http" before the address when accessing CentreWare Internet Services.

• Example of IP address: https://192.168.1.100/

  (Replace the above "192.168.1.100" with IP address of your printer.)

• Example of Internet address: https://xxx.yyyy.zz.vvv/

Configuring Settings to Encrypt Communication Data for Printing with the IPP Port

Encrypting HTTP communication makes it possible to encrypt communication data when printing with the IPP port.
If the printer's IPP port is disabled (the default is [Disabled]), enable the report using the procedure under "1.5 Enabling Ports" (P. 37).
Next, install a print driver on your computer and specify IPP as the output port.
The following describes how to install a print driver on your computer. The procedure uses Windows XP as an example.

Note
• For information on how to install a print driver on your computer, refer to 'CD-ROM Documentation (HTML)' on the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM.

1. On the Windows [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] ([Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS).

2. Under [Printer Tasks], select [Add a printer].

3. In the [Add Print Wizard] window, click [Next].

4. Select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer], and then click [Next].

5. Select [Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network], and then enter the following URL into [URL]:
    https://IP_Address/ipp/ (where IP_Address is the IP address of the printer).
    Then click [Next].

```
Add Printer Wizard

Specify a Printer
   If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer
   that meets your needs.

What printer do you want to connect to?

  ○ Browse for a printer

  ○ Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):
     Name: [                          ]
           Example: \\server\printer

  ● Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:
     URL: [ https://192.168.1.100/ipp/ ]
          Example: http://server/printers/myprinter/.printer

                          [ < Back ]  [ Next > ]  [ Cancel ]
```

6. Click [Have Disk].

7. In the dialog box that appears, enter (CD-ROM drive name): (folder where print driver is stored), and then click [OK].

8. Select the print driver, and then click [OK].

9. Specify whether to use this printer as the default printer by selecting [Yes] or [No], and then click [Next].

10. Click [Finish].

Configuring IPSec for Encryption

This section explains how to configure settings for encryption using IPSec.

Note
• This feature can be used with Windows Vista, Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2 only.

Configuring Computer Settings

Use Windows Vista, Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2 to configure IPSec settings. For more information, refer to Window Vista, Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2 online help.

Configuring Printer Settings

Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure IPSec settings.

An IKE authentication pre-shared key or digital signature can be selected from the printer. Selecting digital signature requires a certificate for the printer. First, refer to "Configuring HTTP Communication Encryption Settings" (P. 293) and configure certificate settings and then configure IPSec settings.

Selecting pre-shared key requires pre-issuance of the pre-shared key. Contact your administrator. After that, configure IPSec settings.

■ Configuring Certificate Settings

After using CentreWare Internet Services to configure HTTP communication encryption settings, import a certificate issued by another CA to the printer and configure it as the IPSec certificate.

In order to encrypt by using digital signature, a root certificate for IPSec server to accept is required. Self-signed certificate cannot be used.

Note
- For information on how to encrypt HTTP communication, refer to "Configuring HTTP Communication Encryption Settings" (P. 293).
- For details about CentreWare Internet Services setting items, refer to its online help.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
- If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Machine Digital Certificate Management]. The [Machine Digital Certificate Management] screen is displayed.
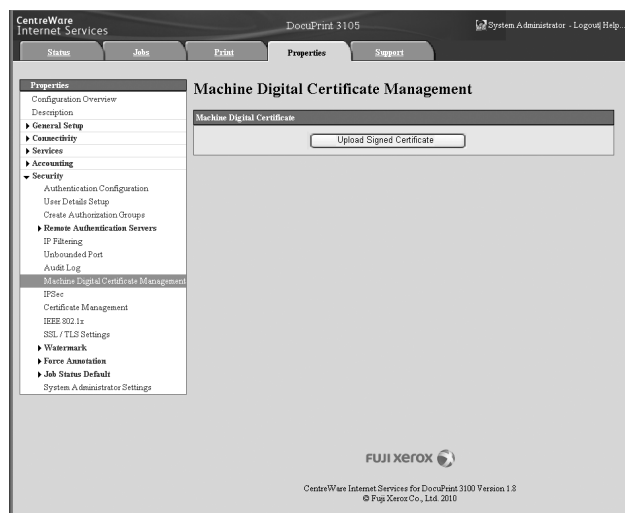
4. Click [Upload Signed Certificate].

5.	On the screen that appears, specify the [Password] and the file name of the certificate to be imported, and then click [Import].
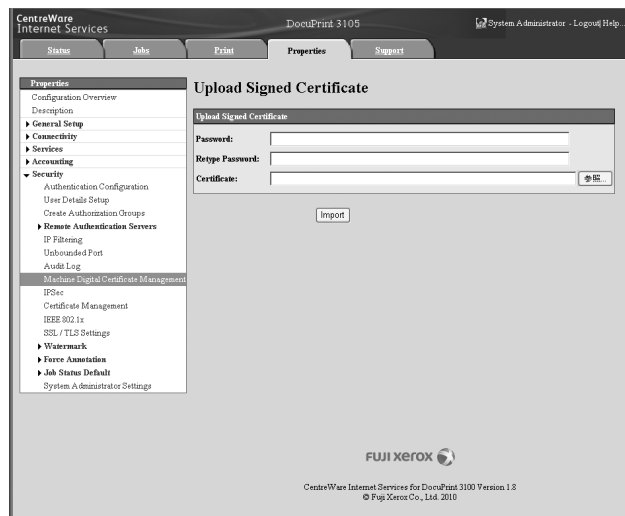
6.	Refresh your web browser.

7.	From the menu on the [Properties] tab, click [Security] > [Certificate Management]. The [Certificate Management] screen is displayed.
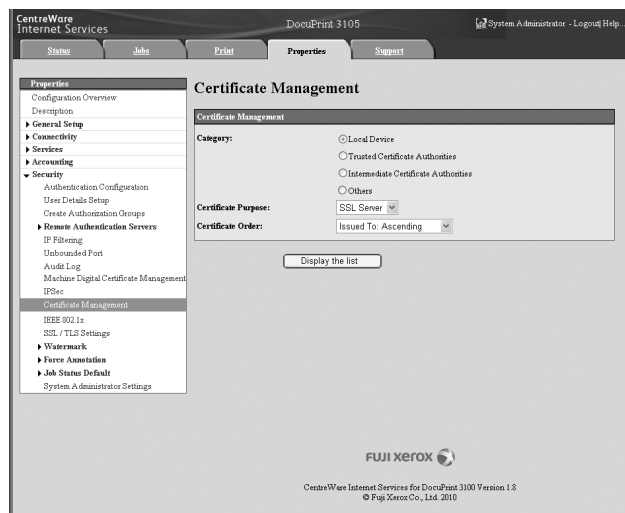
8.	Select [Local Device] for [Category] and [IPSec] for [Certificate Purpose], and then click [Display the list].

9.	Select the check box for the certificate to be set, and then click [Certificate Details].

10.	Click [Use this certificate].

11.	A window that prompts you to reboot the printer appears. On the window, click [Reboot Machine].
	The printer reboots and the settings you configured are reflected.
	This sets the certificate for IPSec. Next, configure IPSec settings. Jump to step 3 of the procedure in the next page.

■ Configuring IPSec Settings

Use CentreWare Internet Services to configure IPSec settings.

Note
• For details about CentreWare Internet Services setting items, refer to its online help.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• If you do not know how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [IPSec].
   The [IPSec] screen is displayed.
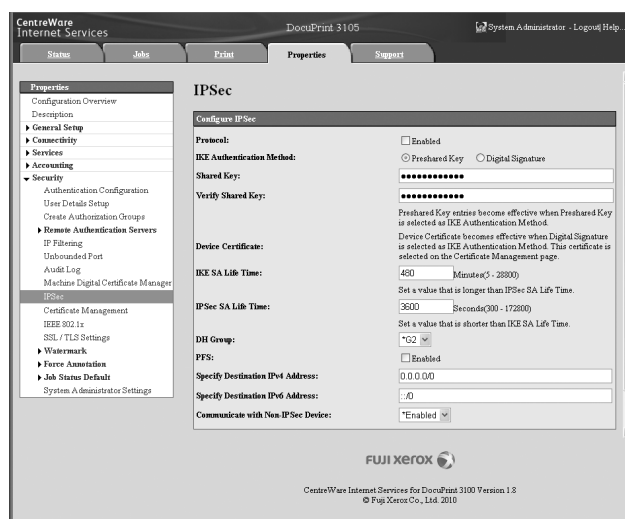
4. Select the [Enabled] check box for [Protocol].

5. Select [Preshared Key] or [Digital Signature] for [IKE Authentication Method].

6. If you select [Preshared Key] for [IKE Authentication Method], enter the IPsec communication pre-shared key for [Shared Key] and [Verify Shared Key].

7. For [IKE SA Life Time], enter a value from 5 to 28800 (minutes).

8. For [IPSec SA Life Time], enter a value from 300 to 172800 (seconds).

Note
• Make sure that the time entered here is no greater than the [IKE SA Lifetime] value.

9. For [DH Group], select [G1] or [G2].

10. Selecting the [Enabled] check box for [PFS] enables the PFS feature.

11. For [Specify Destination IPv4 Address] or [Specify Destination IPv6 Address], enter the IP address of the other party to the communication.

Note
• To communicate with all other parties using IPSec, set either [0.0.0.0/0] (for IPv4) or [;;/0] (for IPv6).

12. For [Communicate with Non-IPSec Device], select whether or not to communicate with non-IPSec devices.

13. After all the settings are completed, click [Apply].

Note

• If you do not want to apply your new settings and want to reset them to the original values, click [Undo].

14. A window that prompts you to reboot the printer appears. On the window, click [Reboot Machine].
The printer reboots and the settings you configured are reflected.

7.11 Control Access to Printer Features by Pre-registering Users

The printer includes an Authentication feature that uses pre-registered user information to control access to printer features. An Auditron Administration feature, which works in concert with the Authentication feature, makes it possible to manage the access status of each feature.

This section provides an overview of the Authentication and Auditron Administration features and the settings required for both features.

Important
• Do not change accounting mode while documents are stored in the printer.
  Either print or delete all stored documents before you change accounting mode.

Overview of Authentication and Auditron Administration Feature

Controlled Features

The Authentication and Auditron Administration features control use of the following features.

■ CentreWare Internet Services Access

Any attempt to access the printer using a web browser displays a login window that requires input of a user ID and password. Use of CentreWare Internet Services is limited to users who are registered on the printer and administrators only.

■ Printing from a Computer

Depending on the type of your print job, the use of the following features is controlled.

Job Type	Controlled Features
Printing using the print driver	The print driver must be used to configure login information, such as user ID and password. Only jobs with login information that matches the information registered on the printer can be printed. When color printing is prohibited, printing is possible in monochrome only. When a maximum number of print pages is specified, further printing is not possible after the number of prints reaches the maximum.
Printing without using a print driver (Mail Print, etc.)	Such printing is allowed when the [Enabled] check box is selected for the CentreWare Internet Services [Non-account Print] setting. The [Enabled] check box is cleared under initial default settings.

Auditron Administration Feature

When the Authentication and Auditron Administration features are enabled, you can print the [Auditron Report (Print Jobs)] instead of the [Meter Report (Print Jobs)].

The [Auditron Report (Print Jobs)] lists the number of monochrome and color pages /sheets printed to date by each user.

The counts of this report start from the last time data was initialized.

Refer to
• Printing procedure: "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)
• Data initialization: "Initializing [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] Data" (P. 265)

DocuPrint 3105
Auditron Report (Print Jobs)

Date of Initialization: 2010/10/27 4:24 PM				Date &Time : 2010/11/15 9:35 AM
				Page : 1(Last Page)
Non-account Print	Off			
# User Name	User ID	Account Limit	Total Impressions	Sheets Printed
Report			1	1
KO			0	0
Total			1	1

Configuring Authentication and Auditron Administration Settings

Configuring Accounting Type Settings

To enable the Authentication and Audit

• Set to [Local Accounting] in [System Settings] > [Accounting] > [Accounting Type]

• Set to [Local Accounts] in [System Settings] > [Authentication] > [Login Type]

Registering User Information on the Printer

After setting [Local Accounting] and [Local Accounts] on the control panel, you will be able to use CentreWare Internet Services to register user information.

Note
• For details about each setting item, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
• For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
• If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Authentication Configuration].
   The [Authentication Configuration> Step 1 of 2] screen is displayed.

4. To enable printing of jobs that do not have user names and passwords, select the [Enabled] check box for [Non-account Print].

5. Click [Next].
   The [Authentication Configuration> Step 2 of 2] screen is displayed.

6. Configure the [Account Number] setting and then click [Edit].

7. On the screen that appears, configure each of the settings and then click [Apply].

Note
- The user ID and password set on this page are also used by the print driver.
- To discard any changes in the settings and revert to original (pre-change) settings, click [Undo].

8. To register more users, repeat steps 5 through 7.

Create Authorization Group and Association with Users

After setting [Local Accounting] and [Local Accounts] on the control panel, you will be able to use CentreWare Internet Services to register the authorization group to associate with users.

By registering the authorization group which is allowed to temporarily disable active settings and associating it with users, users are authorized to temporarily disable active settings.

Note
- For details about each setting item, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

1. Launch your web browser and access CentreWare Internet Services.

Note
- For information on how to access CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "1.6 Configuring the Printer Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P. 38).
- If you are prompted to enter the administrator's ID and password, enter them and click [OK].

2. Click the [Properties] tab.

3. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Create Authorization Groups].
   The [Create Authorization Groups] screen is displayed.
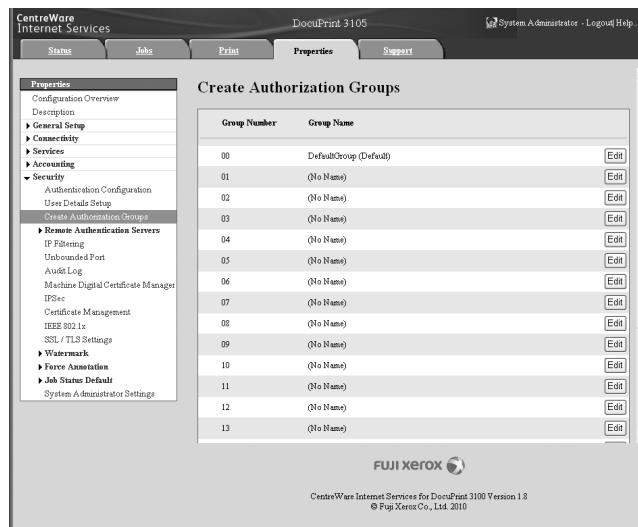
4. Click the [Edit] button of the group not registered.
   [Authorization Setup] screen is displayed.
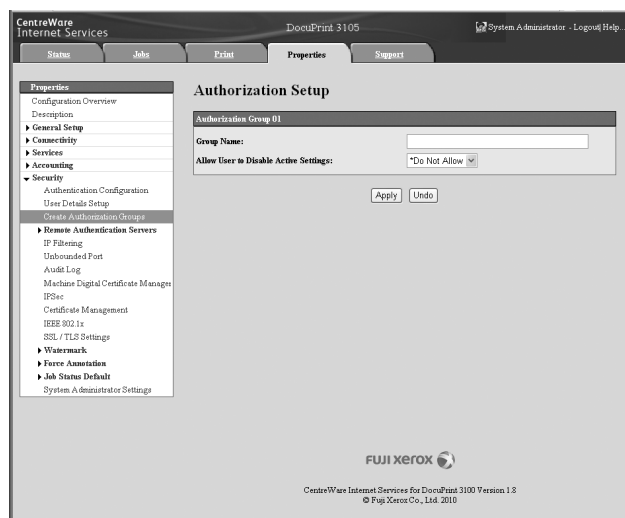
5. Enter a group name into [Group Name].

6. Configure the [Allow] setting in [Allow User to Disable Active Settings].

7. Click [Apply].
   Authorization group having authorization to temporarily disable active settings is created.

8. On the menu on the left, click [Security] > [Authentication Configuration].
The [Authentication Configuration> Step 1 of 2] screen is displayed.
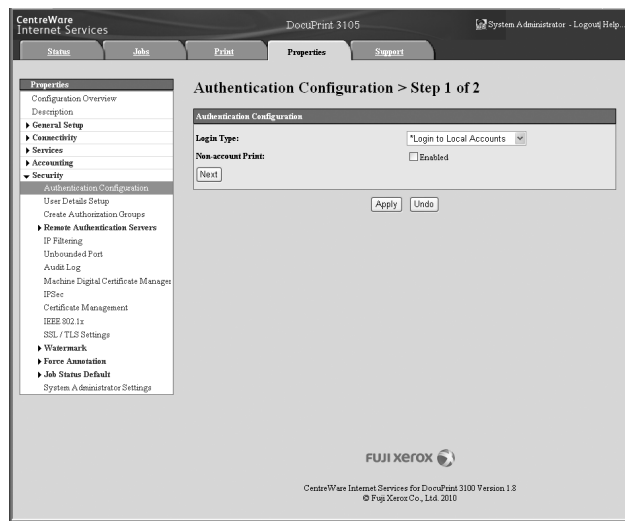
9. Click [Next].
The [Authentication Configuration> Step 2 of 2] screen is displayed.

10. Configure the [Account Number] setting and then click [Edit].

11. In the [Add This User to Authorization Group], select the authorization group registered in Step 7 and then click [Apply].
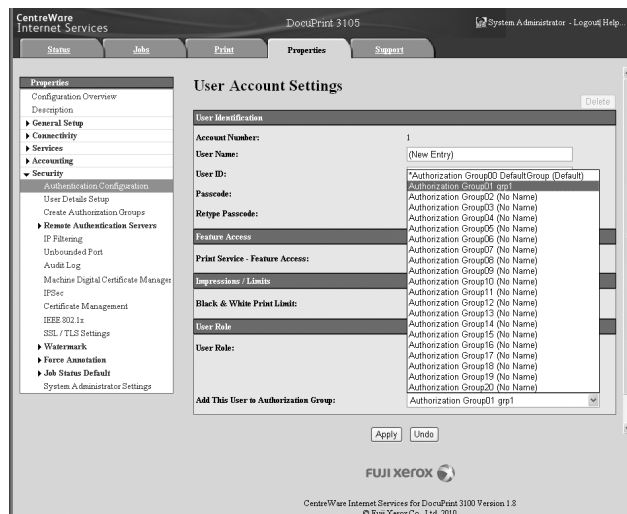
Note
• To discard any changes in the settings and revert to original (pre-change) settings, click [Undo].

12. To register more users, repeat steps 10 through 11.

Configuring Login Information with the Print Driver (Computer)

Configure the following settings on the Properties dialog box of your print driver. The printer will not print unless the user ID and password entered on your print driver match those registered on the printer. The procedure uses Windows XP as an example.
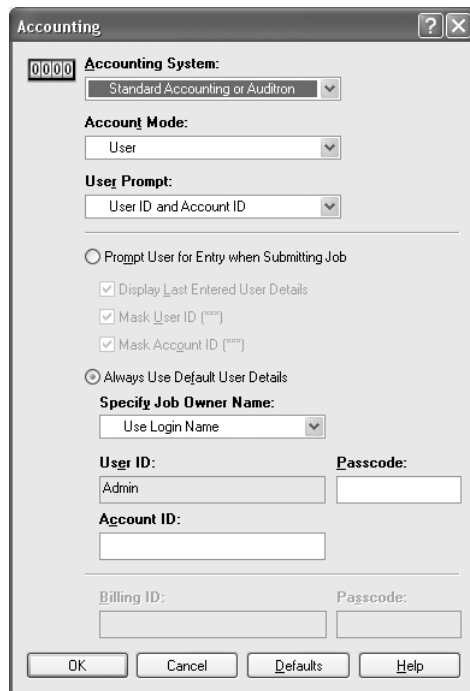
Note
• For information on each setting of the print driver, refer to the online help of the print driver.

1. On the Windows [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] (Select [Printer] or [Devices and Printers] depending on OS).

2. Select the icon of the printer and then select [Properties] on the [File] menu.

3. On the [Configuration] tab, click [Accounting].
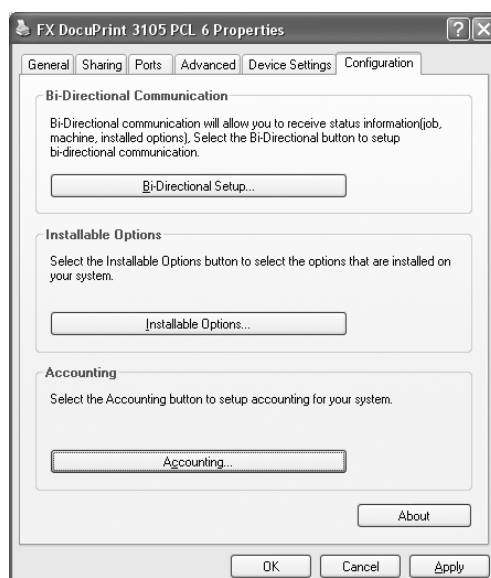
4. On the [Accounting] dialog box that appears, configure each item and then click [OK].

5. Click [OK] to close the Properties dialog box.

7.12　Cleaning the Printer

This section explains how to clean the printer to keep it in good condition and to ensure optimum print quality.

⚠ WARNING
- When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.

⚠ CAUTION
- When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

Cleaning the Exterior of the Printer

Clean the exterior of the printer at least once a month. To clean the exterior surfaces, wipe them with a soft cloth moistened with water, which has been firmly wrung to eliminate excess liquid. Next, wipe off any remaining water with a soft dry cloth. If dirt or smudges do not come off easily, gently wipe them off with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral cleaner.

Important
- Do not spray cleaning agents directly onto the printer. The fluid may seep through the cracks and cause problems. Use only neutral cleaning agents.
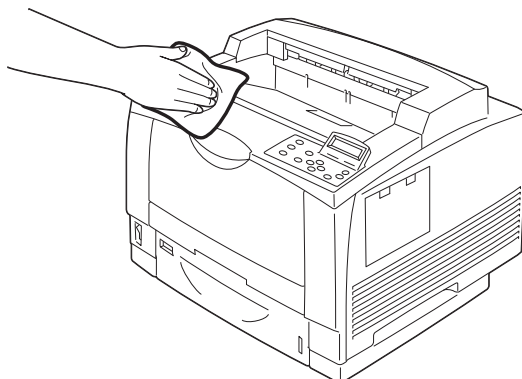
Cleaning the Interior of the Printer

Following the removal of a paper jam or the replacement of the print cartridge, inspect the inside of the printer before closing cover A.

- If any pieces of paper are left inside the printer, remove them.
- If there is any dust or stains inside the printer, wipe them with a soft clean cloth.
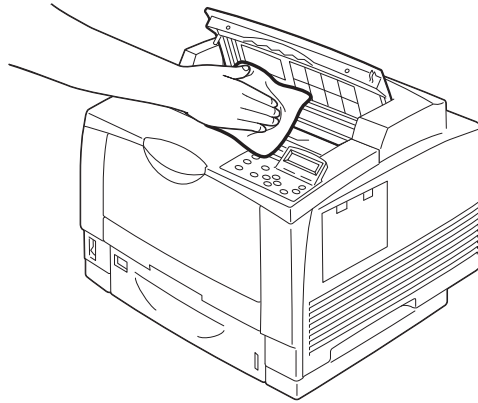
Cleaning the Feed Rollers

Cleaning of the Tray Feed Roller Unit

Feeding illustrated postcards or paper with a lot of paper dust may cause image transfer prevention powder or dust to adhere to the paper rollers and make paper feed impossible.

If paper feed becomes impossible, thoroughly wipe the paper feed rollers with a moistened and then thoroughly wrung cloth using the procedure described below.

There are paper feed rollers in 2 locations inside the printer and 1 location inside each paper tray.

If optional tray modules are installed, there is the same number of tray retard roller for each tray module.

Inside the printer   Paper tray module (optional)

2 rollers for paper tray

2 rollers for each tray for the tray module (optional)
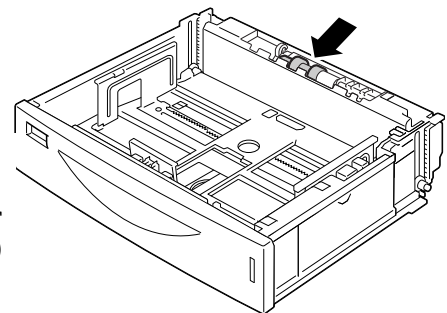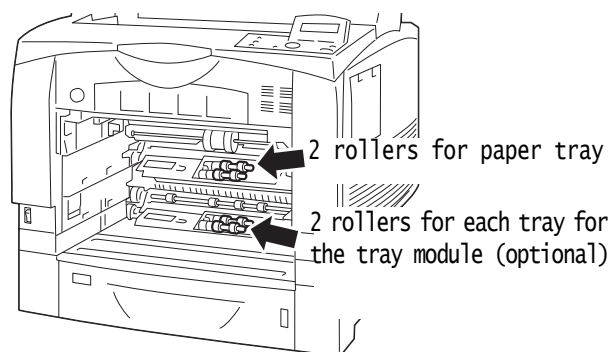
1. Pull out the paper tray from the printer.
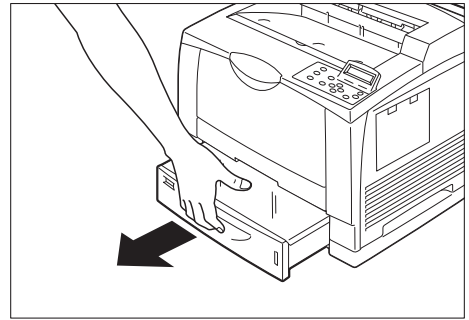
2. Let the tray retard roller of the paper tray face toward you.
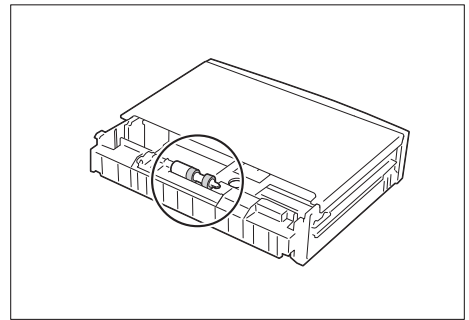
3. Rotate the tray retard roller until the tab faces upward.
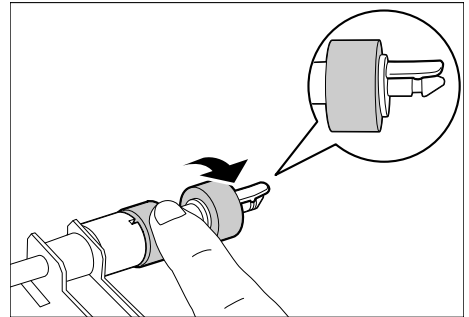
4. While pushing down the black portion next to the rollers with your left hand (1), unlock the tab by pulling it up toward you with your right-hand index finger (2), then gently slide the tray retard roller rightward to remove it from the axle (3).
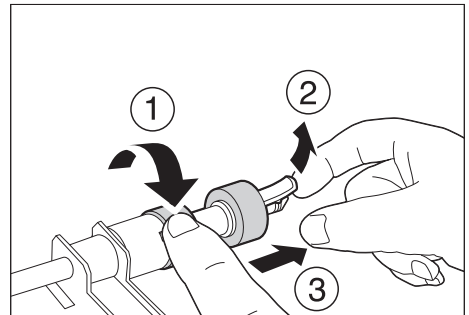
5. Gently wipe surface of the rubber rollers in circumferential direction with a soft damp cloth.
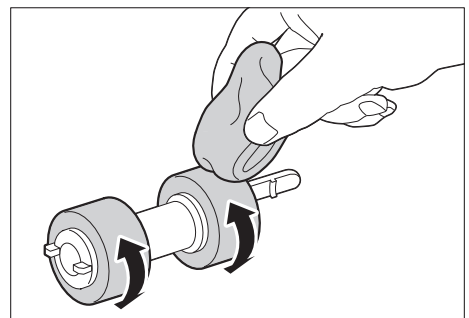
6. While pushing down the black portion next to the rollers with your left hand (1), slip the cleaned rollers on the axle (2).
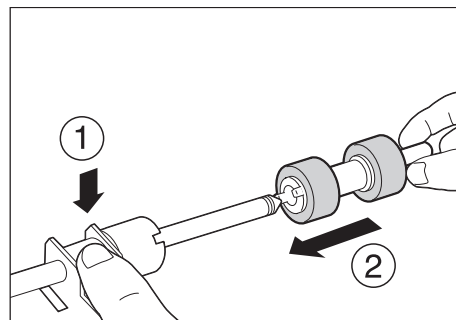
7. While aligning the projection on the tray retard roller with the notch on the axle (1), and keeping the tab up.(2), slip the tray retard roller all the way on the axle.
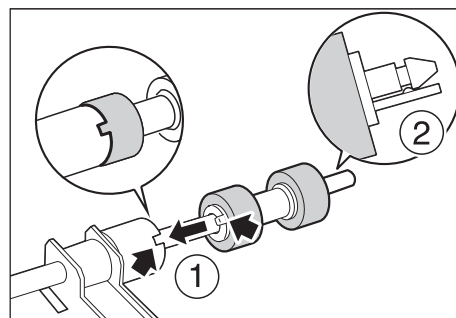
8. Firmly push the paper tray all the way back into the printer.
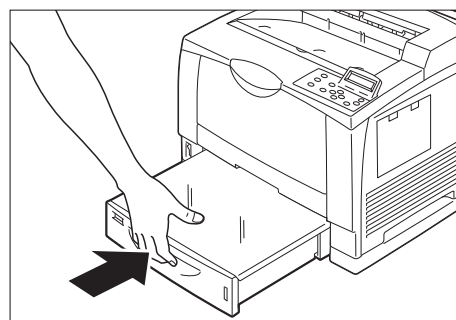
Cleaning the Bypass Feed Roller Unit

Feeding illustrated postcards or paper with a lot of paper dust may cause image transfer prevention powder or dust to adhere to the paper rollers and make paper feed impossible.

If paper feed becomes impossible, thoroughly wipe the paper feed rollers and retard rollers with a moistened and then thoroughly wrung cloth using the procedure described below.

1. Open the bypass tray.
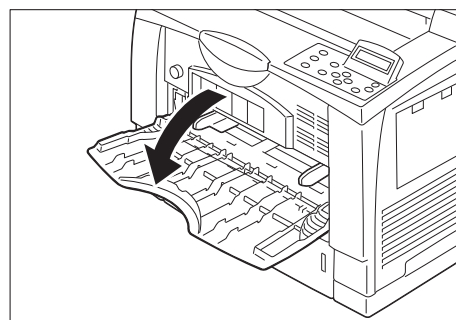
2. Grasping the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, pull out the tray up to the position where it stops.
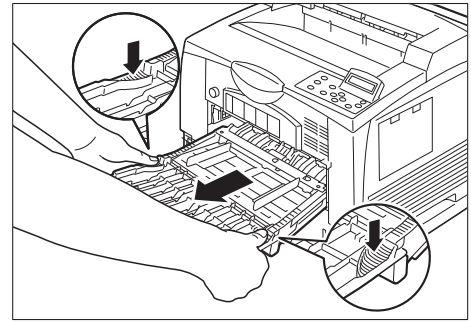
3. Reposition your hands as shown in the illustration and pull up the bypass tray at an angle.
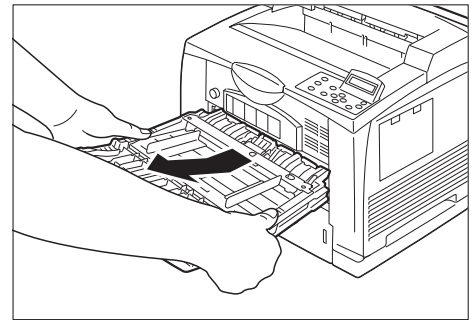
4. Pull out the paper tray.
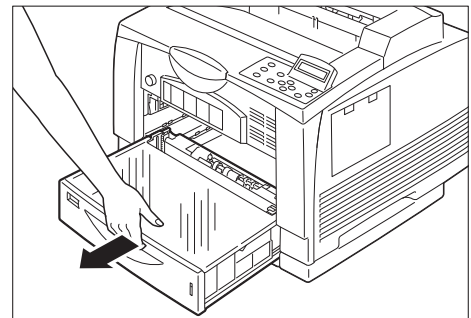
Cleaning the Tray Feed Rollers and Nudger Rollers (Standard)

1. Gently wipe surface of the rubber rollers with a soft damp cloth while letting each of the rollers rotate little by little.
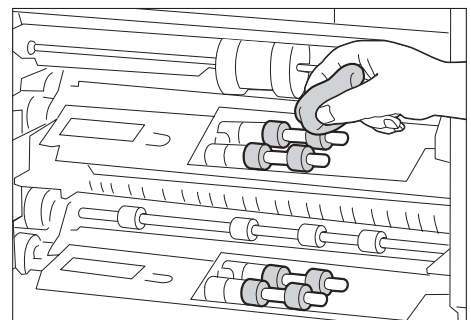
Cleaning the Tray Feed Rollers and Nudger Rollers (Option)

1. Lift the paper feeder of the standard tray with your left hand (1), and gently wipe surface of the rubber rollers with a soft damp cloth while letting each of the rollers rotate little by little.
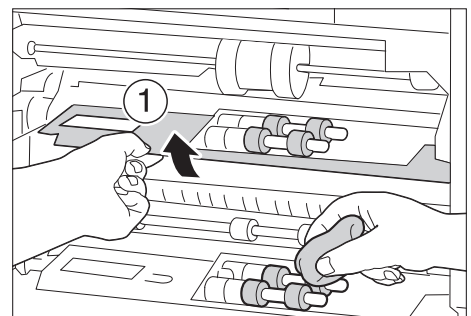
Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers and Nudger Rollers of the Paper Tray 3 (Option)

1. Lift the paper feeder of the optional Tray 2 with your left hand (1), and gently wipe surface of the rubber rollers with a soft damp cloth while rotating little by little each of the rollers.
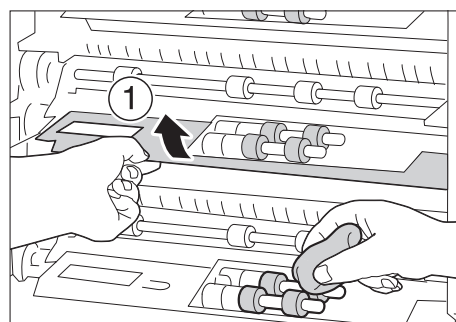
Cleaning the Bypass Feed Roller and Bypass Retard Roller

Feeding of illustrated postcards and dusty papers may cause paper feed malfunction, by adhering the image show-through prevention powder and the paper dust to the bypass feed roller and/or the bypass retard roller. When paper feed becomes unreliable, try to thoroughly wipe each of surfaces of the bypass feed roller and the bypass retard rollers with a soft damp cloth, by following procedure described below.
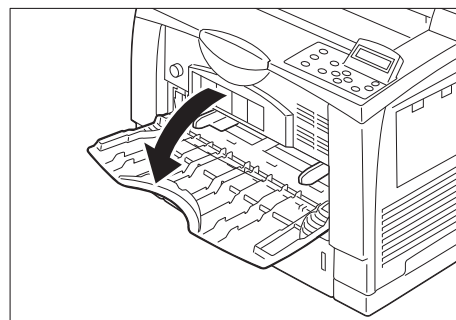
1. Open the bypass tray.

2. Grasping the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, pull out the tray up to the position where it stops.
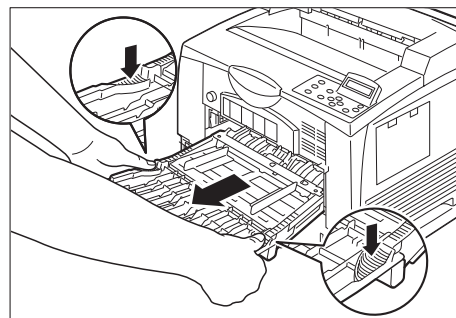
3. Reposition your hands as shown in the illustration and pull up the bypass tray at an angle.
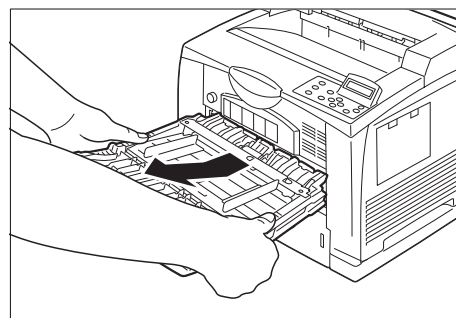
4. Pull out the paper tray.
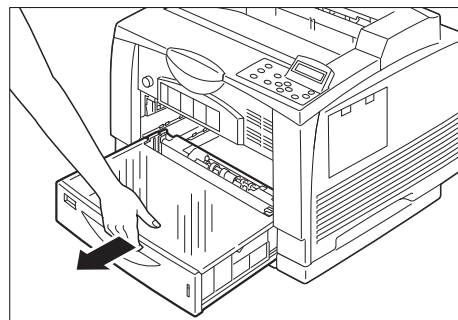
5. Check the bypass feed roller inside the printer.
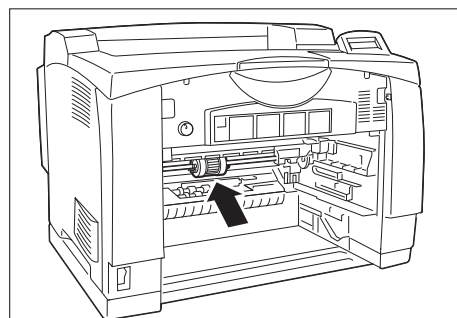
6. Gently wipe surface of the rubber rollers with a soft damp cloth while letting each of the rollers rotate little by little.
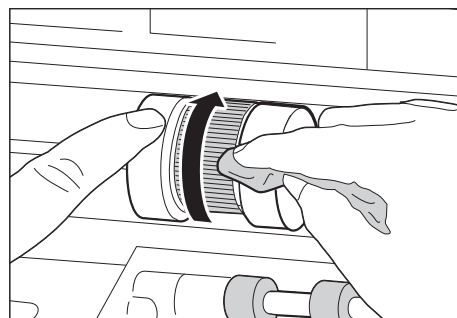
7. Clean the retard roller of the bypass tray. Wipe the rubber part of the roller while turning the roller, using a soft cloth that has been moistened with water and thoroughly wrung.
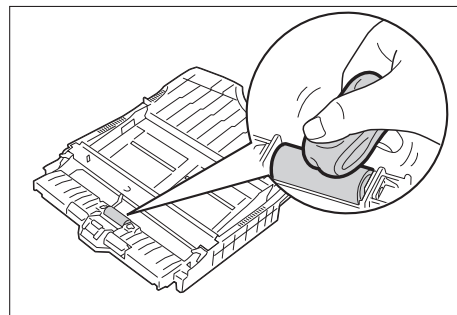
8. Return the paper tray inside the printer.
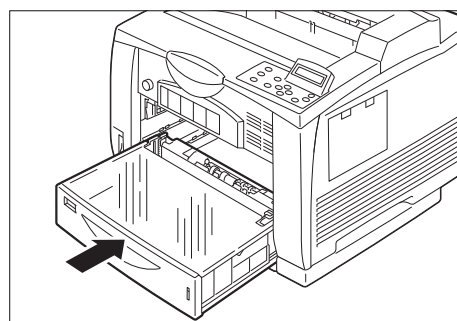
9. Holding the bypass tray, insert it into the printer.
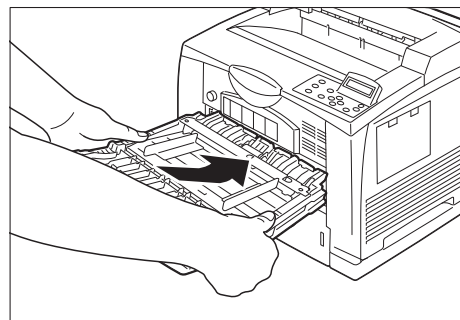
10. Repositioning your hands to grasp the indentations on both sides of the bypass tray, push the bypass tray all the way back into the printer.
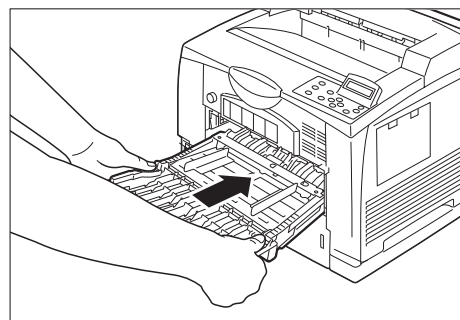
11. Close the bypass tray.
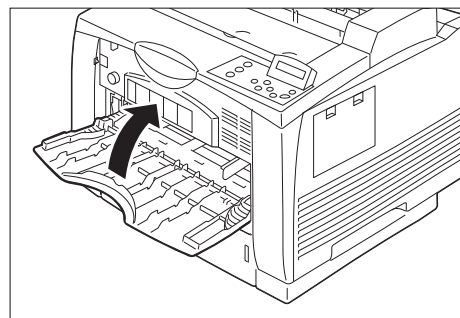
7.13　Moving the Printer

Use the following procedure when moving the printer.

1.　Switch off the power of the printer by pressing the<⏻> side of the power switch located on the left side of the printer.

2.　Unplug the power cord, interface cable, and all the other cables from the printer.

3.　Remove the paper from the bypass tray and close the bypass tray. Rewrap the paper and store it away from dust and humidity.

4.　Pull out the trays from the printer, and remove any paper in them. Re-wrap the paper and store it away from dust and humidity.

5.　Push the trays all the way back into the printer.

6.　Lift the printer and carefully move it. If moving over a long distance, pack the printer in a box.

⚠ **CAUTION**
• When lifting the printer, bend at knees to avoid back injury, grip the printer at the specified handholds, and then lift straight up.

Important
• The machine (including the consumables) weighs 23kg. At least three people should participate in lifting the printer to move it.
• If optional trays are installed, remove them before moving the printer. If trays are not installed securely, they may fall and cause injuries. For information on how to remove the trays, refer to the installation guide provided with the options.
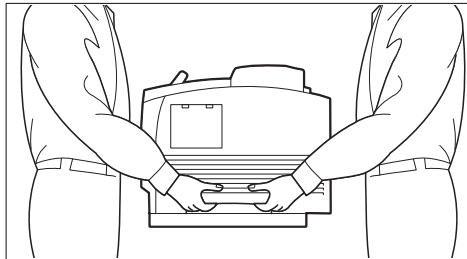
Note
• It is not needed to remove the consumables such as print cartridges when moving the printer.

A   Appendix

A.1   Main Specifications

DocuPrint 3105 Specifications

Items	Description
Product Code	T3300022
Type	Desktop
Printing method	Laser Xerography **Important** * Semiconductor laser + xerographic system
Fusing system	Heat roller (oil-less)
Warm-up Time	Less than 17 seconds (after powering on at 22 °C temperature)

Items	Description

Continuous print speed[*1]	When plain paper fed is from Tray 1
	1 Sided:
	  30.6 sheets/min(A5 ▭)[*2],
	  30.6 sheets/min(B5 ▭),
	
	  11.5 sheets/min(B5 ▯),
	  32 sheets/min(A4 ▭),
	
	  23 sheets/min(A4 ▯),
	  30 sheets/min(Letter ▭),
	
	  19.5 sheets/min(B4 ▯),
	
	  17.4 sheets/min(A3 ▯)
	
	  2 Sided:
	  21.4 sheets/min(A5 ▭)[*3],
	  21.4 sheets/min(B5 ▭),
	  21.4 sheets/min(A4 ▭),
	
	  15.5 sheets/min(A4 ▯),
	  21.2 sheets/min(Letter ▭),
	
	Transparency
	  1 Sided:
	  25 sheets/min(A4 ▭),
	
	  9.3 sheets/min(A4 ▯),
	
	Heavyweight[*2]
	  1 Sided:
	  23 sheets/min(A5 ▭),
	  23 sheets/min(B5 ▭),
	
	  8 sheets/min(B5 ▯),
	  30.6 sheets/min(A4 ▭),
	
	  15 sheets/min(A4 ▯),
	
	  19.5 sheets/min(B4 ▯),
	
	  17.4 sheets/min(A3 ▯),
	
	Extra Heavyweight[*2]
	  1 Sided:
	  9.1 sheets/min(A5 ▭),
	  9.1 sheets/min(B5 ▭),
	
	  3 sheets/min(B5 ▯),
	  8.5 sheets/min(A4 ▭),
	
	  3 sheets/min(A4 ▯),
	
	  7.4 sheets/min(B4 ▯),
	
	  7 sheets/min(A3 ▯),

Items	Description

Continuous print speed[1]	When plain paper fed is from Bypass Tray
	1 Sided:
	  30.6 sheets/min(A5 ▢),
	  30.6 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	
	  11.5 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	  32 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	  23 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	  30 sheets/min(Letter ▢),
	
	  19.5 sheets/min(B4 ▢),
	
	  17.4 sheets/min(A3 ▢)
	
	 2 Sided:
	  21.4 sheets/min(A5 ▢),
	  21.4 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	  21.4 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	  21.2 sheets/min(Letter ▢),
	
	  13.6 sheets/min(B4 ▢),
	
	  12.2 sheets/min(A3 ▢),
	
	Transparency
	 1 Sided:
	  25 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	  9.3 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	Heavyweight
	 1 Sided:
	  23 sheets/min(A5 ▢),
	  23 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	
	  8 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	  30.6 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	  15 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	  19.5 sheets/min(B4 ▢),
	
	  17.4 sheets/min(A3 ▢),
	
	Extra Heavyweight
	 1 Sided:
	  9.1 sheets/min(A5 ▢),
	  9.1 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	
	  3 sheets/min(B5 ▢),
	  8.5 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	  3 sheets/min(A4 ▢),
	
	  7.4 sheets/min(B4 ▢),
	
	  7 sheets/min(A3 ▢),
	
	Important
	[1] The printing speed may be slower depending on the paper type, such as postcards (post cards made by Japan Post), Transparency, and envelopes, as well as the size and printing conditions.The printing speed may also be lowered in order to adjust the image quality.
	[2] When continuously printing a single document (plain paper)
	[3] During continuous printing (plain paper)

Items	Description
First print	8.8 seconds or less (A4/when paper fed from tray 1) **Important** * Measurements based on Fuji Xerox test pattern. Time from printer startup until output of the first page is complete. "Color" is color mode setting (default), "Monochrome" is monochrome mode setting.
Resolution	Data processing resolution: 600 x 600 dpi: 600 dpi multi-value Output resolution: 1200 x 1200 dpi: 1200 dpii **Important** * For 1,200 x 1,200 dpi, extension system memory may be needed.
Tone/Color	256 tones/color (16.7 million colors)
Paper Size	Bypass Tray: A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, 7.25 x 10.5",8.5 x 14" (Legal), 5.5 x 8.5" , 8.5 x 13", 11 x 17", 8.5 x 11" (Letter), Envelope (Envelop Com#10, Envelop 120x235, Envelop 4.1 x 9.5", Monarch, DL, C5), Postcard (100 x 148 mm), Postcard (148 x 200 mm), Long size paper (297 x 900 mm), Custom Paper (Width: 75 - 297 mm, Length: 98 - 432 mm)
	Trays 1 - 3 (Trays 2 - 3 are optional): A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, 11 x 17" (Ledger), 8.5 x 14" (Legal), 8.5 x 11" (Letter), Width: 76 - 297.0 mm, Length: 148 - 432 mm)
	2 Sided Printing (optional): A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, 11 x 17" (Ledger), 5.5 x 8.5", 8.5 x 14" (Legal), 8.5 x 13" (Legal), 8.5 x 11" (Letter), 7.25 x 10.5", Custom Paper (Width: 100 - 297 mm, Length: 139 - 432 mm)
	Image loss: 4.1 mm from the top, bottom, left, and right edges **Important** *For long paper type A (900 x 297 mm), 12.3 mm from the lead/trail edges, and 4.1 mm from the left/right sides
Paper Type	Bypass Tray: Plain (60 - 90 g/m^2), Plain S2 (60-90 g/m^2), Recycled (60 - 90 g/m^2), Lightweight (60 - 90 g/m^2), Heavyweight (91 - 157 g/m^2), Extra Heavyweight (158 - 216 g/m^2), transparency, Postcard (100 x 148 mm)
	Trays 1 - 3 (Trays 2 - 3 are optional): Plain (60 - 90 g/m^2), Plain S2 (60-90 g/m^2), Recycled (60 - 90 g/m^2), Lightweight (60 - 90 g/m^2), Heavyweight (91 - 157 g/m^2), Extra Heavyweight (158 - 216 g/m^2), transparency

Items	Description
Paper Type	2 Sided Printing (optional):
	Plain (60 - 90 g/m^2), Recycled (60 - 90 g/m^2),
	Lightweight (60 - 90 mm), Heavyweight (91 - 157 g/m^2) ,
	Corresponding G.S.M. (60 - 157 g/m^2)
	Important
	* Fuji Xerox P paper (64 g/m^2)
	* Use only the recommended paper. Using paper other than that recommended for the printer can cause printing problems. Do not use special ink jet paper.
	* Note that poor printing quality due to paper-related printing problems can occur when using the printer in an environment that is dry, cold, or very humid.
	* Printing over the printed side or on the reverse side of paper that already has been printed on can result in poor print quality.
	* When printing on envelopes, use envelopes that do not have adhesive applied.
	* The type of paper being used and environmental conditions can affect printing quality. Because of this, it is recommended that you test print and confirm proper print quality before using the printer.
	* For information about the recommended paper, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
Paper capacity	Standard:
	Bypass tray: 150 sheets; Tray 1: 500 sheets
	Optiona:
	Tray 2,3: 500 sheets
	Important
	* RX-80 (A4) Paper (80g/m^2) or Xerox 4200 Letter (75g/m^2)
Output tray capacity	450 sheets (face down)
	Important
	* RX-80 (A4) Paper (80g/m^2) or Xerox 4200 Letter (75g/m^2)
2-sided Printing Feature	Option
CPU	MPC8349E/667MHz
Memory capacity	Standard:512 MB; 2 memory slots (1 empty)
	Option: Extension System Memory at 512 MB/1024 MB; (max: 1536 MB)
	Important
	* The above memory capacity does not guarantee print quality depending on the type and content of print data.
HDD Extension Kit (optional)	Optional: 40 GB
Fonts	Standard:
	• PCL Fonts: 81 European language fonts
	• TrueType Fonts: 14 European language fonts, 2 MM fonts
	• PostScript Fonts: 136 European language fonts
	Optional:
	• Korean Fonts: Myungjo, Gothic, Round Gothic, Graphic, Kungso, Saemul
	• Chinese Fonts: ShuSong, KaiTi, HeiTi, FangSong
Page Description Language	Standard:
	PCL, Adobe$^®$ PostScript$^®$ 3™, ESC/P, TIFF, PDF, XPS, HP-GL2, PCL XL, PCL 5c

Items	Description

Emulation	Standard:
	  ESC/P, TIFF, PDF, XPS, HP-GL[*2], HP-GL2/RTL[*2], PCL5e, PCL6
	Option:[*1]
	  KS[*1], KSSM[*1], KS5895[*1]
	
	Important
	[*1] Can be used only if the Korea Font ROM (optional) is installed.
	[*2] HP-GL emulates HP7596B, and HP-GL/2 and HP-RTL emulate HP Designjet 750 CPlus, but since not all the commands are supported, preliminary output testing is recommended.

Supported OS [*1]	Windows® 2000, Windows® XP, Windows Vista®, Windows® 7, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server® 2008, Windows Vista® x64, Windows® 7 x64, Windows Server® 2003 x64, Windows Server® 2008 x64, Mac OS 9.2.2, Mac OS X 10.3.9-10.4.6, 10.4.8-10.4.11, 10.5, 10.6 **Important** [*1] For the latest information about the supported operating systems, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer. [*2] Mac OS 9.2.2 and Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.10 are supported.

Interface	Standard:
	  USB 2.0*1, Ethernet (10Base-T, 100Base-TX)*2
	Optional:
	  Bi-directional parallel (IEEE 1284 compliant)*3 *4,
	  Ethernet1000Base-T*2 *4
	Important
	*1 Mac OS 9.2.2 and Mac OS X 10.3.9 - 10.4.11/10.5/10.6 are supported.
	*2 Mac OS 9.2.2 and Mac OS X 10.3.9 - 10.4.11/10.5/10.6 are supported.
	*3 Mac OS is not supported.
	*4 Parallel Port Kit (optional) and Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) cannot be installed at the same time.

Supported protocol	TCP/IP (LPD, Port9100, HTTP,DHCP, IPP, SNMP), SMB, Web Services on Devices (WSD), Bonjour (mDNS), EtherTalk
Power	AC 110 V ± 10% : 11A: both 50/60 Hz AC 220 - 240 V ± 10% : 6 A; both 50/60 Hz **Important** *Machine peak current

Operating noise
(main unit only)
	During operation : 6.83 B; 54 dB (A)
	During stand-by : 5.30 B; 33 dB (A)
	
	Important
	* Measurements based on ISO7779
	   Unit B: acoustic power level (LwAd)
	   Unit dB (A): radiated sound pressure (bystander position)

Power consumption	Maximum: 970W, During the Sleep mode: 1.7W or less Average: During standby: 97W Full blast: 720W **Important** * Low Power Mode: 12 W average (The printer does not use electricity when the power is switched off even with the power cord is plugged in.)

Items	Description
Dimensions (main unit only)	531 (W) x 443 (D)[*1] x 390 (H) mm **Important** [*1] Bypass tray closed
Weight	Main Unit: 23.0kg (main unit only, including consumables)
Usage Environment	During Use: Temperature: 10 - 32 °C; Humidity: 15 - 85% (to reduce malfunctions from condensation) Non-Use: Temperature: -20 - 40 °C; Humidity: 5 - 85% (to reduce malfunctions from condensation) **Important** * Until the conditions (temperature and humidity) inside the printer become acclimated to the installation environment, certain qualities of the paper can cause poor printing.

Printable Area

Note
• The actual printable area may vary depending on the printer control language.

Top 4.1 mm

Printable Area

Unprintable Area

Left 4.1 mm

Right 4.1 mm

Bottom 4.1 mm
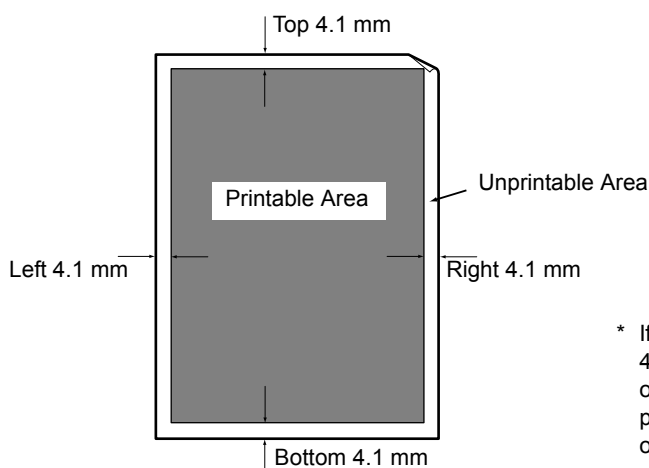
* If the actual print start position is less than 4.1 mm from the top edge, a paper jam may occur depending on the type of image printed, the type of the output paper, and the operating environment of the printer.

Built-in Fonts

The fonts described below come built-in as standard. Note that the standard outline fonts cannot be used with PostScript.

Note
• For information about fonts that are available with the PostScript, refer to the manual on the CD-ROM included with the PostScript Driver Library.

Stroke fonts (for PCL5 and HP-GL/2)		• European Stroke fonts	
European	ESC/P	• Roman • Sans Serif	
	PDF	• Arial • Arial Itaric • Arial Bold • Arial Bold Italic • Courier • Courier Italic • Courier Bold • Courier Bold Italic	• Symbol • Times New Roman • Times New Roman Bold • Times New Roman Italic • Times New Roman Bold Italic • ITC Zepf Dingbats • Gold SEM • Gold SAMM

European	PCL	• CG Times • CG Times Italic • CG Times Bold • CG Times Bold Italic • Univers Medium • Univers Medium Italic • Univers Bold • Univers Bold Italic • Univers Medium Condensed • Univers Medium Condensed Italic • Univers Bold Condensed • Univers Bold Condensed Italic • Antique Olive • Antique Olive Italic • Antique Olive Bold • CG Omega • CG Omega Italic • CG Omega Bold • CG Omega Bold Italic • Garamond Antiqua • Garamond Kursiv • Garamond Halbfett • Garamond Kursiv Halbfett • (Default): Courier • Courier Italic • Courier Bold • Courier Bold Italic • Letter Gothic • Letter Gothic Italic • Letter Gothic Bold • Albertus Medium • Albertus Extra Bold • Clarendon Condensed • Cloronet • Marigold • Arial • Arial Italic • Arial Bold • Arial Bold Italic • Times New • Times New Italic	• Times New Bold • Times New Bold Italic • Symbol • Wingdings • Line Printer • Times Roman • Times Italic • Times Bold • Times Bold Italic • Helvetica • Helvetica Oblique • Helvetica Bold • Helvetica Bold Oblique • CourierPS • CourierPS Oblique • CourierPS Bold • CourierPS Bold Oblique • SymbolPS • Palatino Roman • Palatino Italic • Palatino Bold • Palatino Bold Italic • ITC Bookman Light • ITC Bookman Light Italic • ITC Bookman Demi • ITC Bookman Demi Italic • Helvetica Narrow • Helvetica Narrow Oblique • Helvetica Narrow Bold • Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique • New Century Schoolbook Roman • New Century Schoolbook Italic • New Century Schoolbook Bold • New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic • ITC Avant Garde Book • ITC Avant Garde Book Oblique • ITC Avant Garde Demi • ITC Avant Garde Demi Oblique • ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic • ITC Zapf Dingbats • OCR-B
Korean	PCL5, KS, KSSM and KS5895	• Myungio • Graphic • Gothic	• Kungso • Round Gothic • Saemul
Traditional Chinese	PCL5	• ShuSong • HeiTi	• KaiTi • FangSong
Simplified Chinese	PCL5 and ESC/P	• ShuSong • HeiTi	• KaiTi • FangSong

A.2 Options

The following table lists the main accessories available for the printer. To purchase them, contact the dealer where you purchased the printer.

Product Name	Product Code	Description
HDD Extension Kit (optional)	EL300704	For functions that require the HDD Extension Kit (optional), refer to "A.6 Installing the HDD Extension Kit (HDD Extension Kit)" (P. 334).
Extension System Memory 512MB	E3300183	Increases the printer's memory capacity.
Extension System Memory 1GB	E3300184	For information about the features and situations that require Extension System Memory, refer to "A.5 Installing Extension System Memory" (P. 329).
Parallel Port Kit	E3300186	Required to use the parallel interface.
500 Sheet Feeder	E3300179	Paper tray for loading up to 550 sheets of plain paper (Fuji Xerox P paper). Installs directly under the printer unit.
Duplex unit	E3300180	Required for automatic 2-sided printing.
Gigabit Ethernet Card	E3300185	Allows you to connected 1000 BASE-T Ethernet.
KR Additionl Font Kit	EL300711	Korea Fonts (Myungjo, Gothic, Round Gothic, Graphic, Kungso, Saemul) can be used for printing. KS/KSSM/KS5895 emulation also can be used. The Korea Font ROM and Feature Enhance Kit cannot be installed at the same time.
TC/SC Additional Font Kit	EL300710	Chinese Fonts (ShuSong, KaiTi, HeiTi, FangSong) can be used for printing. The TC/SC Additional Font Kit and Feature Enhance Kit cannot be installed at the same time.
Feature Enhance Kit	E3300181	Required to use the following features. • Image log • Watermark • Network accounting feature Extension System Memory and the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is required to use the Feature Enhance Kit. The Feature Enhance Kit, TC/SC Additional Font Kit and Korea Font ROM cannot be installed at the same time.
Accesories Table	E3300182	The printer unit can be placed on the Cabinet.

- Product names and codes are current as of June 2011.
- Product names and codes are subject to change.
- For the latest information about optional accessories, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.

A.3 Life of Consumables and Regular Replacement Parts

Life of Consumables

Consumables	Page Yield[1]
Print cartridge (15K)	Approx. 15,000 pages
100K Maintenance Kit 110V[1]	Approx. 100,000 pages
100K Maintenance Kit 220V[1]	Approx. 100,000 pages
200K Maintenance Kit[2]	Approx. 200,000 pages

[1]: 100k Maintenance Kit: This is repacing kit for Bypass Feed Roller. A kit consisting of the Fuser Unit and Bypass Feed Roller Unit (Bypass Feed Roller and Bypass Retard Roller).

[2]: 200k Maintenance Kit: This is repacing kit for Tray Feed Roller. A kit consisting of the Tray Feed Roller Unit (Nudger roller, Tray Feed Roller, and Tray Retard Roller) and Transfer Roll.

Important
- Reference values are measured based on ISO/IEC19798. Actual replacement cycles depend on printing conditions, output contents, paper size and type, and environment.
- The life of the fuser unit depends to a large extent on the number of hours the printer is powered and other factors. Setting a long time before the printer enters the energy saver modes will cause the printer to be powered for a longer time, and as a result the fuser unit replacement timing may be accelerated. For details, contact our Customer Support Center.

Support

Fuji Xerox will keep service functional parts for this printer (parts required for the maintenance of the functions of the printer) for 7 years after the discontinuation of manufacture.

A.4   Obtaining Product Information

Obtaining the Latest Print Driver Version

The latest print driver can be obtained by downloading it from our web site.

Note
- The communication fee shall be borne by you.

1. On the Properties dialog box of your current print driver version, click the [Advanced Settings] tab and then [About].

2. Click [Fuji Xerox Web Site].
    Your web browser launches and our web site is displayed.

3. Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate print driver.

Note
- You also can browse our web site using the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM that comes with the printer. To access the web site, click [Fuji Xerox Web Site] on the startup window of the CD-ROM.
- The following is the URL of the driver download service page:
  http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/
- For the latest information about print driver features, refer to the online help for the print driver.

Updating the Printer's Firmware

The Fuji Xerox web site also provides a tool that allows you to update the printer's firmware (software embedded within the printer) from your computer.

The latest firmware and updating tool can be downloaded from the URL shown below.

Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate firmware.

http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/

Note
- The communication fee shall be borne by you.

A.5 Installing Extension System Memory

Extension System Memory must be installed in any of the following instances.

- To print using the print driver's Print Page Mode
  Selecting [On] for [Print Page Mode] changes the printing method of the printer. When printing large volumes of data or when the printer is taking too much time to print, change the [Print Page Mode] setting to [On] and try printing again.

- When the low memory message appears frequently while printing

Extension System Memory also may be required to increase the number of print driver image quality, paper sizes, and other options.
For more information about Extension System Memory and how to order it, refer to the following section.

Note
- The amount of memory required depends on the type of print driver being used.
- The memory capacity values shown in the table below are based on the printer's initial factory default settings. The require memory capacity depends on the printer's operating environment, enabled protocol status, and buffer size.
- For information about Extension System Memory installed in the printer and precautions about Extension System Memory, refer to "A.2 Options" (P. 326).

PCL print driver

Image Quality	Paper Size	Memory capacity 1-sided	Memory capacity 2-sided
		Supported Output	Supported Output
Standard	A5	Standard (512 MB)	
	B5		
	A4		
	B4		
	A3		
	Custom Size		
	Long size (297 x 900 mm)	Standard (512 MB)	-
High Resolution	A5	Standard (512 MB)	
	B5		
	A4		

		Memory capacity 1-sided	Memory capacity 2-sided
Image Quality	Paper Size	Supported Output	Supported Output
High Resolution	B4	Standard (512 MB)	
	A3		
	Custom Size		
	Long size (297 x 900 mm)	512 MB	-

PostScript Print Driver

		Memory capacity 1-sided	Memory capacity 2-sided
Image Quality	Paper Size	Supported Output	Supported Output
High Speed	A5	Standard (512 MB)	Standard (512 MB)
	B5		
	A4		
	B4		
	A3		
	Custom Size		
	Long size (297 x 900 mm)		-
High Resolution	A5	512 MB	
	B5		
	A4		
	B4		
	A3		
	Custom Size		
	Long size (297 x 900 mm)	512 MB	-

Adding Options

Depending on the current status of the printer, installation of HDD Extension Kit (optional) or the Feature Enhance Kit (optional) may require installation of Extension System Memory.

For information about memory requirements, refer to the table below.

Current Printer Status	Adding HDD Extension Kit	Adding a Feature Enhance Kit (Installation of HDD Extension Kit also required.)
Main unit only	At least 512 MB	At least 512 MB

Procedure for Installing Extension System Memory

This section describes how to install Extension System Memory on the printer.
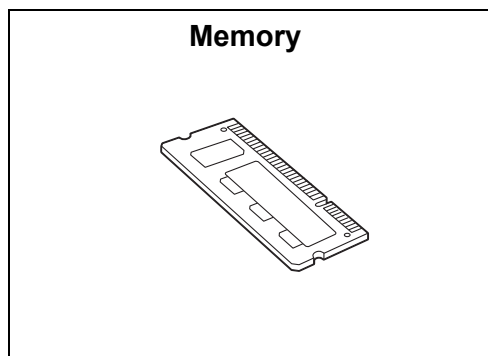
Memory

Note
- The printer has two memory card slots. Slot 1 already has the standard Memory 512 MB installed. Use Slot 2 to install Extension System Memory.
- Memory capacity can be expanded to a maximum of 1.5 GB by installing a Memory 1024 MB card in Slot 2 and replacing the memory card in Slot 1 with a Memory 512 MB card.

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Important
- The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

4. Insert the extension system memory into the M2 slot shown in the illustration on the right.

Important
- The R1/M2 slots are for other options. Do not insert the extension system memory in these slots.
- 512 MB memory is installed as standard in the M1 slot.
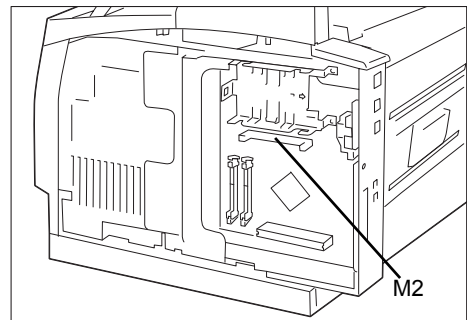
Correctly align the notch on the extension system memory module with the projecting part of the M2 slot on the printer, insert the memory module straight in, and then strongly push it on both sides from the top of the memory module.

Note
- Be sure to fully insert the extension system memory module.
- The two retainer clips located on both sides will rise when the extension system memory is fully pushed in.
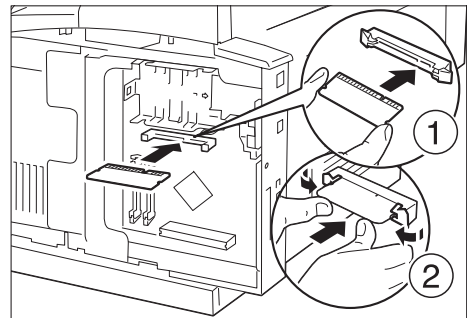
5. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recesses in the printer, and close the cover. Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.
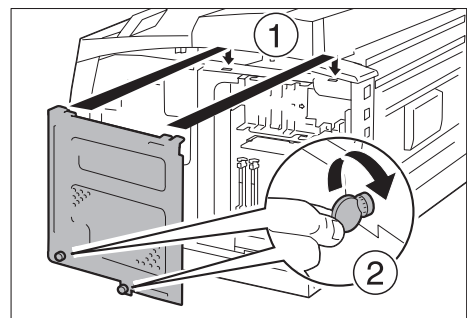
6. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer. Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.
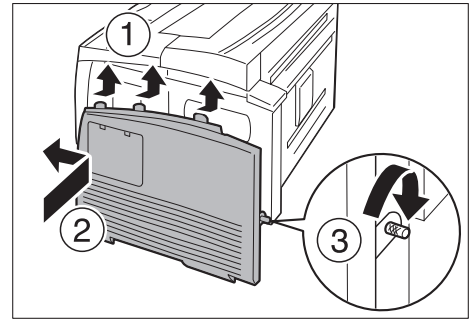
7. Connect the power cord. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.

8. Print the [Configuration Report] and confirm that the [Total Size] value of the [Memory] item in the [Print Service Settings] section is correct.

Refer to
• List printing procedure: "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)

This completes the installation of the extension system memory.

Note
• After installing extension system memory, use the properties dialog box of the print driver to change the printer configuration. For details, refer to the online help for the print driver.

A.6　Installing the HDD Extension Kit (HDD Extension Kit)

The installation of the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is required for this printer in the following cases.

- Functions available only if HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed
  Sample Set / Security Print / Print E-mail / Private Charge Print / Charge Print / Delayed Print / Font Downloading / feature enhance Kit function / IEEE 802.1x Authentication function / IPsec Certificate function / ThinPrint function

- Improvement of capabilities with HDD Extension Kit (optional) installation
  Number of recorded items (forms) / sort feature performance / spool capability / number of log

This section describes the procedure for installing the HDD Extension Kit (optional) on the printer.

HDD Extension Kit
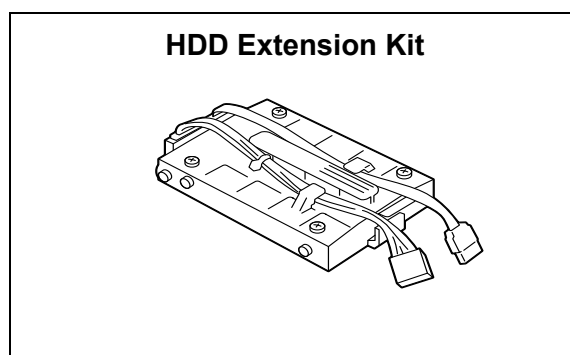
Installation procedure

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Important
- The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

4. Setting the connector cables that come out of the HDD Extension Kit (optional) on the outside, insert the HDD Extension Kit (optional) in the metal frame on the controller board. Correctly fit the projecting part of the HDD Extension Kit (optional) into the recess in the frame.
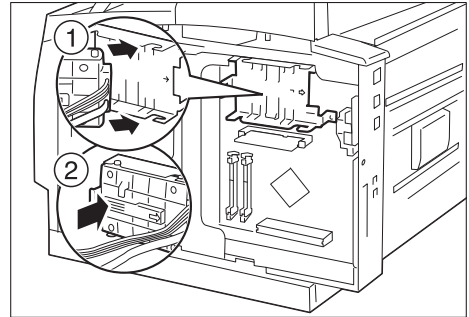
5. Connect the connector cables that come out from the HDD Extension Kit (optional) into the respective controller board connectors.
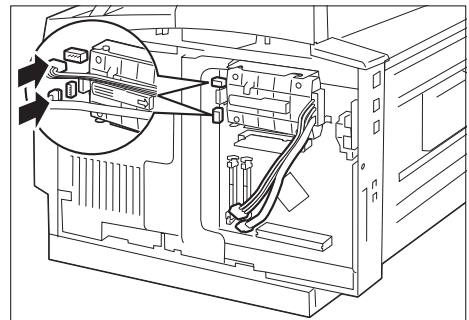
6. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recess in the printer, and close the cover. Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.
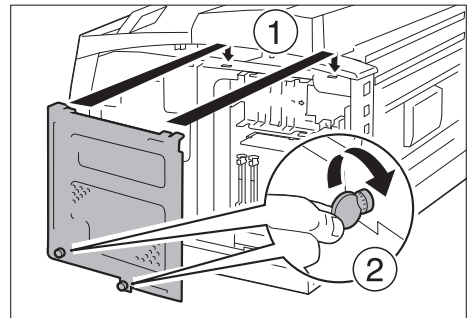
7. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer.Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.
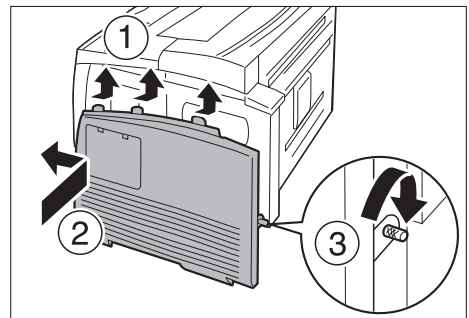
8. Connect the power cord. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.

9.   Print the [Configuration Report] and confirm
     that [HDD Extension Kit (optional)] is
     included for the [Machine Configuration] in
     the [System Settings] section.

Refer to
• List printing procedure: "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)

This completes the installation of the HDD Extension Kit (optional).

Note
• Once the installation of the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is completed, change the printer configuration
  in the properties dialog box of the printer driver. For details, refer to the Help for the printer driver.

A.7 Installing the Feature Enhance Kit

This section following describes how to install the Feature Enhance Kit (optional).

Important
• When installing both the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) and Feature Enhance Kit, install the Feature Enhance Kit first.

Note
• The HDD Extension Kit (optional) is required when installing the Feature Enhance Kit.

Installation Procedure

Feature Enhance Kit ROM

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <(¹)> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Important
• The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

Note
• <Power> lamp is off on the display after turning off the power switch.
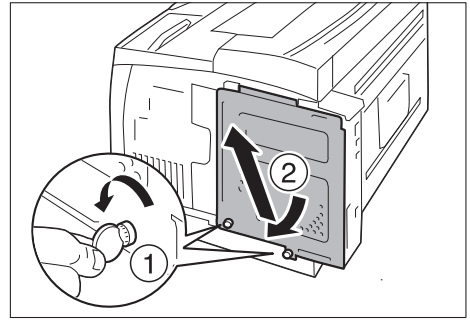
4. Insert the feature enhance Kit ROM in the R2 slot shown in the illustration on the right.

Note
• The R1/M1 slots are for other options. Do not insert the feature enhance Kit in these slots.
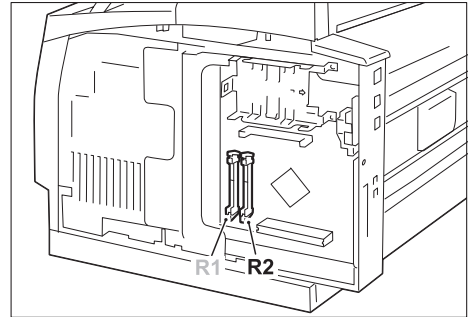
After opening wide the retainer clips on both sides of the R2 slot, correctly align the notch with the projecting part of the R2 slot, and then strongly push on both sides from the top of the ROM module.

Important
• Be sure to fully insert the ROM module.
• The two retainer clips located on both sides will rise when the ROM module is fully pushed in.
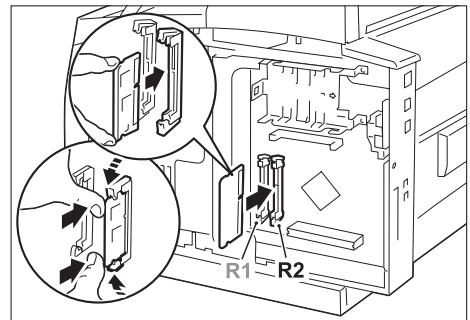
5. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recess in the printer, and close the cover. Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.
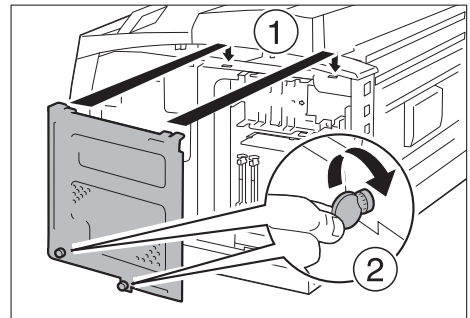
6. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer. Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.
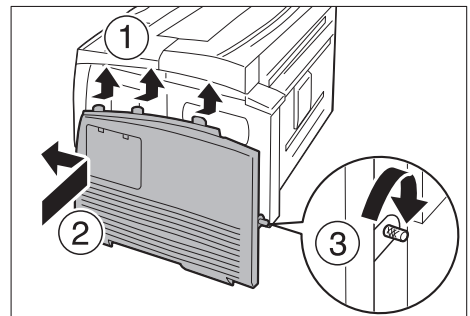
7. Connect the power cord.
Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.

The installation is now complete.
Next, continue from step 8 enable the Feature Enhance Kit feature from the control panel.

Important
• Once you install the Feature Enhance Kit and enable it with the control panel, that Feature Enhance Kit is not usable on any other printer.

8. Press the <Printer Settings> button on the control panel to display the menu screen.

```
Settings
  LanguageEmulation
```
↓

9. Press the <▼> button until [Admin Menu] is displayed.

```
Settings
  Admin Menu
```
↓

10. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Network / Port] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  Network / Port
```
↓

11. Press the <▼> button until [System Settings] is displayed.

```
Admin Menu
  System Settings
```
↓

12. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Alert Tone] is displayed.

```
System Settings
  Alert Tone
```
↓

13. Press the <▼> button until [Software Options] is displayed.

```
System Settings
  Software Options
```
↓

14. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. The [FeatureEnhance kit] is displayed.

```
Software Options
  FeatureEnhance kit
```
↓

Note
• If the message [Install options unavailable] appears, it means that the Feature Enhance Kit ROM is not installed correctly. Re-install the ROM.

15. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Enable kit] is displayed.

```
FeatureEnhance kit
  Enable kit
```
↓

16. Press the <▶> or <OK> button to select. [Press OK to enable] is displayed.

```
FeatureEnhance kit
  Press OK to enable
```
↓

17. Press the <OK> button to apply the setting. The setup process starts.

```
FeatureEnhance kit
  Enabling…
```
↓

18. When the [Enabled] message appears, press the <Printer Settings> button to return to the print screen.

```
FeatureEnhance kit
 Enabled
```

Important
• If the Feature Enhance Kit installed was previously used on another printer, the message [Serial Number Error] appears, followed by the serial number of the other printer. Once you install the Feature Enhance Kit and enable it with the control panel, that Feature Enhance Kit is not usable on any other printer. Also, the message [Failed to enable] will appear if the Feature Enhance Kit is not installed correctly on the printer.

A.8   Installing the Parallel Port Kit (Optional)

This section describes how to install the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) on the printer.

Parallel Port Kit (with frame)	**Connector conversion cable**
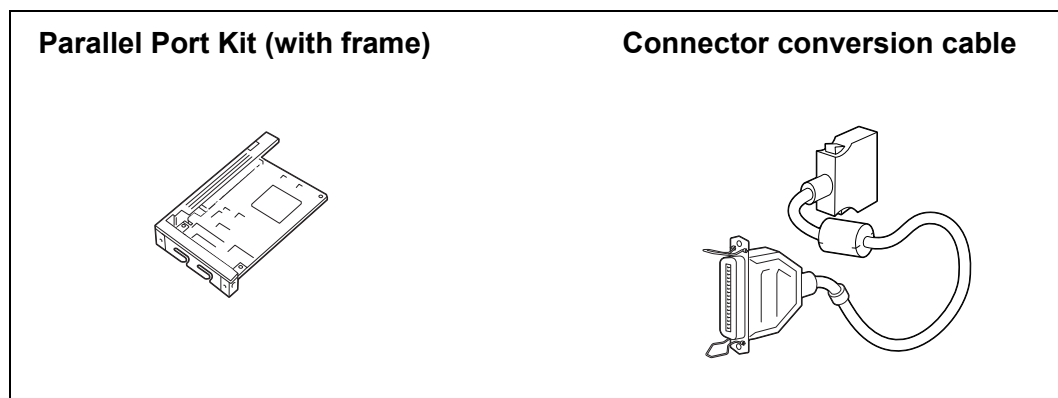
Note
• The clamp that come with the option are not used with this printer.
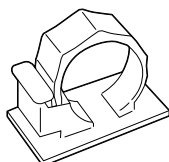
Important
• Parallel Port Kit (Optional) and Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (Optional) cannot be installed concurrently. If the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (Optional) is installed, remove the card by reference to "Removing the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card" (P. 348).
• When installing both the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) and Feature Enhance Kit, install the Feature Enhance Kit first.

Installing the Parallel Port Kit (Optional)

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Note
• The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

4. Loosen the two screws at the rear of the printer and remove the dummy plate.

Note
- Do not completely remove the screws.
- Retain this dummy plate, because you will need to put back the dummy plate after removing the parallel port kit (optional).

5. Aligning the parallel port kit (optional) (with frame) with the control board connectors, insert the card from above.
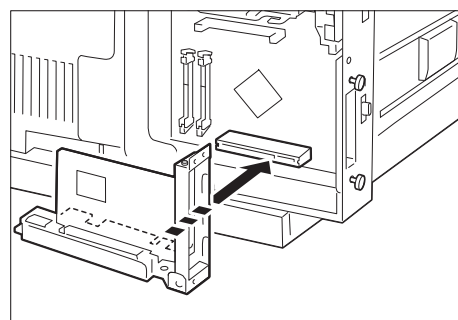
6. Use the screws you loosened in step 4 to secure the parallel port kit (optional) from the outside.
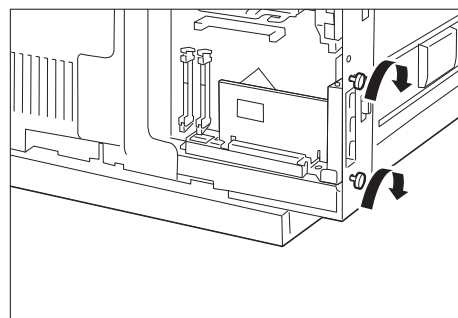
7. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recess in the printer, and close the cover. Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.
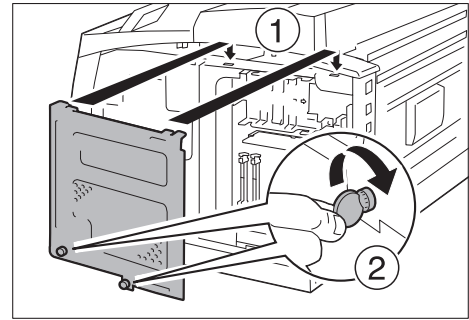
8. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer. Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.
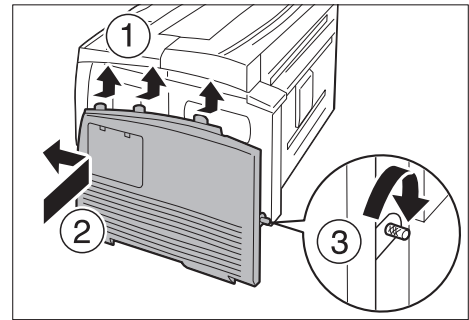
9. Connect the conversion cable to the parallel port kit (optional) connector.

Note
- Connect the parallel cable to the other conversion cable. For details, refer to "1.2 Connecting a cable" (P. 29)
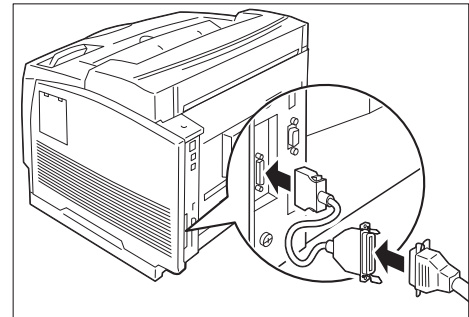
10. Connect the power cord. Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.

11. Print the [Configuration Report] and confirm that [Parallel] is included in the [Communication Settings] section.

Refer to
- List printing procedure: "Printing a Report/List" (P. 262)

This completes the parallel port kit (optional) installation.

Removing the Parallel Port Kit (Optional)

This section describes how to remove the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) on the printer. Refer to the steps in the "Installing the Parallel Port Kit (Optional)" (P. 341) above for the detailed instructions as the similar steps are explained simply.
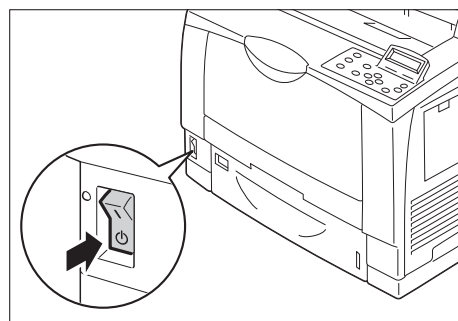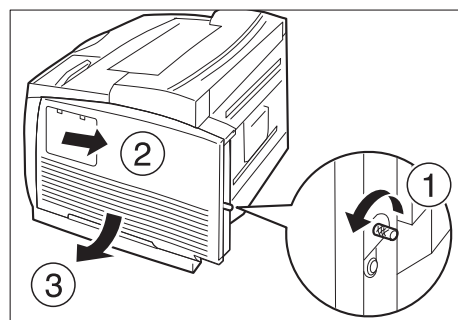
1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

Important
- The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

4. Loosen the two screws that secure the parallel port kit (optional), and remove the parallel port kit (optional) from the controller board.
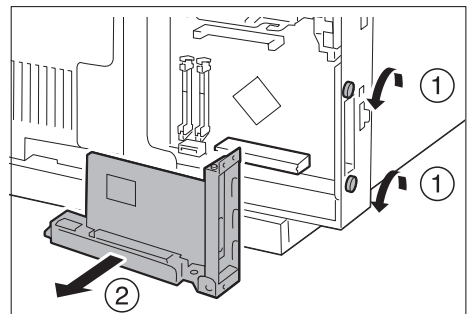
Parallel Port Kit (Optional) removal is now complete.
If the installation of other options is not needed, attach the dummy plate removed in step 3 of the installation procedure. Then close the internal cover and the right cover, in this order, and secure them with their respective screws.

A.9 Installing the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (Optional)

This section describes how to install the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) on the printer.
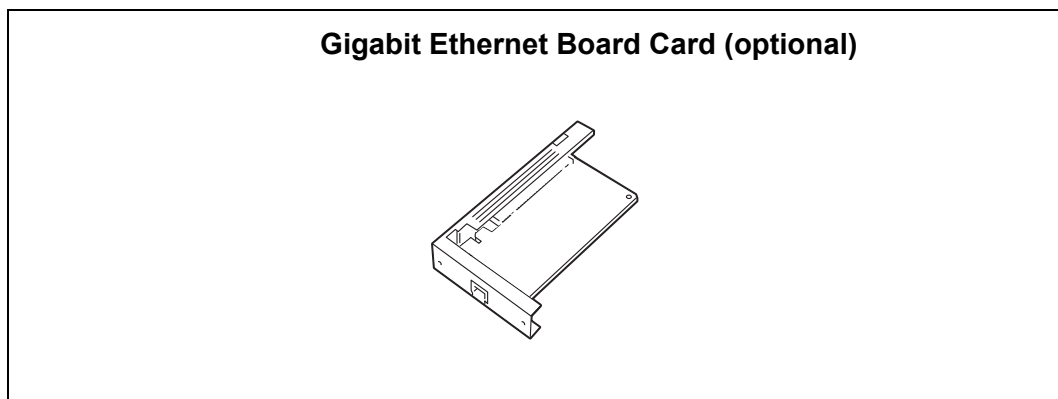
Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional)

Important
- Parallel Port Kit (Optional) and Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) cannot be installed concurrently. If the Parallel Port Kit (Optional) is installed, remove the card by reference to "Removing the Parallel Port Kit (Optional)" (P. 344).
- The interface connecter for standard network cannot be used when the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) is installed to the printer.
- When installing both Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) and Feature Enhance Kit, install the Feature Enhance Kit first.

Installing the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch.

   After making sure that the control panel display and all the lamps have gone off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

   Note
   - The electric parts behind the right cover of the printer can get extremely hot during the printing process. Before you perform installation, turn off the power and wait at least 40 minutes for the interior to cool down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.
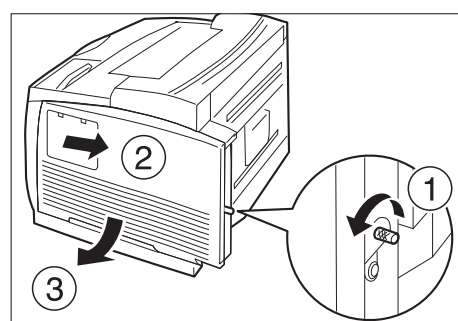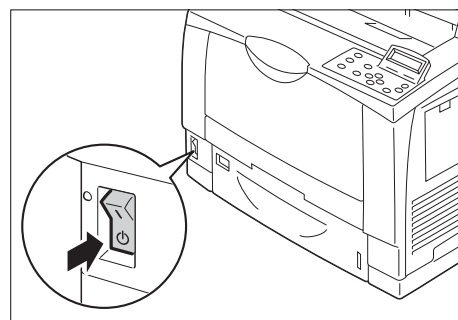
3. Loosen the two screws of the rear panel of the printer and lift off the right cover.
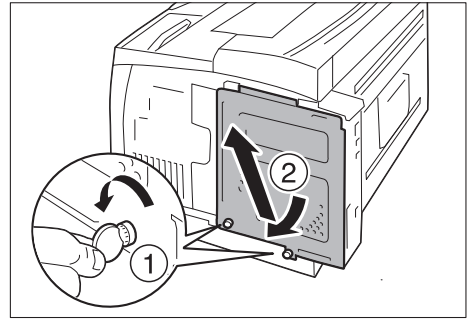
4. Loosen the two screws at the rear of the printer and remove the dummy plate.

Note
• Do not completely remove the screws.
• Retain this dummy plate, because you will need to put back the dummy plate after removing the parallel port kit (optional).
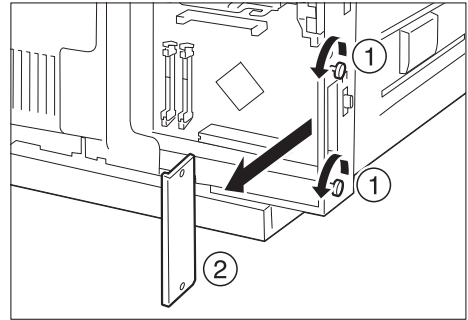
5. Aligning the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (with frame) and the controller board connectors, insert the card from above.
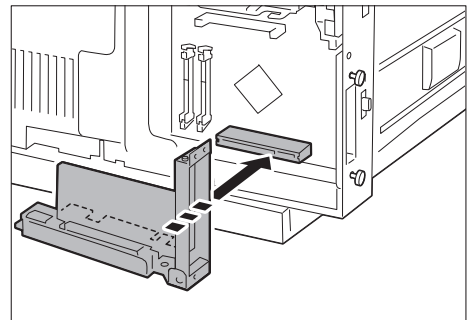
6. Secure the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card from outside with the screws loosened in step 4.
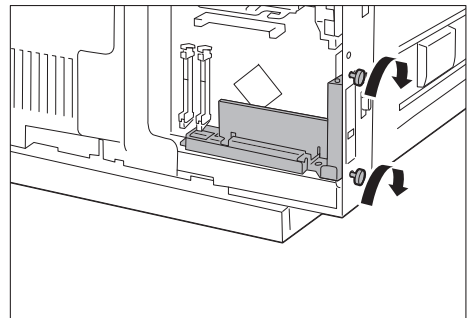
7. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recess in the printer, and close the cover.
   Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.
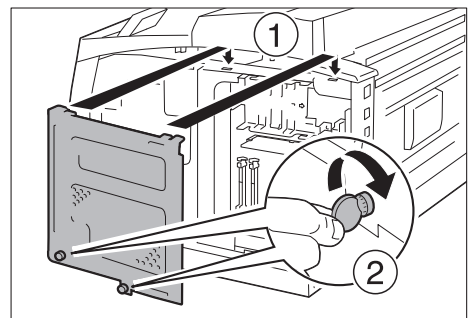
8. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer. Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.
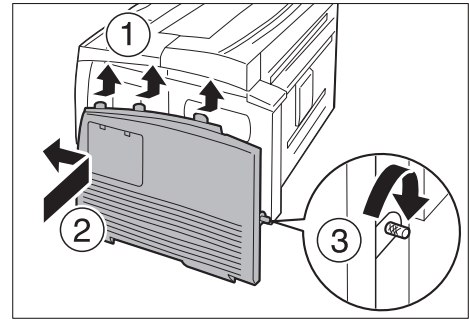
9. Wind the network cable around the supplied ferrite core and close the ferrite core.

Note
• Do not wind the cable to tightly or it may break.
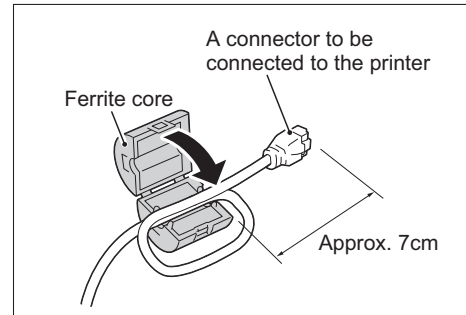
10. Insert the network cable into the interface connector of the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card.

Note
• Use of a category 5 (CAT5) cable or enhanced category 5 (CAT5e) cable is recommended for connecting with 1000BASE-T. For details on the cables and connection methods, refer to"1.2 Connecting a cable" (P. 29).
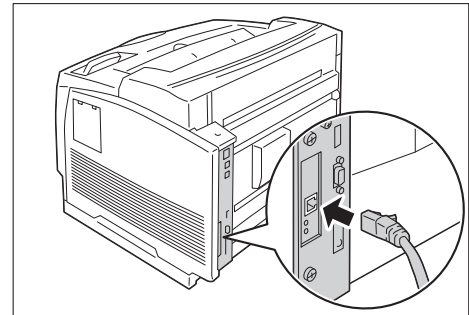
11. Plug the other end of the network cable into a network device such as a hub.

12. Connect the power cord.
    Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.
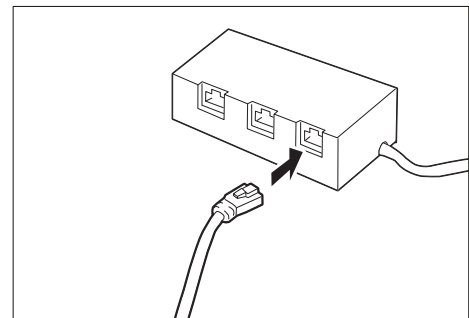
13. Check that the green lamp lights up.
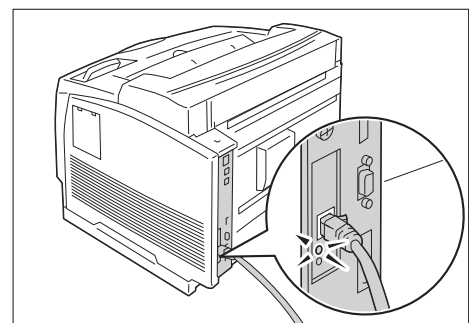
Gigabit Ethernet Board Card installation is now complete.

Removing the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card

This section describes how to remove the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card on the printer. Refer to the steps in the "Installing the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card" (P. 345) above for the detailed instructions as the similar steps are explained simply.
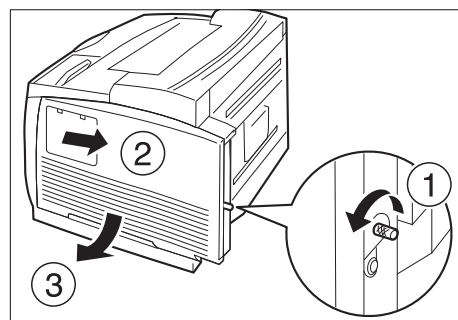
1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer. After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.
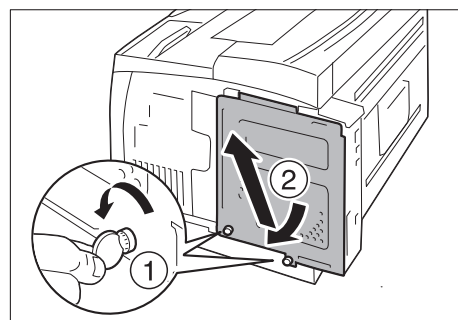
Important
• The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing extension system memory, be sure to first switch off the power of the printer, wait for approximately 40 minutes, and check that the temperature inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.
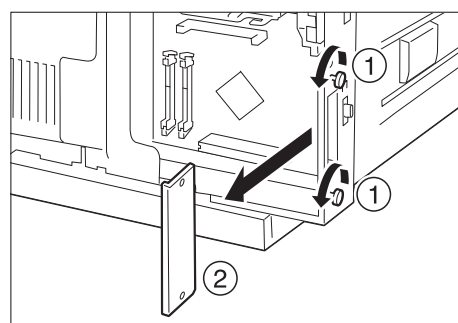

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

4. Loosen the two screws that secure the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card and remove the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card from the controller board.

Note
• Do not remove the screws completely.
• The screws you remove here may be used for securing other optional kit on the control board.
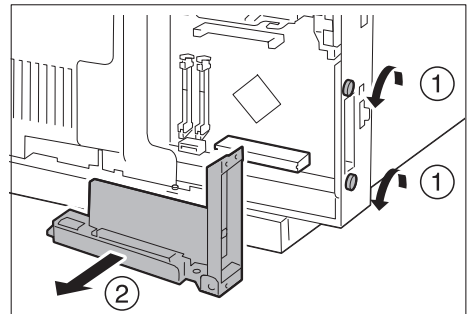
This completes the Gigabit Ethernet Board Card removal.

If the installation of other options is not needed, attach the dummy plate removed in step 4 of the installation procedure. Then close the internal cover and the right cover, in this order, and secure them with their respective screws.

A.10 Installing the Duplex Unit

Thank you for purchasing this printer. This guide explains how to install the Duplex unit on the printer.

Important
• Switching off the power of the printer will cause the loss of any print data left in the printer and any print information accumulated in the printer's memory.
 When switching off the power during normal operation, check on the control panel, etc., that the printer is not currently processing a job.

1. Switch off the power of the printer by pressing the <(!)> side of the power switch. Unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

 After checking that the display of the control panel and the various lamps have switched off, unplug the network cable and power cord from the printer.
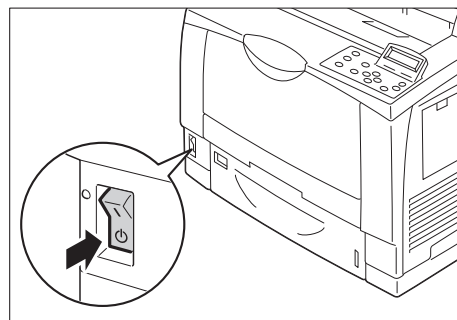
2. Press the three clips shown in the illustration on the right and remove the cover on the rear of the printer.
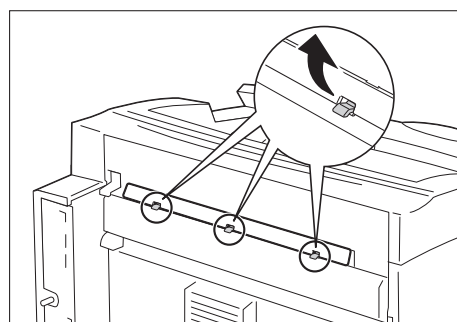
3. Placing your fingers on the two tabs on the rear cover of the printer, remove the cover (1). Remove the cap attached to the top right connector(2).
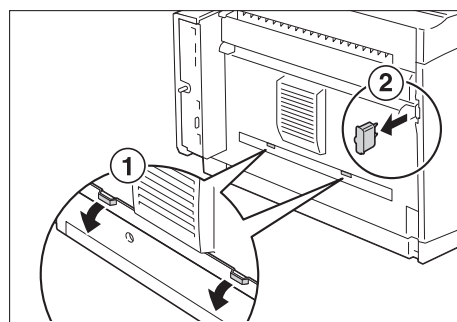
4. Insert the projecting tabs on the left and right at the bottom of the Duplex unit, aligning the top of the Duplex unit with the printer.
 At this time, connect the connector of the Duplex unit and the connector of the printer.
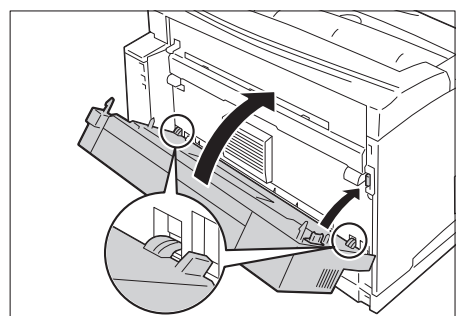
5. Secure the two locations at the bottom of the Duplex unit with the screws provided with the Duplex unit.
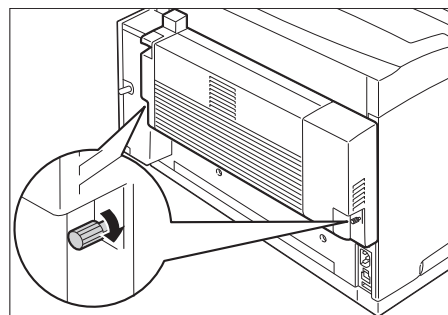
6. Connect the power cord, etc., unplugged in Step 1, and switch on the power of the printer by pressing the <|> side of the power switch.

This completes the installation of the Duplex unit.

Note
- Printing the [Configuration Report] allows you to check whether the Duplex unit has been correctly installed. For the list printing method, refer to the manual provided with the printer.
- Once the installation of the Duplex unit is completed, change the options configuration on the [Printer Configuration] tab in the [Properties] dialog box of the printer. For details, refer to the online help of the printer driver.
- In the case of a network connection, select [Printer Communication Settings] > [Get Printer Information], and in the case of a USB or parallel connection, perform [Option Settings]. For details, refer to "Network Connection" (P. 29).

A.11 Installing the TC/SC Additional Font Kit

This section describes how to install the TC/SC Additional Font Kit on the printer.

TC/SC Additional Font Kit
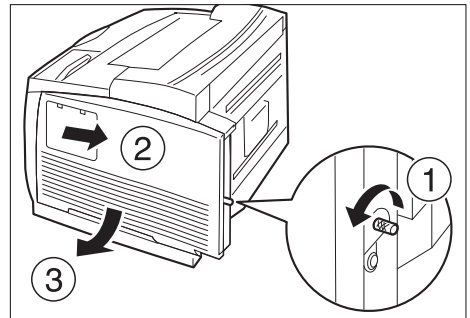

1. Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻> side of the power switch of the printer.

   After making sure that the control panel display and all the lamps have gone off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet and the printer.

   Important
   • The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the printer can get very hot. Before installing the TC/SC Additional Font Kit ROM, be sure to first swich off the power of the printer, wait for approxiamately 40 minutes, and check that the tempretaure inside the printer has cooled down.

2. Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the printer, slide the right cover backward, and remove the cover by pulling the lower side of the cover towards you.

3. Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at the bottom of the inner cover and remove the cover.

4. Insert the TC/SC Additional Font Kit into the R1 slot shown in the illustration on the right.

Important
• The R2/M2 slots are for other options. Do not insert the TC/SC Additional Font Kit in these slots.
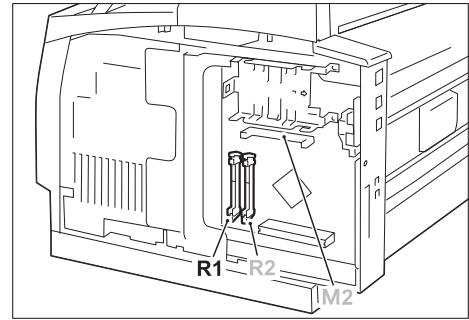
Widely open the tabs on both sides of the R1 slot, correctly align the notch on the TC/SC Additional Font Kit with the projecting part of the R1 slot on the printer, insert the ROM straight in, and then strongly push both sides from the top of the ROM.

Note
• Be sure to fully insert the ROM.
• The two retainer clips located on both sides rise when the ROM is fully pushed in.

5. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recess in the printer, and close the cover. Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.

6. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer.
Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.

7. Connect the power cord.
Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the<|> side of the power switch.

TC/SC Additional Font Kit installation is now complete.

A.12   Installing the KR Additional Font Kit

This section describes how to install the KR Additional Font Kit on the printer.

**KR Additional Font Kit**

1.   Switch the power off by pressing the <⏻>
      side of the power switch of the printer.

      After making sure that the control panel
      display and all the lamps have gone off,
      unplug the power cord from the power
      outlet and the printer.

Important
• The electric parts on the inside of the right cover of the
  printer can get very hot. Before installing the KR
  Additional Font Kit ROM, be sure to first swich off the
  power of the printer, wait for approxiamately 40
  minutes, and check that the tempretaure inside the
  printer has cooled down.
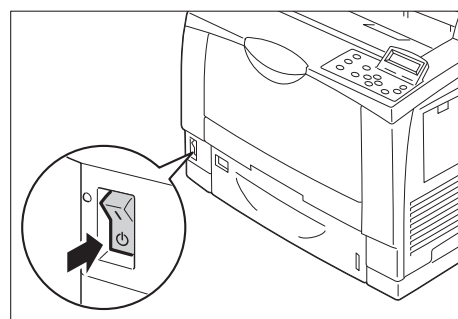
2.   Loosen the screw of the rear panel of the
      printer, slide the right cover backward, and
      remove the cover by pulling the lower side
      of the cover towards you.

3.   Using a coin, etc., loosen the two screws at
      the bottom of the inner cover and remove
      the cover.

4. Insert the KR Additional Font Kit into the R1 slot shown in the illustration on the right.

Important
• The R2/M2 slots are for other options. Do not insert the KR Additional Font Kit in these slots.
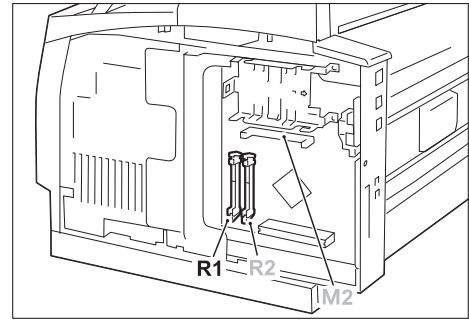
Widely open the tabs on both sides of the R1 slot, correctly align the notch on the KR Additional Font Kit with the projecting part of the R1 slot on the printer, insert the ROM straight in, and then strongly push both sides from the top of the ROM.

Note
• Be sure to fully insert the ROM.
• The two retainer clips located on both sides rise when the ROM is fully pushed in.

5. Insert the two tabs at the top of the internal cover into the recess in the printer, and close the cover. Using a coin, etc., tighten the two screws at the bottom of the cover.

6. Close the cover by pushing it up so that the three projections at the top of the right cover fit into the corresponding recesses on the printer.
    Tighten the screw at the rear of the printer.

7. Connect the power cord.
    Switch on the power of the printer by pressing the<|> side of the power switch.

KR Additional Font Kit installation is now complete.

A.13   Notes and Restrictions

Notes and Restrictions on Using the Printer

This section lists the notes and restrictions that apply to the printer.

HDD Extension Kit (Optional)

- An installation of the HDD Extension Kit (optional) is required for this printer in the following cases:
  - Unavailable functions without installing the HDD Extension Kit (optional):
    Sample Set*1/Secure Print*1/Print E-mail/Private Charge Print*1/Charge Print*1/
    Delayed Print*1/Font downloading/Security Extension Kit function/IEEE 802.1x
    Authentication function/IPsec Certificate function/ThinPrint function
    *1 An additional system memory (1GB / optional) can be used instaed of an HDD Extension Kit (optional).

   *1 The function can be used by enabling a RAM Disk when no HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed.
  - Improvement of capabilities with an installation
    number of recorded items (forms)/sort feature performance/spool capability/number of log/auto-binding margin feature
- An abrupt shut down of the printer due to a power failure or other disruption when HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed may corrupt data on the HDD Extension Kit (optional).
- Power off processing is performed internally on the printer for a while after the power is switched off <Energy Saver> button blinks. Make sure the <Energy Saver> button is completely turned off before switching on the printer again.
- When HDD Extension Kit (optional) is installed, it can be specified as the save destination of print data from lpd, SMB, or IPP. The HDD Extension Kit (optional) is the fixed save destination for ESC/P, HP-GL/2, and PCL forms. The save destination for these forms cannot be changed.
- Initializing the HDD Extension Kit (optional) deletes additional fonts.
- A HDD Extension Kit (optional) which has once used with a printer cannot be used for others.
- A HDD Extension Kit (optional) is needed when obtaining the job history report in CSV format using CentreWare Internet Services.

When printing results do not match settings

- This is caused by insufficient print page buffer capacity, and print results may differ from settings as described below. Installation of Extension System Memory is recommended whenever any of the following occurs.
  - 1-sided printing is performed when 2-sided printing is specified.
  - Print jobs are canceled (When a page cannot be rendered in the buffer, the job that includes that page is canceled.)
- Printing results may not come out as specified when printing of a 1,200 dpi single dot or line is specified. This is due to the characteristics of Xerography.

Optional Accessories

- For information about features that require Extension System Memory (optional), refer to "A.5 Installing Extension System Memory" (P. 329).

- An interactive parallel interface feature is provided as a Parallel Port Kit (optional).

- An installation of Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) helps the network's communication speed faster, however, it does not improve the total printing time.

- A Parallel Port Kit (optional) and Gigabit Ethernet Board Card (optional) cannot be installed on the same machine concurrently.

- HDD Extension Kit (optional) is required for direct printing with CentreWare Internet Services. No HDD Extension Kit (optional) required when using ContentsBridge.

Meter Counts for 2-Sided Print Pages

Depending on the application being used and the print quantity setting, the application may insert a blank page into two-sided print jobs in order to adjust page position. In such cases, the blank page is counted as 1 page.

PostScript Driver

Some options such as [Poster] are not supported by the PostScript driver. With the [Pages Per Sheet(N-Up)], you can specify 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages up, and with or without frame borders.

XPS Driver

An XPS (XML Paper Specification) driver is a print driver for printing with an application or software developed for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2.

Due to compatibility problems with Microsoft Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, normal printing may not be possible with applications and software developed for Windows versions prior to Windows Vista (including the Microsoft 2007 Office System).

To perform XPS printing from the Microsoft 2007 Office System (Word, Excel, PowerPoint), use the 2007 Office System add-in from the ContentsBridge utility.

Before using the XPS driver, be sure to check whether the XPS print feature of the printer you are using is enabled. Unexpected paper output may occur when an XPS driver is used on a printer that does not have an XPS feature.

Printing from Macintosh via USB Connection

When you send a print job from the PostScript driver of Macintosh connected via USB and the job includes application data with graphic data (EPS file including binary data) pasted, the machine may misidentify the binary data as protocol data; therefore, the output of text data may extend for multiple pages.

In this case, select [RAW] for [Adobe Protocol] under [Settings] > [Admin Menu] > [Network / Port] > [USB] to properly print data which includes EPS files with binary data.

IPP Print

If the size of data by IPP exceeds the set value of proxy server, the machine cannot receive the data. In this case, try to increase the size of proxy server, or change the network settings not to use the proxy server.

Supported OS

The dedicated driver or utility software is not provided for the following operating systems.

You may install a driver or utility software for other operating systems, however, it may not work properly.

- Microsoft Windows 95
- Microsoft Windows 98
- Microsoft Windows Me
- Windows NT 4.0
- Mac OS 8.1/8.5/8.6
- Mac OS X 10.3.8 or before
- MacOS X 10.4.7
- Windows NT Server 4.0
- Windows NT Server Terminal Edition

PostScript Print Driver for Macintosh

- Because the print drivers for Mac OS X 10.3.9 to 10.4.11/10.5/10.6 (except for 10.4.7) adopt Plug-ins, the User Details Setup, Secure Print, Sample Set, Delayed Print, and Print Stored File features are available.

- For the print drivers for Mac OS 9 (without Plug-ins), Accounting Settings, Secure Print, Sample Set, and Delayed Print are not available. For the other restrictions, refer to the manual or Readme included in the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM.

- For Mac OS X 10.3.9 or Mac OS 9.2.2, if you print a document with odd number of pages 2-sided, a blank page will be added after the last page, and the blank page will be counted as one page.

Printed Time in Force Annotation

The time you specified to print a job, the time at which the print job is started inside the machine, and the time at which the job is actually printed may not be coincident with one another depending on the machine status and settings or the content of the print job. The time printed in Force Annotation is the time at which the print job is started inside the machine.

Print position adjustment

- If there is a gap/shear in printing between front side and back side of a paper, only vertical direction against the edge to be bound can be corrected. For example, when printing a document in portrait orientation, with specifying both [2-Sided Print] and [Flip on Long Edge], you can correct the shear horizontally but vertically as the front and back side move to the same direction together in the vertical position adjustment.

- Adjustment of position per page is not available when [Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)] is selected.

Print orientation when printing mixed-size documents

- Three types of combination such as A4 with A3, B5 with B4, and 8.5 x 11" (Letter) with 11 x 17" (Tabloid) are available when printing mixed-size documents via print driver.

- The mixed-size documents may be printed upside down depending on the combination of the mixed-size documents, since the printer cannot determine the document orientation (portrait, landscape) properly based on the application in use.

ThinPrint

- To install "ThinPrint.print" to Windows Server 2003 or Windows Server 2008, a ".print Application Server Engine" licence is required.

- ThinPrint can operate in an IPv4 environment, but not in an IPv6 environment.

- Up to three can be connected simultaneously. The fourth or above connection requests are stored in the queue. Up to 10 connection requests can be stored in the queue. If exceeding 10, another connection request is no longer received. After preceding connections are terminated, the connection requests in the queue will be processed subsequently when the total number of the connections becomes less than four.

- Functions to control jobs, such as canceling or suspending jobs, are not provided. Instead, you can cancel a job on the [Jobs] screen from the control panel, or from CentreWare Internet Services.

- The machine prints jobs in the order in which they are spooled. The jobs may not be printed in the order in which the job requests are received by the machine.

- If the power is switched off, this feature can store the order of jobs spooled and their data. If the power switched off while a job is being received, the job is deleted.

Mail Print

- The machine cancels receiving e-mails but does not display error codes when disk space is insufficient.

- Specifying e-mail transfer of a text by MSN Mail from a mobile browser function may cause unwanted line returns.

CSRF control for CentreWare Internet Services

When [CSRF Protection] setting is enabled on the CentreWare Internet Services, access to CentreWarer Internet Serivice may be failed depending on the web browser in use, the usage situation of the browser, or network evironment. In such case, try to access using any accessible computer.Or, if you need to disable [CSRF Protection], contact your system administrator. If there is no accessible computer around your environment, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer. "CSRF" is a method of attack that a malicious web site forces the user to perform some operations on the other web site via the accessing computer. This feature prevents the unintentional operations from being executed on CentreWare Internet Services and the setteings such as the printer settings from being changed once the user has accidentally accessed to the malicious web site.

TCP/IP (lpd) Note and Limitations

The following notes and limitations apply to TCP/IP (lpd).

Printer Settings

- Take care to configure IP address settings correctly. IP addresses are maintained within an entire system. Be sure to consult your network administrator before configuring IP address settings.

- In some network environments, sub-network sub network mask and gateway address settings also must be configured. Consult your network administrator about the settings required for your printer.

- If memory is insufficient when a port is enabled, the port is automatically disabled. If this happens, disable unused ports, change memory allocation, or install Extension System Memory.

- Configure the size of the [LPD Spool] which represents the size of receivable buffer in accordance with the printer's operating conditions. Receiving cannot be performed if the size of the [LPD Spool] receivable buffer is smaller than the actual received data.

Configuring Settings

- Take care to configure IP address settings correctly. IP addresses are maintained within an entire system. Be sure to consult your network administrator before configuring IP address settings.

- Consult your NIS (Network Information Service) administrator whenever configuring network settings (e.g., IP address) on a computer that is used under NIS (Network Information Service).

Switching the Power Off

Note the following points whenever switching the printer power off.

- When the [LPD Spool] setting is [Memory]
All of the print data spooled in the printer, including data that is currently being printed, is deleted. The print data is not available when the power is switched back on. However, print data may be saved on your computer if the power is switched off immediately after requesting a print job. In this case printing will be performed from the saved print data when the power is switched back on again, even if a new print job is requested.

- When the [LPD Spool] setting is [HDD Extension Kit (optional)]
All of the print data spooled in the printer, including data that is currently being printed, is saved on the printer's HDD Extension Kit (optional). Printing will be performed from the saved print data when the power is switched back on again, even if a new print job is requested.

- When the [LPD Spool] setting is [Off]
All of the print data spooled in the printer's receiving buffer, including data that is currently being printed, is deleted. The print data is not available when the power is switched back on. However, print data may be saved on your computer if the power is switched off immediately after requesting a print job. In this case printing will be performed from the saved print data when the power is switched back on again, even if a new print job is requested.

Printing

- When the [LPD Spool] setting is [HDD Extension Kit (optional)] or [Memory]
If the size of the print data is greater than the remaining capacity of HDD Extension Kit (optional) or memory capacity at the time that receiving the print data starts, that print data cannot be received.

Note

- Some computers may resend the print data immediately automatically if the size of the print data exceeds the receiving capacity. If this happens, it may appear as if the computer has hung up. To avoid this, cancel sending print data on the computer.

- When the [LPD Spool] setting is [No Spooling]
While a print request is being received from one computer, a print request from another computer cannot be received.

- When the computer's IP address or and computer name has been changed
The query contact processing or canceling requests from the computer and the delete process may not operate correctly after the computer's IP address and/or the computer name has been changed. While there is no print data in the printer's receiving buffer, turn the power off and then back on again.

- A control panel operation can be used to cancel or force-eject printing of the print data in the printer's receiving buffer. For information about the procedure you should use, refer to "2.4 Canceling/Checking a Print Job" (P. 52).

IPv6 Connection Notes and Limitations

The following notes and limitations apply to IPv6 connections.

- In a multi-prefix environment (environment that has multiple IPv6 global addresses), communication from the printer to an external network may fail.

- In a multi-prefix environment (environment that has multiple IPv6 global addresses), communication is supported by an address that is not registered.

- Non-operational IPv6 addresses may be set automatically for IPv6 addresses (IPv6 automatically set addresses, IPv6 DNS server address). A non-operational IPv6 address is a site local address (fec0::) or an address in the document creation address space (2001:db8::/32).

- IPv4 DNS information may be used when communication is performed with a device that is assigned an FQDN while the IP mode is dual stack and DNS information is configured for both IPv4 and IPv6.

- The address displayed as the printer's IP address may change. For example, neither the IPv4 address nor the IPv6 address is displayed and the IPv6 address contents change.

- Secure watermark does not operate correctly when printing over an IPv6 network. Run under an IPv4 environment.

- Synchronization with a time server is not supported in an IPv6 environment. In an IPv4 environment, specify the address to the time server directly.

- IPv6 printing is supported with the following operating system versions only. Printing via IPv6 supports the following versions of the operating systems.
  - Windows Vista
  - Windows 7
  - Windows Server 2008
  - Windows Server 2008 R2
  - Linux distributions under which the Common Unit Printing System supports IPv6 printing. Linux distribution that Common Unix Printing System supports IPv6 and is printable.

- WINS does not support communication on an IPv6 network.

- NetWare does not support communication on an IPv6 network. Run using IPv4.

- The following restrictions apply to the printer URL specification method when using a self-signed certificate for SSL communication.
  - Specifying the URL with FQDN (IPv4 and IPv6)
    Before creating the self-signed certificate, you need to specify the device host name and domain name correctly.
    Example: When the FQDN is csw.ipv6.domain.local, "csw" is the host name and "ipv6.domain.local" is the domain name.
  - Specifying the URL with an IPv4 address
    Import of a self-signed certificate is not required in the IPv4 mode or dual mode.
  - Specifying the URL with an IPv6 address
    Secure IPP (IPP-S) communication is not supported.

- The following functions do not support IPv6. Run using IPv4. IPv6 does not support the following protocols:
  - Netware IP
  - UPnP Discovery
- In the cases below, the user may not be able to cancel or check the status (lpq) of print jobs requested using LPD when the address of a single machine cannot be determined.
  - When IPv4 and IPv6 are in operation simultaneously on the same host
  - When multiple IPv6 addresses are in operation simultaneously on the same host
- The IPv6 address may not be entered correctly in the job log. Run using IPv4.
- When performing a search using SMB will pass through a router, enter the addressee address directly. Response to a multicast is limited to multicasts within the local link (FF02::1) only.
- In an IPv6 network environment that does not have a DNS server, authentication fails when the computer name is specified in the SMB authentication SMB server setting. Directly specify the IPv6 address for the computer name of the authentication server computer name.
- With DocuShare or some other external access service, operation is improper when an IPv6 address is specified as the connection destination URL. In the IPv6 environment, enable the DNS server and specify the destination URL using an FQDN.
- Some features of SMB are not supported (If you attempt to use services with a NetBIOS name, communication may not be available in some environment).
- IPv6-in-IPv4-tunneling in the machine itself is not supported.

Important

- If [TCP/IP Setting]>[IP Mode] is set to [IPv6], the IPv6-inIPv4-tunneling cannot be performed.
- If more than one router exist in the same subnet, a communication error may occur.
- In a dual stack environment, some services may cause performance problems depending on the network settings (for example, when you attempt to set the machine to prioritize IPv6 in an environment where the Web server is started with IPv4).

Notes and Restrictions on the Cloning Feature

The Cloning feature copies settings from one printer and imports them to another printer.

You can copy these settings to a file and import them with CentreWare Internet Services under the [Properties] tab > [General Setup] > [Cloning].

This section lists the notes and restrictions that apply when using the Cloning feature.

- This feature does not copy and import all printer settings. It mainly copies and imports settings on the [Properties] tab in CentreWare Internet Services.

The settings in the following categories can all be cloned.

Feature	Category
Memory	Ram Disk* * This is displayed when no HDD Extension Kit (optional) is used and extension system memory (1GB) (optional) is mounted.
Network/Port	Ethernet
	Parallel* * The optional Parallel Port is required.
	USB
	EtherTalk
	NetWare
	TCP/IP (IPMode)
	TCP/IP (IPv4)
	TCP/IP (IPv6)
	TCP/IP (DualStack)
	SSDP
	SMB
	LPD
	Port 9100
	HTTP
	IPP
	Bonjour
	WSD * *WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.
	ThinPrint
Xerox Standard Accounting	Users
	Limits and Access
	Group Accounts

Feature	Category
E-mail	E-mail Settings* * Subject is deleted.
	SMTP Server
	LDAP (LDAP Directory)
	LDAP (LDAP User Mappings)
	LDAP (LDAP Authentication)
	LDAP (LDAP Group account)
Authentication	Authentication Type and Related Settings
Printing	Banner Sheet
Administration	E-mail Alerts (General Device Alerts)
	SNMP (SNMP)
	SNMP (v1/v2c Properties)
	SNMP (v3 Properties)
	SNMP (SNMP Configuration IPv4)
	SNMP (SNMP Configuration IPv6)
	Job Status Default
IP Filtering	IPv4 Filtering
	IPv6 Filtering
Watermark	Watermark
Accounting	Accounting management
	Accounting information settings
Audit Log	Audit Log

- In the following cases, settings on the [Properties] tab of CentreWare Internet Services may are not be imported.
  - When the configuration (options) of the original printer and the printer you are importing into are different.
  - When the port used for import is set to [Disabled].
- Note the following when allocating fixed IP addresses to the original printer.
  - You cannot copy IP addresses.
  - When the originally allocated IP address is fixed, check whether the ports are enabled or disabled as desired while setting the correct IP address on the printer's control panel after the settings are copied.
    When using an undefined IP address, settings that use TCP/IP are automatically disabled.

Notes and Restrictions on Security Features

Encrypted Communication

Encrypting HTTP communication enables you to encrypt communication data for IPP printing (SSL encrypted communication). The data is encrypted only on the network, but send data itself is not encrypted.

Image Log Control

- The Image Log Control feature is processed on a priority basis depending on the document image of a job, the data size, the processing of multiple jobs other than the Image Log Control feature, the [Assurance Level] setting, or the [ImageLog Transfer] > [Assurance Level] setting.

- The Image Log Control feature is designed to supplement the security feature for documents; therefore, creating image logs or job processing other than the feature may take long.

- From a security perspective, the machine cannot abort (forcibly terminate) image log creation to give priority to store data.

- Searching for images and print job logs allows the system administrator to grasp the identification information of the user who instructed the job. Note that Fuji Xerox is not responsible for a privacy issue of the user caused by using the Image Log Control feature.

- In the event of forced power failure such as a blackout or HDD Extension Kit (optional) failure, it is not guaranteed the image logs are securely created and/or transferred.

- Only the jobs performed after the start of the Image Log Control feature will be covered by the Image Log Control feature.

- Because the images to be controlled are created based on the input images, the images will not always be the same as the output images. The following information is added or edited during output; thus, the images will not be reflected.
  - Layout change during output
  - Separator
  - Annotation
  - Force Annotation
  - Watermark
  - Secure Watermark
  - Form Overlay (Print)

- The maximum size of PDL created as image is 500MB per job.

- If the machine runs out of HDD Extension Kit (optional) space for storing images, the machine operates in accordance with the setting of [Assurance Level] as follows.
  - [High]: A job is cancelled.
  - [Low]: A job is executed. However, the warning will be displayed at the end of the job and notifies the user that the image creation failed.

- Up to 200 image logs can be stored in the machine.

Allow User to Disable Active Settings

This feature cannot be applied to the ordinary print jobs. This feature is applicable to Private Charge Print job.

Login to Remote Accounts

- Only the services that can be instructed from the touch screen (Charge Print and Private Charge Print) are restricted by the Login to Remote Accounts feature. You cannot restrict the output color* or the number of pages.
  * If ApeosWare Authentication Management (purchase separately) is used as an authentication system, you can restrict the output color.

- In this feature, Print cannot be restricted. To restrict print operations, use the Charge Print or Private Charge Print feature.

- When you change Login Type to or from [Remote Accounts], user information registered on the machine will be deleted.

When Using Login to Remote Accounts

- Up to 32 single byte characters can be used for registering a user ID to login to a Remote Accounts server.

- When registering a user to multiple domains, ensure to use a unique user ID for each domain.

- Login a Remote Accounts server from a computer to specify any jobs.

- The Card verifiers such as IC card reader is supported. Remote Accounts cannot be used when using the related products other than those above.

Remote Authentication and ApeosWare Authentication Management

- The remote authentication server that ApeosWare Authentication Management can use is Active Directory only. Color Access is available but the limit for the maximum number of pages is not available.

Remote Authentication using the Smart Card

- Remote Authentication can be performed in an environment where ApeosWare Authentication Management, Active Directory, or the combination of ApeosWare Authentication Management and Active Directory is used.

- Change the default realm name only when you want to use a different realm name.

A.14 Glossary

[10BASE-T]

A 10 Mbps Ethernet network that uses a baseband signal and twisted-pair cable. It is one of the IEEE802.3 standards.

[100BASE-TX]

An extended version of 10BASE-T known as Fast Ethernet. Its communication speed is 100 Mbps, which is much faster than 10 Mbps of 10BASE-T.

[1000BASE-T]

One of the Gigabit Ethernet Standards with 1 Gbps communication speed at its maximum.

[Address]

Information (identifier) that is assigned to identify each node (computer or terminal) on a network. A number that specifies a location in a computer's memory is also called an "address".

[Application software]

Computer software designed to perform a specific task. Software for various needs, such as word processing, spreadsheets, graphics, and databases, are available.

[Bi-directional communication]

Allows two devices to exchange information with each other. In addition to transmission of data (such as print requests) from a computer, it allows transmission of data (such as job status) from the printer to the computer.

[BOOTP]

BOOT strap Protocol. A protocol that allows a client connected to a TCP/IP network to import network settings automatically from a server.

[CD-ROM]

A compact disk (CD) containing a large amount of data, including computer software and images.

[Click]

Pressing a mouse button and immediately releasing it. In this guide, "click" refers to pressing and releasing the left mouse button, while "right-click" refers to pressing and releasing the right mouse button.
"Double-click" refers to a quick double press and release of a mouse button.

[Collate]

Output feature that delivers documents in the same order as the originals. If printing two copies of a three-page original, pages will be output as 1-2-3, 1-2-3.

[Default]

A setting or value assigned to the printer before it was shipped from the factory. Defaults are restored when the NV memory is initialized.

[DHCP]

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol that uses a server to automatically assign IP addresses to client computers.

[DNS]

Domain Name System. A name resolution service that converts host names to IP addresses.

[dpi]

Dots per inch. A unit of measurement of resolution, indicating the number of dots printed within in one inch (approximately 25.4 mm).

[Emulation]

The ability of the printer to imitate another type of printer and produce the same results.

A print mode where the printer emulates other printer is called the "emulation mode".

[EtherTalk]

A communication protocol of "AppleTalk," which is network software for the Macintosh.

[Font]

A style of type or characters. Specifies one set of characters of uniform design.

[Grams per Square Meter (g/m^2)]

The weight in grams of one square meter of paper.

[HTTP]

A protocol used to communicate with a web browser over the Internet.

[ICM]

Image Color Matching. Color management software adopted by Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008. Corrects device-specific color differences to match display colors with print result colors.

[Image Enhancement]

A feature that artificially increases resolution by smoothing transitions between black and white, and by reducing jagged lines.

[Install]

To add software or hardware to a computer or peripheral so it can be used. A print driver or other software can be installed in a computer system, or HDD Extension Kit (optional) can be installed in the printer.

In this guide "to install" mainly refers to loading software on a computer.

[Installer]

Software that installs software on a computer.

[Interface]

The point where two things (systems) come into contact with each other. This term is commonly used to describe a contact point between a computer and a printer, or between a user and a device.

The (electronic) specifications of an interface are sometimes called simply "interface."

[Interface cable]

A cable used to connect multiple devices.

Interface cables include, USB and Parallel cables (to connect a printer with a computer), and Ethernet cables (to connect a printer with a network).

[IP address]

An address used by TCP/IP protocols to identify computers on a network. It is expressed in dotted quad format which is a series of four decimal numbers separated by decimal points.

[IPP]

A protocol used when printing using HTTP.

[IPsec]

Security technology that encrypts data in packet units to protect it against tampering.

[IPv4 address]

A type of TCP/IP protocol network address expressed as four numeric (decimal) values separated by decimal points (.).

[IPv6 address]

A type of TCP/IP protocol network address expressed as four numeric (hexadecimal) values separated by colons (:). This is a next-generation IP address that is starting to be used to replace the current IPv4 addresses.

[Job]

A unit of work processed by computers. A print job is a unit of work run on a printer and consists of printing one file. Canceling or executing printing is done on a job unit basis.

[Local printer]

In this guide, a "local printer" refers to a printer that is directly connected to a computer using a parallel cable or USB cable.

[Log in/on]

To access a resource on a computer system (such as HDD Extension Kit (optional) or printer on a network). Ending the session on a computer system is "logging out" or "logging off."

[Multiple-Up]

A feature for printing multiple document pages on a single sheet of paper.

[NetWare]

A network operating system developed by Novell, Inc.

[Network printer]

In this guide, "network printer" refers to a printer connected to a network using an Ethernet cable.

[Online help]

A manual that can be viewed on your computer screen.

[OS]

Operating System. Software that controls and manages the basic operation of a computer's hardware and software. The operating system is the foundation for the operation of application software.

[Parallel interface]

A data transmission system between a computer and peripherals. It allows simultaneous transmission of multiple bits of data. One of the most popular parallel interfaces is a Centronics-type, which is used commonly to connect a computer to a printer.

[PDF file]

In this guide, any online document created with Acrobat (software developed by Adobe Systems) is called a "PDF file". Adobe Reader software must be installed on a computer in order to view PDF file contents.

[Port]

A connection point that allows exchange of information between a computer and its peripherals.

[Port 9100]

A network communication protocol for transmitting data on Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Mac OS 10.6.

This protocol can be used on the standard TCP/IP port monitor.

[ppm]

A measurement that shows how many pages the printer is capable of printing in one minute.

[Printable area]

The area on paper which can be printed.

[Print Driver]

Software that translates data created with an application into a format the printer can read and print.

[Print page buffer]

Location for actual expansion and accumulation of print data.

[Print Ticket]

Print setting related information, including XPS files created by Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 applications.

[Protocol]

A set of rules for communication between multiple devices and computer systems. These rules define the procedures for transmitting information between hardware devices, and between two computers over a network.

[Receive buffer]

A location for temporary storage of data sent from a computer. Adding memory to increase the size of the receive buffer makes the computer available more quickly when data is sent.

[Resolution]

Indicates the detail of an image. The quality of detail of an image normally is represented by dots per inch (dpi). The higher the dpi, the higher the resolution.

[Server]

A computer in a network that stores data files accessed by other computers.

"Client" is a computer that demands service from a server.

[SMB]

A network communication protocol that enables file sharing on Windows Network (Microsoft Network), and that can be used on Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2.

[SNMP]

A protocol that manages networked devices via a network.

A device that manages the activities of networked devices runs on software called "SNMP manager," while a device that is being monitored runs on the "SMNP agent."

[Software]

A program that performs a task on a computer. Operating systems and application software are types of software.

[TCP/IP]

A network protocol developed by DARPANET (Defense Advanced Research Project Agency NetWork). It is the standard protocol of the Internet and is supported by a variety of computer platforms, from personal computers to mainframes.

[Tone]

A smoothness of colors represented by the number of gradation steps. The higher the number of gradation steps, the smoother the gradation of colors.

[Uninstall]

To delete software installed on the computer.

[USB]

Universal Serial Bus. A protocol for data communication between a computer and its peripherals. It enables hot-plug capabilities, so peripherals can be connected or disconnected without switching off the computer.

[Web browser]

Software for viewing information from the Internet on computers. Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer are the two most popular web browsers.

[WINS]

Windows Internet Name Services. A name resolution service that converts a computer name to an IP address in a TCP/IP environment.

[WWW]

World Wide Web. A system that presents web sites on the Internet.

[XPS file]

XML Paper Specification. File format developed by Microsoft Corporation. XPS files are created by Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2 applications. XPS Viewer software needs to be installed on a computer to view the contents of an XPS file.

Index

T

U

W

X

Control Panel Menu Tree

Basic Control Panel Functions

To move up and down the menus:	<▲> or <▼> button
To select a menu or move to the right:	<▶> or <OK> button
To cancel a selection or return to the left:	<◀> or <Back> button
To confirm an entry:	<OK> button
To exit the menu screen:	<Printer Settings> button
To start the Print Menu:	<Secure Print/Sample Set> button
To view details about ⓘ:	<Information> button

Character/Number Entry Functions

To increase or decrease a value:	<▲> or <▼> button
To move between digits or fields:	<▶> or<◀> button
To reset a value to the default:	<▲> and <▼>buttons

Conventions for the Adminsitrator Menus

▨ : Main menus

▨ : Items that appear/do not appear depending on the options installed in the printer.

● : Default

Administrator Menus

Ready to print

<Printer Settings> button ---- Passcode+OK key [   ] — If the control panel is locked with a password, enter the password here.

LanguageEmulation

- ESCP
- HPGL → See the Emulation Setting Guide for details.

- PDF
  - Process Mode — •PDF Bridge,PS
  - Quantity — •1Set(s) — 1 – 999 sets: 1 set units
  - 2 Sided Printing — •Off, Long Edge Flip, Short Edge Flip
  - Print Mode — High Speed, •Normal, High Quality
  - Password — [0   ] — 32 alphanumeric characters
  - Collated — •off, On
  - Output Size — •Auto, A4 — When[DefaultPaperSize]is[A4]
  - — •Auto, 8.5x11" — When[DefaultPaperSize]is[8.5x11]
  - Layout — •Auto %, 100% (No Zoom), Booklet, 2 Pages Up, 4 Pages Up

- PCL → See the Emulation Setting Guide for details.

- PostScript
  - Paper Supply — Select Paper Tray, •Auto Paper Select
  - Default Color — •Color, Black & White
  - Font Absence — Cancel Printing, •Substitute Font
  - Font Substitution — Do not use ATCx, •Use ATCx

- XPS
  - Print Ticket — Off, •Standard Mode, Compatible Mode

- XDW (DocuWorks)
  - Quantity — •1Set(s) — 1 – 999 sets: 1set units
  - 2 Sided Printing — •off, Long Edge Flip, short Edge Flip
  - Print Mode — High Speed, •Normal, High Quality
  - Password — [0   ] — 32 alphanumeric characters
  - Collated — •off, On
  - Layout — 100%(No Zoom), •Auto %, 2 Pages Up, 4 Pages Up
  - Output Size — A4, •Auto — When [StandardPaperSize] is [A4]
  - — 8.5x11", •Auto — When [StandardPaperSize] is [8.5x11]

- KS
- KSSM
- KS5895

Print Reports — Job History, Error History, Meter/Auditron, Configuration, Font List, PCL Font List, PS Font List, LanguageEmulation

Stored Documents, Domain Filter List, Job Counter, Watermark Sample, Secure Watermark

PS Logical, ESCP Settings, ESCP Logical, HP-GL/2 Settings, HP-GL/2 Logical, HP-GL/2 Palette, TIFF/JPEG Settings, TIFF/JPEG Logical, PDF Settings, PCL Settings, PCL Macro List, KS Settings, KSSM Settings, KS5895 Settings

-- Use Smart Card to login — When Smart card system is connected

Meter Reading — Current Meter, Previous Meter

Admin Menu
- Network/Port — **Continued on the next page To ★A**
- System Settings — **Continued on the next page To ★C**
- Printer Settings — **Continued on the next page To ★E**
- Allocate Memory — **Continued on the next page To ★F**
- Init/Delete Data — **Continued on the next page To ★G**

Language — •English, Korean, Simp. Chinese, Trad. Chinese

★A

Network/Port			
Parallel	Port Status	•Disabled, Enabled	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	•Enabled, Disabled	
	Adobe Protocol	•Normal, Binary, TBCP	
	Auto Eject Time	•30 Seconds	5 - 1275 Seconds(increment: 5 sec.)
	Bi-directional	•Enabled, Disabled	

LPD	Port Status	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Connect Time-Out	•16 Seconds	2 - 3600 Seconds(increment: 1 sec.)
	TBCP Filter	•Disabled, Enabled	
	Port Number	•515	1-65535
	Maximum Sessions	•5	1-10
	Print Queue	•Data Process Order, Job Submit Order	

NetWare	Port Status	•Disabled, Enabled	
	TransportProtocol	TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, •TCP/IP,IPX/SPX	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	Disabled, •Enabled	
	No.of searches	•No Limit	
		1-100 Time(s)	
	TBCP Filter	•Disabled, Enabled	

SMB	Port Status	Disabled, •Enabled	
	TransportProtocol	TCP/IP, NetBEUI, •TCP/IP,NetBEUI	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	Disabled, •Enabled	
	TBCP Filter	•Disabled, Enabled	

IPP	Port Status	•Disabled, Enabled	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Access Control	•Disabled, Enabled	
	DNS	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Added Port Number	•80	1-65535
	Connect Time-Out	•60 Seconds	0 - 65535 Seconds(increment: 1 sec.)
	TBCP Filter	•Disabled, Enabled	

EtherTalk Compat	Port Status	•Disabled, Enabled	
	PJL	Disabled, •Enabled	

Bonjour	Port Status	•Disabled, Enabled	

USB	Port Status	•Disabled, Enabled	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	•Enabled, Disabled	
	Auto Eject Time	•30 Seconds	5 - 1275 Seconds(increment: 5 sec.)
	Auto Protocol	•Normal, Binary, TBCP, RAW	
	PS Wait Timeout	•Disabled, Enabled	

Port 9100	Port Status	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Print Mode	•Auto, PS, ESCP, HP-GL/2, PCL, TIFF, HexDump, KS, KSSM, KS5895	
	PJL	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Connect Time-Out	•60 Seconds	2 - 65535 Seconds(increment: 1 sec.)
	Port Number	•9100	1-65535
	TBCP Filter	•Disabled, Enabled	

| UPnP | Port Status | •Disabled, Enabled | |
| | Port Number | •80 | 1-65535 |

| WSD | Port Status | Disabled, •Enabled | |
| | Port Number | •80 | 1-65535 |

| SOAP | Port Status | Disabled, •Enabled | |
| | Port Number | •80 | 1-65535 |

ThinPrint	Port Status	Disabled, •Enabled	
	Port Number	•4000	1-65535
	SSL/TLS	•Disabled, Enabled	

| SNMP | Port Status | •Enabled, Disabled | |
| | TransportProtocol | •UDP, IPX, IPX,UDP | |

TCP/IP Settings	IP Mode	•Dual Stack, IPv4, IPv6	
	IPv4 Settings	Get IP Address	STATIC, DHCP, BOOTP, RARP, •DHCP/Autonet
		IP Address, Subnet Mask, Gateway Address	•000.000.000.000

DNS Server	Get IP from DHCP	•Disabled, Enabled	
	Server IP Address	•000.000.000.000	When Obtain DNS Server Address Automatically is set to "OFF", enter it manually.
		•nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn	When Obtain DNS Server Address Automatically is set to "ON", the address is displayed.

| InternetServices | Port Status | Disabled, •Enabled | |
| | Port Number | •80 | 1-65535 |

EP Proxy Server	Server Setup	•Same Proxy, Different Proxy	*2
	HTTPS Server Name	[ ]	255 alphanumeric characters
	HTTPS Port Number	•8080	1-65535
	HTTPSAuthenticate	•Disabled, Enabled	
	HTTPS Login Name	[ ]	31 alphanumeric characters
	HTTPS Password	[ ]	31 alphanumeric characters
	HTTP Server Name	[ ]	255 alphanumeric characters
	HTTP Port Number	•8080	1-65535
	HTTP Authenticate	•Disabled, Enabled	
	HTTP Login Name	[ ]	31 alphanumeric characters
	HTTP Password	[ ]	31 alphanumeric characters

*2 This function may be used when the customer has our maintenance service agreement.
   For more information, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
   Also, the model for China does not support this feature.

WINS Server	Get DHCP Address	•Off, On	
	Primary WINS IP, Secondary WINS IP	•000.000.000.000	When Obtain DNS Server Address Automatically is set to "OFF", enter it manually.
		•nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn	When Obtain DNS Server Address Automatically is set to "ON", the address is displayed.

| Ethernet | •Auto, 100 Mbps Full-Dup, 100 Mbps Half-Dup, 10 Mbps Full-Dup, 10 Mbps Half-Dup, 1000 Mbps |

| IPX/SPXFrameType | •Auto, Ethernet II, Ethernet 802.3, Ethernet 802.2, Ethernet SNAP |

IP Filter (IPv4)	IP Filter	•Off, On		
	IP Address	No.1	IP Address	•000.000.000.000
			IP Mask	•000.000.000.000
		No.10	IP Address	•000.000.000.000
			IP Mask	•000.000.000.000

SNTP Settings	NTP Synchronize	•Off, On	
	Connect Interval	•168 Hours	1 - 500 hours: 1 hour increments
	NTP IP Address	•000.000.000.000	

| HTTP-SSL/TLS | Enablement | •Disabled, Enabled | |
| | Port Number | •443 | 1-65535 |

| IPSec Comm. | •Disabled, Enabled |

IEEE 802.1x	802.1x	Enabled, •Disabled
	Authenticate by	•EAP-MD5, EAP-MS-CHAPv2, PEAP/MS-CHAPv2, EAP-TLS
	Verify SrvrCert	•Disabled, Enabled

System Settings

| Alert Tone | •Off, On |

Panel Settings	Panel Lock	•Off, On	
	Change Passcode	[ ]	Reenter Passcode [ ]
	Max.LoginAttempts	Unlimited, •Limit	
	Login Attempts	•5 Time(s)	1 - 10 times

| Auto Clear | •Off | |
| | 1 - 30 Minutes | 1 - 30 Minutes (increment: 1 min.) |

| Low Power Timer | •1 Minutes | 1 - 240 Minutes (increment: 1 min.) |

| Sleep Mode | Disabled, •Enabled |

| Sleep Mode Timer | •1 Minutes | 1 - 240 Minutes (increment: 1 min.) |

| Auto Job History | •Do not print, Print |

Set Jobs View	Active Jobs	•Show Job Detail, Hide Job Detail	
	Completed Jobs	Viewing Options	No Job Viewing, Require Login, •Always Allow View
		Access To:	•All Jobs, Own Jobs
		Hide Job Detail	•No, Yes

| 2 Sided Report | •1 Sided, 2 Sided |

| Print Area | •Standard, Extended |

Banner Settings	Banner Sheet	•Off, Start Sheet, End Sheet, Start & End
	Banner Tray	•Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3
	Driver Settings	•Enabled, Disabled

| Secure Print | Disabled, •Enabled |

| Print Order | Newest Date First, •Oldest Date First |

Machine Clock	Set Date	Date (dd/mm/yyyy)	Year (yyyy) 2000 - 2099: 1 year increments / Month (mm) 01 - 12: 1 month increments / Day (dd) 01 - 31: 1 day increments	The input format changes depending on the [Date Format] settings.
	Set Time	12 Hour Clock 24 Hour Clock	Changes depending on the Time Format settings / Hours 00 - 23: 1 hour increments / Minutes 00 - 59: 1 minute increments
	Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd, mm/dd/yyyy, •dd/mm/yyyy	The initial values may be different depending on the model.
	Time Format	12 Hour Clock, •24 Hour Clock	
	Time Zone	•GMT +10:00	The initial values may be different depending on the model.
	Daylight Savings	•Off, Set byDate, Set by Month/week	

When Jam Occurs — •ClearJam ToResume, Delete Job

Drum/Toner Life End — •Continue Print, Cancel Print

mm / inches — •Millimeter(mm), Inches (")

Data Encryption
- Encryption — On, •Off
- Encryption Key — [   ]

Overwrite HD — Off, 1 Time, •3 Times

Auto Job Promote — Enabled, •Disabled

Resume Error Job — •Auto Resume, Resume by User

Software Download — •Enabled, Disabled

RAM Disk — •Enabled, Disabled

Accounting
- Accounting Type — •Disabled, Local Accounting, Authentication Srvr, Network Accounting, XeroxStdAccounting
- VerifyUserDetails — No, •Yes
- Customize Prompts — •UserID, AccountID, User ID Prompt, Account ID Prompt, No Prompts

Authentication
- Login Type — •No Login Required, Local Accounts, Remote Accounts
- User Detail Setup
  - StoreUserDetails — •NVM, Hard Disk
  - FailedAccess Log — Off / •On — Failed Attempts •10 Time(s) — 1-600 Time(s)
  - SaveRemoteAccount — •Disabled, Enabled
  - Del RemoteAccount
- Charge Print
  - PJLReceiveCommand — •Off, On
  - PJL OutputCommand — •Off, On
  - Receive Control — •ReferPrintAuditron, PrivateChargePrint, Save in ChargePrint
  - Process Job Login
    - Job Login Success — •Print Job, PrivateChargePrint Save in ChargePrint, •Cancel Job
    - Job Login Failure
    - Without User ID — Print job, Save in ChargePrint, •Cancel Job

Jobs Documents
- Job Expiry Date — •Off, No. of Days & Time, Hours
- Keep for (Days) — •7 Days — 1 - 14 days: 1 day increments
- Delete at (Time) — •3:00AM — 0 - 12 hours: 1 hour increments, AM, PM / 00 - 59 minutes: 1 minut increments — 3:00 — 0 - 23 hours: 1 hour increments, 00 - 59 minutes: 1 minut increments
- Keep for — •4 Hours and 0 Minutes — 0 - 120 hours: 1 hour increments, 00 - 59 minutes: 1 minut increments
- Upon Power Off — •Do not Delete Jobs, Delete Jobs

Software Options
- FeatureEnhance Kit — Enable Kit — Press OK to enable

Image Log Control
- Image Log Control — •Off, On
- Generate ImageLog — Off, •On
- Assurance Level — •Low, High
- Transfer ImageLog
  - Log Transfer — •Disabled, Enabled
  - Logs To Transfer — Pause, Per Job Basis •Accumulate First
  - Transfer Timing
    - At end of the job — Disabled, •Enabled
    - At power On — Disabled, •Enabled
    - End of selections — Disabled, •Enabled
    - When max reached — Disabled, •Enabled
  - Assurance Level — •Low, High

Software Upgrade

Software Upgrade *3

EP Service
- EP Diag. / Repair
  - DiagnosticRequest — Press OK to send EP Diagnostic Request
  - Repair Request — Press OK to send EP Diagnostic Request
- Check Connection — Press OK to check connection status

*3 This function may be used when the customer has our maintenance service agreement.
For more information, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
Also, the model for China does not support this feature.

★E

Printer Settings				
Substitute Tray		• Off, Use Larger Size, Use Closest Size, Select Bypass		
PaperTypeMismatch		PaperSupply Screen, • ConfirmationScreen, Print		
Paper Type	Tray 1	•Plain, Recycled, Bond, Heavyweight, Extra Heavyweight, Transparency 1.Custom 1, Custom 2, 3.Custom 3, 4.Custom 4, 5.Custom 5		
	Tray 2, Tray 3	•Plain, Recycled, Bond, Heavyweight, Extra Heavyweight, Transparency 1.Custom 1, Custom 2, 3.Custom 3, 4.Custom 4, 5.Custom 5		
	Tray 5 (Bypass)	•Plain, Recycled, Bond, Heavyweight, Extra Heavyweight, Transparency 1.Custom 1, Custom 2, 3.Custom 3, 4.Custom 4, 5.Custom 5		
Paper Color	Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 5(Bypass)	•White, Blue, Yellow, Green, Pink, Clear, Ivory, Gray, Buff, Goldenrod, Red, Orange, 1.Custom 1, 2.Custom 2, 3.Custom 3, 4.Custom 4, 5.Custom 5, Others		
PaperTypePriority	Plain	15-2, •1, Not selected		
	Recycled	15-3, •2, 1, Not selected		
	Plain S2	15-1, •Not selected		
	1.Custom 1 - 5.Custom 5	15-1, •Not selected		
PaperTrayPriority	Tray 1	• Priority:1, Priority:2-4, No AutoTraySwitch		
	Tray 2	Priority:1, •Priority:2, Priority:3-4, No AutoTraySwitch		
	Tray 3	Priority:1-2, •Priority:3, Priority:4, No AutoTraySwitch		
	Bypass Tray	Priority:1-4, No AutoTraySwitch		
Paper Size	Tray 1	• Auto		
		Custom	Portrait (Y) Size Landscape (X) Size	
	Tray 2, Tray 3	• Auto		
		Custom	Portrait (Y) Size Landscape (X) Size	
	Bypass tray	A3, A4, •A4, A5, B4, B5, 5.5x8.5", 7.25x10.5", 8.5x11", 8.5x13", 8.5x14", 11x17", Post Card, Reply-paid postcard, Envelope (120 x 235mm), No.10 env, Monarch Envelope, DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, Envelope (105 x 235mm)		
		Custom	Portrait (Y) Size Landscape (X) Size	
Custom Paper Name	1.Custom 1 - 5.Custom 5	[Custom 1]~[Custom 5]		
Custom Color Name	1.Custom 1 - 5.Custom 5	[Custom 1]~[Custom 5]		
Print User ID		•Off, Top Left, Top Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Right		
Odd Page 2 Sided		On, •Off		
UnregisteredForms		• Print (Data only), Do not print		
DefaultPaperSize		• A4, 8.5x11"		
Paper Size Group		AB Series, •AB (8K / 16K), AB (8x13 / 8x14), Inch Series, AB (8x13)		
OCR Font Glyphs		•Backslash, Japanese Yen Sign		

*4

*4 [Bypass Tray] is not displayed when [No AutoSwitchOff] is selected in [Bypass Tray] under [Paper Tray Priority].

★F

```
Allocate Memory ─┬─ PS                •55.0M ── 55.00 - 128.00 MB : 0.25 MB units

                 ├─ HPGL Auto Layout  •64K ─────── 64 - 5120 KB : 32 KB units
                 │                     Hard Disk

                 ├─ Job Ticket Memory •0.25M ── 0.25 - 8.00 MB : 0.25 MB units

                 └─ Receiving Buffer ─┬─ Parallel    •64K ──── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units

                                      ├─ LPD Spool ─┬─ •Off
                                      │             ├─ Hard Disk ── •1024K ── 1024 - 2048 KB : 32 KB units
                                      │             └─ Memory ───── •1.00M ── 0.50 - 32.00 MB : 0.25 MB units

                                      ├─ NetWare     •256K ──── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units

                                      ├─ SMB Spool ─┬─ •Off
                                      │             ├─ Hard Disk ── •256K ── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units
                                      │             └─ Memory ───── •1.00M ── 0.50 - 32.00 MB : 0.25 MB units

                                      ├─ IPP         •256K ──── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units

                                      ├─ IPP Spool ─┬─ •Off    •256K ── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units
                                      │             └─ Hard Disk

                                      ├─ EtherTalk Compat  •1024K ── 1024 - 2048 KB : 32 KB units

                                      ├─ USB         •64K ──── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units

                                      └─ Port9100    •256K ──── 64 - 1024 KB : 32 KB units
```

★G

```
Init/Delete Data ─┬─ NVM             Use OK to init

                  ├─ Hard Disk       Use OK to init

                  ├─ Delete All Data Use OK to init ── Initializing... ── Initialized.
                  │                                    Or, Delete Job     Reboot printer

                  ├─ Print Meter     Use OK to init

                  ├─ Job Counters    Use OK to init

                  ├─ DeleteForm/Macro ─┬─ Del ESCP Forms ── 0001.abcdefgh ── Maximum number of forms with HDD   : 64
                  │                    │                                                             Without HDD : 2048
                  │                    │                                     "abcdefgh" is the registerd form name.
                  │                    └─ DeletePCL Macros  Use OK to Delete
                  │                                         All PCL Macros

                  ├─ Delete Font ──── Delete PCL Fonts  Use OK to Delete
                  │                                     All PCL Fonts

                  └─ Secure Print Jobs *5 ── Select User ID ── 1001.user1
                                             1001.user1       Use OK to delete
```

*5 When using Private Charge Print,
[Pte Charge Print] is displayed.

Print Menus

<Secure Print/Sample Set> button

Ready to print	Pte.Charge Print	Use Smart Card to login	Logging in... Please wait	User validated Use OK to print

Secure Print	Select User ID 1001.12345678	Passcode+OK key [ ]

Select Document All documents → Print & Delete → Use OK to print
Print & Save → Use OK to print
Delete → Use OK to delete

Max. 999

Select Document 1.Taro Doc → Print & Delete → Quantity 1 Set(s) → Use OK to print
Print & Save → Quantity 1 Set(s) → Use OK to print
Delete → Use OK to delete

Select Document 2.Kenji Doc

Sample Set	Select User ID 2001.12345678

Select Document All documents → Print → Use OK to print
Delete → Use OK to delete

Max. 999

Select Document 1.Taro Doc → Print → Quantity 1 Set(s) → Use OK to print
Delete → Use OK to delete

Select Document 2.Kenji Doc

Delayed Print	Select Document 1.Taro Doc	Print Now → Use OK to print

Delete → Use OK to delete → Deleted

Mail Print	Mail recvd. Use OK to process	Mail received Job in queue

Consumables Menu

<▼> + <OK> button

Ready to print	Consumables Menu Serial Number	Serial Number 999999

	Consumables Menu Reset Counter	Fusing Unit Press [OK] to start reset.
		Bypass Feed Roller (bypass tray) Press [OK] to start reset.
		Transfer roll Press [OK] to start reset.
		Tray Feed Roller Press [OK] to start reset.

	Consumables Menu Drum/Toner Life Operation	Stop Printing, Do Not Stop Printing

	Consumables Menu Planned shipping date	Drum/Toner Cartridge, Fusing unit

DocuPrint 3105 User Guide